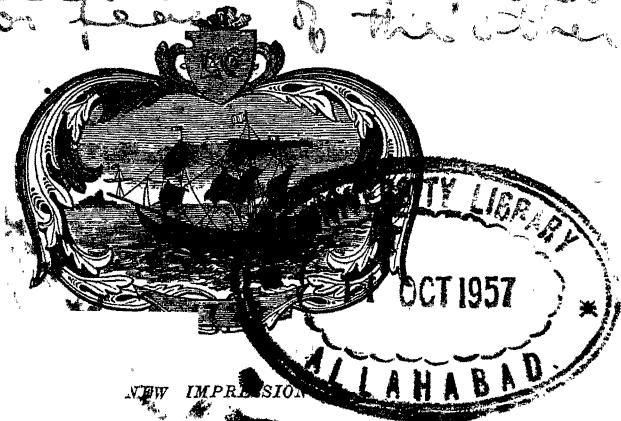


COMPLETE EDITION

WITH COPIOUS EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES

*My Book is the first,
My Boot is the other,
Steal not the first
For fear of the other.*



LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO. LTD.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON, E.C. 4

NEW YORK, TORONTO

BOMBAY, CALCUTTA AND MADRAS

Made in Great Britain

τ

THE aim of this *Latin Course* is to place before the pupil, in a simple and lucid manner, the essentials of Latin Grammar, together with a sufficient number of Exercises to impress the Grammar on the mind. Latin Courses do not as a rule provide sufficient practice in the earlier stages. An attempt is made to remedy this by giving many *vivá voce* sections. These are not arranged haphazard, but will, if conscientiously used, serve to *teach* systematically, as well as *test* the subjects to which they refer. Teachers for the most part are agreed that verbs can only be mastered by long drill. Lists of Verb Forms are therefore given, in addition to the *vivá voce* mentioned above. Practice in these will ensure that absolute readiness which is so necessary.

The First Part goes up to and includes the Regular Verbs, Active and Passive.

The Second Part takes the pupil through Pronouns, Numeral Adjectives, the Irregular Verbs, the Accusative and Infinitive, the Ablative Absolute, Dependent Questions, the use of the Cases, the Roman Calendar, Dependent Clauses and use of the Subjunctive, and Simple Oratio Obliqua. The aim has been to afford sufficient practice in all these subjects, much more space being given to each individual topic than is usual in elementary books (notably to the Accusative and Infinitive).

Throughout simplicity and lucidity have been kept in view. The *vivâ voce* begun in Part I. is continued in Part II.

Almost the whole of the Exercises are taken with modifications from Latin Authors usually read by beginners, with the result that pupils who work through this Course will be made familiar with those words, phrases and constructions which they are likely to meet with in their early reading.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

The References are to pages unless Rule (= R) is specified.

NOUNS.		ADJECTIVES.	
	PAGE		PAGE
Cases and Inflexion	1, 5	1st and 2nd Declension	
Direct and Indirect Ob-		Adjectives	16-17
ject	1	3rd Declension	
Declension of Nouns:—		Adjectives	37-39
1st Declension	2	Comparison of Adjectives	47
2nd Declension	8, 9	The case used after Com-	
3rd Declension	22-30	paratives	49
I-stems	33-35	Different meanings of	
4th Declension	43-44	Comparative and Su-	
2nd and 4th Declen-		perative	49
sions	44	Irregular comparison	51-2
5th Declension	45	Plus	51
Parisyllabic and Impari-		Translation of more and	
syllabic Nouns	34	most	53
Rules for Declension	9	Adjectives used as Nouns	41
Gender, Rules	302	Possessive Adjectives	57
Common Gender	22 n.	Translation of his , etc.	58-9
CASE.		VERBS.	
Case after Esse	15, 19	Transitive and Intrans-	
Ablative of Agent, etc.	29	itive	14
Ablative in I.	35	Active and Passive	28, 106
Ablative of Comparison	49	Copula	15
Accusative in -im	34	Regular Verbs:—	
Dative with Verbs	82, 111	1st Conjugation—	
Partitive Genitive	56 n.	Active	70
		Passive	98

2nd Conjugation—	PAGE	ADVERBS.	PAGE
Active	72	Expressions of time	31, 36
Passive	100		
3rd Conjugation—		PREPOSITIONS.	
Active	74	In	12
Passive	102	A, Ab	29
4th Conjugation—		Ad	84
Active	76	Motion towards	12
Passive	104	Time and place	31
sum	94		
däre	63 n.	CONJUNCTIONS.	
Parts of Verbs	60	que	78
Tenses—		Si with future	80
Perfect Tenses	62-3	Cum	114
Sequences of Tenses	66		
Contractions	78	MISCELLANEOUS.	
Subjunctive Mood	65	Order of Words 3, 93, 97, 109	
Imperative Mood	68	Negation	10
Participles	91, 107	Vocabularies to Exercises	
Infinitive Mood	88-9	1-76	365
Impersonal Verbs	112		
Verb Forms	296-298		
PRONOUNS.			
Personal	54, 55		
Reflexive	55		
It and they	56		

PART II.

NOUNS.	PAGE		PAGE
Apposition	224	Accusative case	226
Apposition with adjective	224	Accusative and infinitive	
Uses of the Cases :—		147-156, 214	
Ablative case.	229-30	Double accusative with	
Ablative absolute	192-5	verbs of Making	190

	PAGE		PAGE
Dative case	227-8	can, could	175
Dative of person inter- ested	205-6	capio	142
Dative of purpose	207	Deponents like capio	165
Genitive case	232-4	coepi	217
Locative case	235-6	Compound Verbs	143-4
Domi, ruri	236	Compounds of sum	171-2
Nominative after passive verbs	190	consulo, etc.	228
Place	182, 235-6	Defective verbs	295
Nouns changing meaning in the plural	225	Deponent verbs	158, 160-1
Verbal nouns, translation of	208-11	eo and compounds	186-7
Verbal nouns governing the dative	210	facio, case after	190
		fearing, verbs of	206
		fero and compounds	179-81
		fio	189-90
		Gerund	145-6
		Gerundive	167, 170
		Gerundive with dative	168
		Gerundive of deponents	168
ADJECTIVES.		have, to	170
Adjectives used as nouns	237	Impersonal verbs	218-20
Adjectives with genitive in -ius	131	Passive used impersonally	221
Agreement of adjectives	237	inquit	215
Comparison	238	interest, refert	233
Idioms with the superla- tive	238	memini, odi, coepi, cog- novi	217
Nominal adjectives—		Passive, case after	190
Cardinal	134-8	Reflexive verbs	182-3
Ordinal	138-9	Possum	173-4
Distributive	238-9	Sequences of tenses	197
Numeral adverbs	238-9	Supines	212-3
Mille, milia	136	Tenses—	
VERBS.		Historic present	222
Agreement of verbs	222	Historic infinitive	223
Accusative and infinitive	147-50	Latin present and future	223
with future	151-3	Verbal nouns	208-10
with passive voice	150-6	Verbs governing ablative	164
with future passive	214	Verbs governing genitive	163
Notes on accusative and infinitive	214-5	videor	162
		volo, nolo, malo	176-8

Parts of Verbs—

	PAGE
1st Conjugation . . .	283
2nd Conjugation . . .	284
3rd Conjugation . . .	285
4th Conjugation . . .	292
Defective . . .	295
Deponents . . .	293-5

PRONOUNS.

Correlative pronouns	132-3, 243
Demonstrative pronouns	121-2, 125
Interrogative pronoun and adjective	123, 129
Indefinite pronouns.	240-1
Si quis . . .	241
Quidam . . .	241
Any . . .	241
Quisque . . .	241
Reciprocal pronouns	241
ipse . . .	123
nemo . . .	131
Personal pronouns	120
Relative pronouns	122, 126-8, 243
se and suus . . .	150, 279-80

ADVERBS.

Comparison of adverbs	245
formation of adverbs	244
haud, non, ne, ne . . .	
quidem . . .	245
iam, nunc . . .	245
not even . . .	166
Numeral adverbs	238-9
Place . . .	182, 235-6
Time, age . . .	270-1

PREPOSITIONS.

	PAGE
With accusative . . .	247-8
With ablative . . .	249
With accusative and ablative . . .	250

CONJUNCTIONS.

aut, vel . . .	252
co-ordinating and sub-ordinating . . .	251
Correlative conjunctions	252
neque . . .	252
quominus and quin . . .	258
when . . .	261
Interjections . . .	253-4

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

Definitions . . . §§	376-81
Questions and answers	117-118
Subjunctive in principal clauses . . .	263

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

Definitions . . .	254-5
Dependent clauses.	255
Purpose and consequence. . . .	255
Ut, ne, quo . . .	255-6
Verbs of fearing . . .	256
Quominus and quin . . .	258
Time . . .	259-61
Postquam . . .	260
Dum . . .	261
Cum . . .	260
Conditional clauses.	262-4
Concession, cause and comparison. . . .	266-7

	PAGE		PAGE
Relative clauses	268-9	Verb forms	296-8
Noun clauses—		Appendices—	
Reported speech	275-7	I. Pronunciation,	
Dependent questions	196-203	quantity, ac-	
		centuation	299
LATIN CONSTRUCTIONS.		II. Irregular Declen-	
Ablative absolute	192-5	sion	301
Accusative and Infini-		III. Gender of nouns	302
tive	147-50, 151,	IV. Parsing	306
	153, 155-6, 214	V. Rules for quantity	308
Reported speech	275-7	VI. Order of words	309
		Vocabularies to Exercises	
		Nos. 77-120	311-26
MISCELLANEOUS.		General Vocabularies—	
The Roman Calendar	272-4	I. Latin-English	327
Particles: num, -nē,		II. English-Latin	349
nonnē	118	Map of the Roman Em-	
		pire	xii
Alphabetical List of Irregular Verbs			379-380

Words in **Parentheses** () are explanatory.

Words in **Square Brackets** [] are to be omitted.

To find the object ask the question *Whom?* or *What?* after the verb.

The king praises the soldier. Praises whom? The soldier; therefore *soldier* is the **direct object** or **accusative case**.

7. The **genitive case**¹ denotes the **possessor**. It corresponds to the possessive case in English, and also to a noun preceded by *of*.

The *boy's* dog, or the dog *of the boy*. Here *boy's* and *of a boy* show the possessor, and both words are in the **genitive case**.

8. The **dative case**¹ is used to denote the person *to whom* a thing is given or *for whom* a thing is done.

He gives a book *to the boy*. He makes a kite *for the boy*. Here *to the boy* and *for the boy* denote the **indirect object**, and they are in the **dative case**.

9. The **ablative case** has many uses. Its commonest use is to denote the **instrument by** which or **with** which anything is done.

He kills the bull *with a sword*. Here *with a sword* is in the **ablative case**.

10. There are five classes or declensions of nouns in Latin, distinguished from each other by the ending of the genitive singular. In the first declension the genitive singular ends in **-ae**.

11. **First or -Ā declension.** Singular number:—

Nom.	mens- ā ²	<i>table</i> (subject)
Voc.	mens- ā	<i>O table</i>
Acc.	mens- am	<i>table</i> (object)
Gen.	mens- ae	<i>of a table</i> or <i>table's</i>
Dat.	mens- ae	<i>to</i> or <i>for a table</i>
Abl.	mens- ā	<i>by, with</i> or <i>from a table</i> .

¹ Other uses of this case will be shown later.

² Throughout this book the quantity (App. I., § 3, p. 299) is not marked when a vowel stands before two consonants nor in the case of a diphthong. As a rule too the short vowel standing before another vowel will not be indicated, though this is sometimes done.

Rule 1.—There are no words for *a*, *an* or *the* in Latin: *mensa* means *table* or *a table* or *the table*.

EXERCISE 1. Voc. 1, p. 365.

- (1) Write out with English the singular of *cāsa* and *agricōlā*.
 (2) *Viva voce*. Say the accusative case and meaning of the following nouns:—

nauta	agricola	insula	casa
regina	aqua	terra	puella

- (3) *Viva voce*. Say the Latin nominative and accusative of the following:—

the queen	water	the land	an island
a cottage	the farmer	a girl	the sailor

12. Before translating English into Latin or Latin into English it is necessary to find, by **parsing**, the case of each noun. Thus, *The sailor praises the cottage*: the verb is *praises*, and by asking the questions shown in §§ 4 and 6 we find that *sailor* is subject and *cottage* the object or accusative case. We translate therefore:—

The sailor praises the cottage, **Nauta casam laudat.**

Rule 2. Order of Words.—In arranging the words in a Latin sentence put the verb last.

EXERCISE 2. Voc. 2, p. 365.

A. Find the subject and object and then translate into Latin:—

- (1) The queen praises the farmer.
- (2) The queen praises the sailor.
- (3) The sailor praises the water.
- (4) The farmer praises the land.
- (5) The queen loves the girl.
- (6) The sailor loves water.
- (7) The farmer loves the island.
- (8) The girl loves the queen.

12. (a). Before translating the following, first **pick out the verb** and then find *from the ending* of each noun which word is the subject and which the object.

B. Translate into English :—

- (1) Puella casam laudat.
- (2) Regina puellam laudat.
- (3) Nauta agricolam amat.
- (4) Nauta insulam laudat.
- (5) Puella nautam amat.
- (6) Regina terram laudat.
- (7) Regina nautam amat.
- (8) Puella agricolam laudat.

3.—Of or 's is the sign of the genitive case.

To or for is the sign of the dative case.

The word in the **genitive case** is usually placed **before** the word denoting the thing possessed :—

agricolae filia, the farmer's daughter.

EXERCISE 3. Voc. 3, p. 365.

Viva voce. Put into Latin :—

to the eagle	wisdom (acc.)	the sailor's
of the daughter	of the life	to the farmer
of the queen	to the daughter	of the cottage
of the rose	to the girl	arrow (nom.)

- A. (1) The sailor gives a spear to the farmer.
 (2) The queen praises the wing of the eagle.
 (3) The sailor praises the daughter of the queen.
 (4) The girl gives money to the farmer.
 (5) The farmer's daughter shows the way.
 (6) The sailor shows the way to the girl.
 (7) The girl gives a rose to the queen.
 (8) The queen's daughter praises the farmer's cottage.

- B. (1) Regina pecuniam puellae dat.
 (2) Nautae agricola rosam dat.
 (3) Nautae filia agricolam laudat.
 (4) Agricola aquilae alam laudat.
 (5) Regina agricolae filiam laudat.
 (6) Puella viam reginae monstrat.
 (7) Agricola reginae aquam dat.
 (8) Nautae filia reginam insulae laudat.

13. Singular and Plural of **mensa** :—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom.	mens- ā <i>table</i>	mens- ae	<i>tables</i>
Voc.	mens- ā <i>O table</i>	mens- ae	<i>O tables</i>
Acc.	mens- am <i>table</i>	mens- ās	<i>tables</i>
Gen.	mens- ae <i>of a table</i>	mens- ārum	<i>of tables</i>
Dat.	mens- ae <i>to or for a table</i>	mens- īs	<i>to or for tables</i>
Abl.	mens- ā <i>by, with or from a table</i>	mens- īs	<i>by, with or from tables</i>

For irregularities of declension see p. 301.

13 (a). **Gender**.—Nouns of the first declension are *feminine*, except names of men, *e.g.*, **nauta**, *sailor*

EXERCISE 4.

- (1) Write out the plural of **rōsa**, **nauta** and **hasta**.
 (2) *Viva voce*. Put into Latin :—

to sailors	girls (nom.)	farmers (acc)
of islands	of girls	to queens
of roses	of daughters	of wings
cottages (acc.)	to a daughter	roses (acc.)

A. 1. The queen praises the roses. 2. The sailor gives money to the farmers. 3. The farmer shows the way to the sailors. 4. The sailor praises the farmer's cottage. 5. The

sailor praises the cottages of the farmers. 6. The farmer gives roses to the daughter of the sailor.

B. 1. Agricola aquam nautis dat. 2. Agricola viam puellis monstrat. 3. Regina aquilarum alas laudat. 4. Puellarum sapientiam regina laudat. 5. Puella reginae casas monstrat. 6. Filia, O regina, nautarum hastas laudat.

14. SINGULAR.

ămăt (he, she or it) loves
laudăt „ praises
dăt „ gives
monstrăt „ shows
terrăt „ terrifies
hăbăt „ has

PLURAL.

ămant (they) love
laudant „ praise
dant „ give
monstrant „ show
terrent „ terrify
hăbent „ have

Rule 4.—The verb must agree with its subject in number and person.

The girl **praises**

Puella **laudat**

The girls **praise**

Puellae **laudant**

Rule 5.—By, with or from is the sign of the **ablative case**,

EXERCISE 5.

Viva voce :—

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| (1) the daughter loves | the spear terrifies | water terrifies |
| the daughters love | the spears terrify | queens praise |
| the sailor praises | the girl has | sailors have |
| sailors praise | the girls have | girls show |
| (2) with spears | girls (acc.) | sailors (acc.) |
| with water | to girls | farmers (acc.) |
| by wisdom | of wings | of farmers |
| of eagles | to sailors | with islands |
| | | with wings |
| | | by the spear |
| | | O girls |
| | | of wisdom |

EXERCISE 6. Voc. 6, p. 365.

- (1) Decline, singular and plural, *spina* and *silva*.

(2) *Viva voce*:—

to the inhabitant	by a crown	to girls
to the inhabitants	by crowns	girls (acc.)
of the wood	with thorns	with water
of the woods	life (acc.)	farmers'
O dove	thorns (acc.)	of islands
O doves	woods (nom.)	wisdom (acc.)

* * Before translating read over § 12 (a), and remember that a singular verb has a singular subject and a plural verb a plural subject (R. 4).

A. 1. *Aquila columbam terret.* 2. *Aquilae puellam terrent.*
 3. *Regina puellam rosis ornat.* 4. *Incolae aquam nautae dant.*¹ 5. *Incola insulae puellis columbas dat.* 6. *Rosarum spinae reginam terrent.* 7. *Aquila alā columbam vulnerat.*
 8. *Puellae casas rosis ornant.* 9. *Puellae rosis aquam dant.*
 10. *Nautae hastam dat.*² 11. *Hastā nauta agricolam vulnerat.*
 12. *Silvas nautae incola monstrat.*

B. 1. The farmer praises the woods. 2. The farmers praise the islands. 3. The thorns wound the girl. 4. The eagles terrify the queen. 5. The sailors praise the inhabitants. 6. Girls love roses. 7. The inhabitants give a crown to the queen. 8. The girl praises the life of the sailor. 9. The girls give money to the sailors. 10. The sailor praises the cottages of the farmers. 11. The sailor wounds the eagle with a spear. 12. The girls adorn the queen with roses. 13. [They]³ give roses to the queen of the island. 14. To the inhabitants of the island the sailor gives money. 15. The roses wound the queen with [their]³ thorns. 16. The farmer shows the woods to the

¹ Translate in two ways.

² Since *dat* is singular the subject must be singular. *Hastam* cannot be the subject because it is in the accusative case, and if *nautae* were the subject the verb would be plural. The subject therefore is in the verb (see Ex. 6, B. 13, and Rule 30, p. 61).

³ Words in square brackets [] are to be omitted.

sailor. 17. The farmers give water to the sailors. 18. The inhabitants of the island terrify the queen.

15. The second or -O declension :—

The second declension consists of nouns whose nominative ends in -us, -er and -um, with the genitive in -i.

(1) Nouns in -us (masc.).

Nom. dōmīn- ūs	lord	dōmīn- ī	lor
Voc. dōmīn- ē	O lord	dōmīn- ī	O lords
Acc. dōmīn- um	lord	dōmīn- ōs	lords
Gen. dōmīn- ī	of a lord	dōmīn- ōrum	of lords
Dat. dōmīn- ō	to or for a lord	dōmīn- īs	to or for lords
Abl. dōmīn- ō	by, with or from a lord	dōmīn- īs	by, with or from lords

16. Special cases :—

(a) The **vocative singular**¹ of proper nouns ending in -ius contracts -ie to -i, and the same rule applies to filius, son :—

Clāudius (a Roman name)	Claudī , O <i>Clāudius</i>
filius , son	fili , O son

(b) The vocative of **Dēus**, a God, is the same as the nominative: **Deus**, O God.

(2) (a) Nouns in -er (masc.).

Nom. āgēr	field	agr- ī	fields
Voc. āgēr	O field	agr- ī	O fields
Acc. agr- um	field	agr- ōs	fields
Gen. agr- ī	of a field	agr- ōrum	of fields
Dat. agr- ō	to or for a field	agr- īs	to or for fields
Abl. agr- ō	by, with or from a field	agr- īs	by, with or from fields

NOTE.—Nouns declined like **ager** drop the *e* of the nominative in all cases except the vocative.

Most nouns in -er are declined like *ager*.

¹ The vocative of other words in -ius was either not used or was regular,

(2) (b) Nouns in **-er** like **puer** (masc.).

Nom.	pŭēr	boy	pŭēr-ī	boys
Voc.	pŭēr	O boy	pŭēr-ī	O boys
Acc.	pŭēr-um	boy	pŭēr-ōs	boys
Gen.	pŭēr-ī	of a boy	pŭēr-ōrum	of boys
Dat.	pŭēr-ō	to or for a boy	pŭēr-īs	to or for boys
Abl.	pŭēr-ō	by, with or from a boy	pŭēr-īs	by, with or from boys

17.—The chief nouns declined like **puer**, *i.e.*, which keep the *e* of the nominative in all cases, are :—

gēnēr	gen. ¹ gēnērī	son-in-law
sōcēr	„ sōcērī	father-in-law
signīfer	„ signīfērī	standard-bearer
vespēr	„ vespērī	evening
libērī	„ libērōrum	children

18. **Vir**, a man, is similarly declined :—

Sing.	vīr, O vīr, vīrum, vīrī,	vīrō, vīrō
Plur.	vīrī, O vīrī, vīrōs, vīrōrum, vīrīs, vīrīs	

(3) Nouns in **-um** (neut.).

Nom.	Regn-um	a kingdom	Regn-ā	kingdoms
Voc.	Regn-um	O kingdom	Regn-ā	O kingdoms
Acc.	Regn-um	a kingdom	Regn-ā	kingdoms
Gen.	Regn-ī	of a kingdom	Regn-ōrum	of kingdoms
Dat.	Regn-ō	to or for a kingdom	Regn-īs	to or for kingdoms
Abl.	Regn-ō	by, with or from a kingdom	Regn-īs	by, with or from kingdoms

19. Rules for the declension of nouns :—

(1) Except in nouns of the second declension in **-us** (like *dominus*) the vocative is always like the nominative.

(2) In neuter nouns the *nominative*, *vocative* and *accusative* are always the same.

¹ In Dictionaries it is customary to give the genitive of a word in addition to the nominative to show the stem of the word (§ 2).

(3) In neuter nouns the *nominative, vocative* and *accusative* plural always end in -ă.

19 (a). **Gender** of second declension nouns.—Nouns in -us and -er are **masculine**; nouns in -um are **neuter**.

Exceptions.—(a) *Dŏmus, house*, and *hŭmus, the ground*, are **feminine**.

(b) *Pēlāgus, the sea*, *vīrus, poison*, and *vulgus, the common people*, are **neuter**.

Rule 6.—When an English verb is made **negative** it is often broken up into two words. *The farmer praises the land. The farmer does not praise the land.* In translating such sentences remember that the verb **does praise** is represented in Latin by one word. The sentence really means *the farmer praises not the land*.

Agrīcolă terram nŏn laudăt.

EXERCISE 7.

Learn the declension of *dominus*, p. 8, and vocabulary, p. 366.

(1) Write out, singular and plural, the declension of *carrus*, *amicus* and *equus*.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

of the cart	of a village	to a lamb	by a bull
of the friend	village (acc.)	of a lamb	by the wind
to the friend	with a garden	of a wolf	wind (acc.)
friends (acc.)	garden (acc.)	of a bull	to a horse
horses (acc.)	of winds	wolves (nom.)	lambs (nom.)
of horses	of friends	to wolves	friends (nom.)
to friends	of bulls	by carts	villages (acc.)
by winds	bulls (acc.)	of carts	gardens (acc.)

- A. 1. *Taurus agnos vulcerat.* 2. *Amicus hortos habet.*
 3. *Amici taurus equum terret.* 4. *Venti lupos non terrent.*
 5. *Amici carros laudat.* 6. *Nauta agnos et equos laudat.*
 7. *Puella aquam agno dat.* 8. *Filia hortum domino monstrat.*
 9. *Agni lupos non amant.* 10. *Agricola aquam tauris dat.*

11. Dominus vicorum equos laudat. 12. Hortis insulam agricolae ornant.

B. 1. The lord has carts and horses. 2. The wind terrifies the bull. 3. The wolf terrifies the lamb. 4. The wolves terrify the lambs. 5. The friend's horse wounds the bull. 6. The friends praise the lord's lambs. 7. [They] give a horse to the friend. 8. The lamb does not like the wolf. 9. The island, O friend, has villages. 10. The sailors terrify the bulls with a spear.

EXERCISE 8.

Learn §§ 15-16.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *filius*, and plural only of *gladius* and *nuntius*.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

with a sword	of the gods	of the Romans	to Claudius
with swords	of the sons	of the son	messengers(acc.)
messenger(acc.)	to the messenger	O son	Gauls(nom.)
sons(nom.)	to the gods	O Claudius	of the Gauls.

A. 1. Claudius coronam filio dat. 2. Galli Romanos non laudant. 3. Nuntio gladium dominus dat. 4. Romanorum nuntii Gallos terrent. 5. Claudius gladios et hastas nuntiis dat. 6. Filii nautae taurum gladiis terrent. 7. Nuntii hortos Domini laudant. 8. O fili, deus sapientiam Claudio dat. 9. Domini filii tauros habent. 10. Romani hortorum deum rosis ornant.

B. 1. The farmer gives a sword to [his] son. 2. The lord's sword terrifies the messengers. 3. The messenger of the Romans praises Claudius. 4. The son terrifies the messengers with a sword. 5. The friends of Claudius terrify the Gauls with swords. 6. The swords of the Romans terrify the Gauls. 7. O Claudius, [thy] messenger does not terrify the Gauls. 8. They give swords and horses to the messengers. 9. The gods,

O son, give wisdom to the Romans. 10. The friends of the Gauls wound the Romans with swords. /

Rule 7.—The Latin preposition **in** means both *in* and *into*.

In meaning *in* is followed by the **ablative**.¹

In meaning *into* is followed by the **accusative**.¹

The farmer is **in the field** Agricola **in agro** est

The farmer runs **into the field** Agricola **in agrum** currit

EXERCISE 9.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *culter*, *faber*.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

knife (acc.)	with knives	to a servant	of a book
books (acc.)	to a workman	servant (acc.)	with a book
of books	of a workman	wild boars (acc.)	to workmen
with a knife	of workmen	of fields	O workman
in a garden	in an island	into a cottage	in the village
into a garden	into an island	into the water	into the wood

A. 1. In vico sunt fabri. 2. Fabri filius agros laudat.
3. Faber cultrum ministro dat. 4. Fabrorum libros laudant.²
5. Puella in casam currit. 6. Apri in silvam currunt. 7. Aper nunc in horto est. 8. Minister fabros cultro terret. 9. Dominus agros ministro dat. 10. Tauri in vicum currunt.

B. 1. The workmen are in the field. 2. The servant gives a knife to the workman. 3. The servants terrify the workman with a knife. 4. The girl praises the books of the lord. 5. The workmen terrify the wild-boars with knives. 6. The wild-boars run into the wood. 7. The lord of the fields praises the workman. 8. The servant gives the knife to the son. 9. The sons of the workman run into the wood. 10. The table is in the cottage.

¹ Another way of putting this is : **In** meaning *rest in a place* takes the **ablative** ; **in** meaning *motion towards a place* takes the **accusative**.

The pupil will notice later on that whenever a preposition implies motion towards, it requires the accusative.

² See note 2, p. 7.

SECOND DECLENSION.

EXERCISE 10.

Learn *puer* and §§ 17, 18, p. 9.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *socer*, and plural only of *libëri*.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

to the son-in-law	of children	children (acc.)
of the father-in-law	of the standard-bearer	son-in-law (acc.)
sons-in-law (acc.)	the fathers-in-law (acc.)	men (nom.)
to children	evening (acc.)	of sons-in-law
of men	books (nom.)	in a field
to men	children (acc.)	in fields
men (acc.)	to the standard-bearer	into the village
to a man	standard-bearers (acc.)	into the garden

A. 1. Vir generum laudat. 2. Viri liberos laudant. 3. Socer virum amat. 4. Signifero pecuniam dant. 5. Viri liberos socer amat. 6. Liberi viris libros dant. 7. Viro signifer hastam dat. 8. Liberorum cultros laudant. 9. Signifero vir hastam dat. 10. Signiferum hastā Galli terrent. 11. Viri in agro sunt. 12. Viri in hortum soceri currunt. 13. Romanorum signiferi sunt in vico. 14. O fili, Romani Gallos terrent. 15. Viri apros cultris vulnerant. 16. Domini tauri in silvam currunt.

B. 1. The men give knives to the boys. 2. The son-in-law praises the standard-bearers. 3. The sons of the men run into the garden. 4. The children are now in the garden. 5. The boy wounds the lamb with a knife. 6. [He] gives a garden to the servant's son-in-law. 7. The owner (= lord) of the gardens has knives. 8. Boys do not praise books. 9. The father-in-law praises the standard-bearer. 10. The girls give roses to the son-in-law. 11. The sons of the man terrify the workmen with knives. 12. The children praise the men's books.

EXERCISE 11.

Learn *regnum*, p. 9, and § 19, p. 9.

(1) Write out *dōnum* and *praemium*, singular and plural.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

of gold	by danger	to temples	camp (acc.)
gifts	by dangers	in a temple	of shields
of gifts	rewards	in the town	by shields
towns	temples	in the camp	with gold

A. 1. Romani scuta habent. 2. Oppidum hortos habet. 3. Agricola aurum templo dat. 4. Puer domini dona laudat. 5. Praemia puero dant. 6. Signifer hastam habet; dominus scutum (habet). 7. Poetae in templo sunt. 8. Dominus puerum donis delectat. 9. Romani castra Gallorum non laudant. 10. Viri sunt in castris Romanorum. 11. Signifer in castra Romanorum currit. 12. Pericula viae puellam terrent. 13. Puellae templa auro ornant. 14. Sunt templa in oppidis. 15. Galli signiferi arma laudant. 16. Scuta Romanorum fabros delectant.

B. 1. The lord gives silver to the boy. 2. The woman gives rewards to the boys. 3. The temples are in the town. 4. The farmers praise the temples of the town. 5. The arms are in the camp. 6. The women give arms to the boys. 7. The poet's book praises the gifts of the lord. 8. The lord delights the servant with gold. 9. The children of the son-in-law run into the temple. 10. The towns have temples and gardens. 11. The island has towns and villages. 12. Gold delights men; roses [delight] children. 13. The farmer delights [his] daughter with gifts. 14. The girls adorn the temples with arms. 15. The standard-bearer gives [his] shield to the temple. 16. Arms, O son, terrify children.

20. (a) A **transitive verb** denotes an action which passes over from the **doer**, *i.e.*, the subject, to some person or thing, *i.e.*, the **direct object**.

(b) An **intransitive verb** denotes an action which does not pass over from the doer to any other person or thing, *i.e.*, it has **no direct object**.

Transitive: *The boy strikes the table.* **Intransitive:** *Birds fly.*

(c) In the sentence *Britain is an island*, the verb *is* does not imply an action at all. It simply couples the two words *Britain* and *island* (which mean the same thing). As *island* completes the meaning of *Britain* by explaining what it is, it is often called the complement and the coupling verb *is* is called the copula.

Nouns or pronouns coupled by *is*, *are*, etc., are always in the same case.

Rule 8.—The noun standing after the verb *is* or *are* is put in the **nominative case**. See Rule 51, p. 96.

Britain is an island Britannia est insula

EXERCISE 12

- A. 1. *Rhenus est fluvius.* 2. *Claudius est reginae filius.*
 3. *Neptunus est deus pelagi.* 4. *Dona causa laetitiae sunt.*
 5. *Agnus est praeda luporum.* 6. *Hasta est donum domini.*
 7. *Bella sunt semper mala.* 8. *Domini donum est corona.* 9. *Germania est patria poetarum.* 10. *Insulae sunt patria fabrorum.* 11. *Saepe aurum est causa malorum.* 12. *In silvis sunt columbae et aquilae.* 13. *Dat scuta et hastas viris.* 14. *Romani nuntios habent.* 15. *O fili, sapientia est donum deorum.* 16. *In Britannia sunt fluvii et silvae.*

- B. 1. The land is an island. 2. The workmen are slaves.
 3. The Rhine is a river of Germany. 4. Money is often the cause of joy. 5. Lambs are always the cause of joy to children.
 6. Diana is the goddess of the woods. 7. Neptune is the god of rivers. 8. Gold is often the cause of anger. 9. The anger of the goddess terrifies the inhabitants of the land. 10. The lord of the slaves is a poet. 11. The island is the fatherland of poets. 12. The inhabitants of the islands are sailors. 13. The men are the messengers of the Romans. 14. War is always an evil to men. 15. Claudius is the messenger of the Gauls. 16. O Claudius, the gift of the lord is a sword. 17. The land has woods and rivers. 18. In the island are wolves and lambs. 19. The lambs run into the woods. 20. The wolves wound the lambs. 21. The lambs are the prey of the wolves.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

21. Latin adjectives are declined just like Latin nouns, and they have different forms to show gender. Many adjectives end in *-us* for masculine, *-a* for feminine, *-um* for neuter. Thus the Latin for *good* is *bōnus* (masc.), *bōna* (fem.), *bōnum* (neut.).

Masculines like *bonus* are declined like *dominus*, feminines like *bona* are declined like *mensa*, neuters like *bonum* are declined like *regnum*.

1. Bōnus, bōna, bōnum, good.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. bōn- us	bōn- ā	bōn- um	bōn- ī	bōn- ae	bōn- ā
Voc. bōn- ē	bōn- ā	bōn- um	bōn- ī	bōn- ae	bōn- ā
Acc. bōn- um	bōn- am	bōn- um	bōn- ōs	bōn- ās	bōn- ā
Gen. bōn- ī	bōn- ae	bōn- ī	bōn- ōrum	bōn- ārum	bōn- ōrum
Dat. bōn- ō	bōn- ae	bōn- ō	bōn- īs	bōn- īs	bōn- īs
Abl. bōn- ō	bōn- ā	bōn- ō	bōn- īs	bōn- īs	bōn- īs

21 (a). Some other adjectives have the masculine in *-er*, feminine in *-a*, neuter in *-um*. Thus *black* = *nīger* (masc.), *nīgra* (fem.), *nīgrum* (neut.).

The only difference between these adjectives and words like *bonus* is that the masculine *nīger* is declined like *ager*.

2. Nīger, nīgra, nīgrum, black.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.			
N. and V.	nīger	nigr- ā	nigr- ae	nigr- ā	
Acc.	nigr- um	nigr- am	nigr- ae	nigr- ā	
Gen.	nigr- ī	nigr- ae	nigr- ī	nigr- ārum	
Dat.	nigr- ō	nigr- ae	nigr- īs	nigr- īs	
Abl.	nigr- ō	nigr- ā	nigr- īs	nigr- īs	
N. and V.	nigr- ī		nigr- ae	nigr- ā	
Acc.	nigr- ōs		nigr- ās	nigr- ā	
Gen.	nigr- ōrum		nigr- ārum	nigr- ōrum	
Dat.	nigr- īs		nigr- īs	nigr- īs	
Abl.	nigr- īs		nigr- īs	nigr- īs	

~~FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES.~~

21 (b). A few adjectives ending in **-er** keep the *e* throughout. The masculine of such adjectives is declined like *puer*.

3. **Tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrum, tender.**

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. and V.	tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um
Acc.	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-am	tĕnĕr-um
Gen.	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ī
Dat.	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ō
Abl.	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ā	tĕnĕr-ō

PLURAL.

N. and V.	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Acc.	tĕnĕr-ōs	tĕnĕr-ās	tĕnĕr-ă
Gen.	tĕnĕr-ōrum	tĕnĕr-ārum	tĕnĕr-ōrum
Dat.	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs
Abl.	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs

22. Most adjectives in **-er** are like *niger* and omit the *e*. The following are like *tener* and keep the *e* :—

Āspĕr, aspĕra, aspĕrum	<i>rough</i>
Libĕr, libĕra, libĕrum	<i>free</i>
Mīsĕr, mīsĕra mīsĕrum	<i>wretched</i>
Prospĕr, prospĕra, prospĕrum	<i>prosperous</i>
Tĕnĕr, tĕnĕra, tĕnĕrum	<i>tender</i>

23. Examples of nouns and adjectives declined together :—

SINGULAR.

Masc.

Nom.	bŏnus	dŏmĭnus
Voc.	bŏnĕ	dŏmĭnĕ
Acc.	bŏnum	dŏmĭnum
Gen.	bŏnĭ	dŏmĭnĭ
Dat.	bŏnŏ	dŏmĭnŏ
Abl.	bŏnŏ	dŏmĭnŏ

PLURAL.

Masc.

Nom.	bŏnĭ	dŏmĭnĭ
Voc.	bŏnĭ	dŏmĭnĭ
Acc.	bŏnŏs	dŏmĭnŏs
Gen.	bŏnŏrum	dŏmĭnŏrum
Dat.	bŏnĭs	dŏmĭnĭs
Abl.	bŏnĭs	dŏmĭnĭs

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
<i>Fem.</i>				<i>Fem.</i>			
Nom.	bŏnă	rĕgīnă		Nom.	bŏnae	rĕgīnae	
Voc.	bŏnă	rĕgīnă		Voc.	bŏnae	rĕgīnae	
Acc.	bŏnam	rĕgīnam		Acc.	bŏnās	rĕgīnās	
Gen.	bŏnae	rĕgīnae		Gen.	bŏnārum	rĕgīnārum	
Dat.	bŏnae	rĕgīnae		Dat.	bŏnīs	rĕgīnīs	
Abl.	bŏnā	rĕgīnā		Abl.	bŏnīs	rĕgīnīs	
<i>Neut.</i>				<i>Neut.</i>			
Nom.	bŏnum	regnum		Nom.	bŏnă	regnă	
Voc.	bŏnum	regnum		Voc.	bŏnă	regnă	
Acc.	bŏnum	regnum		Acc.	bŏnă	regnă	
Gen.	bŏnī	regnī		Gen.	bŏnŏrum	regnŏrum	
Dat.	bŏnŏ	regnŏ		Dat.	bŏnīs	regnīs	
Abl.	bŏnŏ	regnŏ		Abl.	bŏnīs	regnīs	

24. In declining together words like *famous poet* it must be remembered that, as *poēta* is masculine, we must write *clārus poēta*, *clarus* being declined like *bonus*, *poēta* like *mensa*, thus:—

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
Nom.	clārus	poētă		clārī	poētae		
Voc.	clārĕ	poētă		clārī	poētae		
Acc.	clārum	poētam		clārŏs	poētās		
Gen.	clārī	poētae		clārŏrum	poētārum		
Dat.	clārŏ	poētae		clārīs	poētīs		
Abl.	clārŏ	poētă		clārīs	poētīs		

Rule 9.—The adjective agrees with its noun in number, gender and case. Thus *puellam bonam*, *domino bono*, *poeta claro*.

Rule 10.—The adjective in Latin is frequently placed after the noun.

A small cottage, Căsa parva.

EXERCISE 13.

Learn *bonus*, p. 16, and Vocab. 13, p. 367.

A. Give the nominative and accusative of:—

good queen	sharp spear	large kingdom	wild eagle
white rose	long spear	famous man	timid boy
white horse	large garden	famous kingdom	timid girl
little cottage	large cottage	wild horse	timid poet

B. Give nominative and genitive of:—

good boy	timid messenger	famous inhabitant	strong horse
good land	timid queen	famous god	strong workman
little boy	timid farmer	famous workman	great danger
little cottage	pleasing rose	pleasing gift	great town

C. Give nominative and accusative of:—

famous queens	long spears	small villages	strong shields
famous sailors	long islands	small temples	strong towns
many books	long shields	small gifts	sharp swords
many dangers	long knives	small fields	sharp spears

EXERCISE 14.

Rule 11.—When we say *the island is small*, the adjective *small* tells what sort of island just as if we said *a small island*, and it must agree with *island* (§ 20 (c)).

The island is small, Insula parva est

The islands are small, Insulae parvae sunt

A. 1. *Hasta longa est.* 2. *Hastae Gallorum longae sunt.*
 3. *Poetae clari sunt.* 4. *Equi validi sunt.* 5. *Regina bona est.*
 6. *Lupi sunt feri.* 7. *Templum est magnum.* 8. *Templa sunt magna.*
 9. *Pueri sunt timidi.* 10. *Liberi Claudii timidi sunt.*

B. 1. *The wall is high.* 2. *The slaves are timid.* 3. *The roses are white.*
 4. *The sword is sharp.* 5. *The boy is timid.*
 6. *The workman is timid.* 7. *The workmen are strong.* 8. *The dove is white.*
 9. *The wings of the eagle are strong.* 10. *The knife of the workman is strong.*

EXERCISE 15.

Decline in full *ala alba*, *ager latus* and *templum longum*.

A. 1. Bona regina pueros validos laudat. 2. Agricola cultrum acutum servo dat. 3. Servus templa puellae parvae monstrat. 4. Rosae albae puellis sunt gratae. 5. Nuntius pueros timidos terret. 6. Galli nuntium Romanorum terrent. 7. Puellae feminam rosis albis delectant. 8. Servum acuta hasta vir terret. 9. Multa templa sunt in insula. 10. Insulae fluvii sunt multi et longi. 11. Tauri feri in agrum currunt. 12. Agricola multa dona nuntiis dat.

B. 1. The farmer has many horses. 2. The girls adorn the cottage with white roses. 3. Roses have sharp thorns. 4. The shields of the famous Romans are long. 5. Many bulls terrify the little boy. 6. The great queen gives wide fields to the farmer. 7. The long island has large temples. 8. The famous town has many inhabitants. 9. They give shields and swords to the strong workman. 10. The Gauls terrify the Romans with [their] long spears. 11. The sons of the timid women run into the temple. 12. The island has broad rivers and many fields.

EXERCISE 16.

Learn *niger*, p. 16.

(1) Give nominative and accusative of :—

sick woman	thin lambs	red rose	sacred fields
sick boy	our garden	beautiful gardens	sacred temple
sick slave	our friends	beautiful temples	sacred garden
thin lamb	beautiful rose	beautiful temple	sacred island

(2) Put into Latin :—

with beautiful roses	of sick girls	of our island
to our friends	of black horses	of black eagles
to our friend	to black horses	of sacred temples
of the sick girl	our island (acc.)	sacred gifts (acc.)

A. 1. Puella spinas rubrae rosae timet. 2. Insula longa templa sacra habet. 3. Aagri agricolae lupos macros timent.

4. In silvis sunt templa nostri Dei. 5. Macri agni incolas vici
timent. 6. Agricolae servi nigri sunt. 7. Pueros parvos nauta
validus cultro terret. 8. Regina nostra aurum templis sacris dat.
9. Filia tua, serve timide, spinas rosarum rubrarum timet.
10. Tauri vestri puellas pulchras vulnerant.

B. 1. The red rose has many thorns. 2. Little boys fear
sick wolves. 3. The black slave shows the temple to the
beautiful queen. 4. The master (= lord) of the black slaves
gives money to the temples. 5. Wolves always fear sharp
knives. 6. The walls of the sacred gardens are high. 7. The
little girl has a beautiful dove. 8. The woman gives a beautiful
love to the little girl. 9. Your swords terrify our children.
10. Red roses always have sharp thorns. 11. The girls adorn
our queen with beautiful roses. 12. The timid inhabitant
shows the way to the sick sailor.

EXERCISE 17.

Learn *tener*, p. 17, and §§ 22, 23

(1) Give nominative and accusative of:—

a tender boy	a free inhabitant	a rough way	a famous war
tender boys	free inhabitants	a false friend	free sailors
a wretched war	a prosperous town	beautiful roses	our plans
wretched wars	prosperous towns	a tender queen	great rewards

(2) Put into Latin:—

so a prosperous town	to beautiful temples	of wretched women
O wretched slave	O wretched inhabitants	to a tender friend
of black horses	by famous wars	with rough words
of a beautiful island	to free workmen	of the sick sailor

A. 1. Regina multos libros tenerae filiae dat. 2. Verba
lupi avidi agnum tenerum terrent. 3. Bella prosperis oppidis
non grata sunt. 4. In pelago sunt multae insulae. 5. Miseri
incolae in silvam currunt. 6. Lupus teneros agnos terret.
7. Nuntius Romanorum incolis liberis gladios dat. 8. In

Britannia sunt multae silvae. 9. Prosperi incolae insulae Deos laudant. 10. Tua verba, parve fili, tenerum agnum terrent.

B. 1. The tender queen gives money to the wretched girls. 2. The little lambs fear the fierce (*asper*) wolf. 3. The farmers are inhabitants of a prosperous land. 4. Rough words terrify the tender minds of children. 5. The towns of Britain are famous. 6. The beautiful woods are sacred to our god. 7. The island has rough fields. 8. The plans of the wretched Gauls are known to the Romans. 9. The men of the island wound the sacred horses of the god with knives. 10. O wretched queen, the children fear [thy] angry words.

25. The ~~Third~~ Declension, i.e., consonant or -I declension.

The third declension consists of nouns with stems ending in some consonant or in -i.

- (1) Nouns with stems ending in a **guttural** or throat letter, i.e., **c** or **g**.

For gender see Appendix, p. 303.

dux (masc.),	iūdex (com. ¹),	rex (masc.),]
<i>leader</i>	<i>judge</i>	<i>king</i>

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	dux	iūdex	rex
Acc.	duc-em	iudic-em	rēg-em
Gen.	duc-īs	iudic-īs	rēg-īs
Dat.	duc-ī	iudic-ī	rēg-ī
Abl.	duc-ē	iudic-ē	rēg-ē

PLURAL.

N. and V.	duc-ēs	iudic-ēs	rēg-ēs
Acc.	duc-ēs	iudic-ēs	rēg-ēs
Gen.	duc-um	iudic-um	rēg-um
Dat.	duc-ibus	iudic-ibus	rēg-ibus
Abl.	duc-ibus	iudic-ibus	rēg-ibus

¹ Some words can be applied to males or females. These are said to be of **common gender**. Such are *iūdex*, *cānis*, *cīvis*, etc. In exercises, however, words of common gender should be made **masculine** unless there is some special reason for making them feminine.

EXERCISE 18.

Viva voce :—

by peace	to the flock	by voices	a nut (acc.)
voices	of flocks	of light	of nuts
of voices	snow (acc.)	a flock (acc.)	with a nut
with light	peace (acc.)	by snow	voices (acc.)

white snow ¹	of a long peace	a small light (acc.)
of white snow	many nuts (acc.)	of timid judges
to the good king	many kings (acc.)	O strong leader
to the long peace	many voices (nom.)	of our leaders

A. 1. Luna nautis lucem dat. 2. Romanorum leges iudicibus notae sunt. 3. Puer voce iudicis terretur. 4. In agris nunc est nix. ~~5.~~ Lunae luce nauta insulam videt. ~~6.~~ Leges sunt necessariae ducibus et regibus. 7. Iudici bonae leges iucundae sunt. 8. Romani pacem Gallis dant. ~~9.~~ Cur regem clarum iudex timet? ~~10.~~ Pax longa incolas insulae delectat. ~~11.~~ Ira iudicum captivis perniciosa est. 12. In castris sunt Romanorum duces. 13. Pueri et puellae nuces amant. ~~14.~~ Voce regis magni servi miseri terrentur.

B. 1. Wars are pleasant to leaders. 2. The leader's sword does not frighten the judge. 3. The girl fears the snow. 4. The voices of our leaders praise the long peace. 5. The king gives the booty to the leaders. 6. The captives are terrified by the voice of the leader. 7. Anger is destructive to peace. 8. The farmers praise the light of the moon. 9. The moon is sacred to Diana. 10. Why do judges praise good laws? 11. The kings of the Romans are famous. 12. The good boy is not terrified by laws.

(2) *Nouns with stems ending in dentals, i.e., teeth letters,
d and t.*

For gender see Appendix, p. 303.

pēs (masc.), <i>foot</i>	mīlēs (masc.), <i>soldier</i>	aetās (fem.), <i>age</i>
------------------------------------	---	------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	pēs	mīlēs	aetās
Acc.	pēd- em	milit- em	aetāt- em
Gen.	pēd- īs	milit- īs	aetāt- īs
Dat.	pēd- ī	milit- ī	aetāt- ī
Abl.	pēd- ē	milit- ē	aetāt- ē

PLURAL.

N. and V.	pēd- ēs	milit- ēs	aetāt- ēs
Acc.	pēd- ēs	milit- ēs	aetāt- ēs
Gen.	pēd- um	milit- um	aetāt- um
Dat.	pēd- ibus	milit- ibus	aetāt- ibus
Abl.	pēd- ibus	milit- ibus	aetāt- ibus

(3) *Nouns with stems ending in labials, i.e., lip letters,
b, p, m.*

For gender see Appendix, p. 304.

trabs (fem.), <i>beam</i>	princeps (masc.), <i>chief</i>	hiems (fem.), <i>winter</i>
-------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	trabs	princeps	hiems
Acc.	trāb- em	princip- em	hiēm- em
Gen.	trāb- īs	princip- īs	hiēm- īs
Dat.	trāb- ī	princip- ī	hiēm- ī
Abl.	trāb- ē	princip- ē	hiēm- ē

PLURAL.

N. and V.	trāb- ēs	princip- ēs	hiēm- ēs
Acc.	trāb- ēs	princip- ēs	hiēm- ēs
Gen.	trāb- um	princip- um	hiēm- um
Dat.	trāb- ibus	princip- ibus	hiēm- ibus
Abl.	trāb- ibus	princip- ibus	hiēm- ibus

EXERCISE 19.

Viva voce:—

to the companion	horse-soldier (acc.)	of hostages
to the companions	foot-soldier (acc.)	to states
of the guardian	of praise	to foot-soldiers
of the guardians	the hostage (acc.)	by praise
to the famous chief	timid hostages (nom.)	of angry chiefs
the famous chief (acc.)	timid hostages (acc.)	the long winter (acc.)
of a good companion	of a great state	to many companions
of a long beam	of great states	of our chief

A. 1. Princeps equitem laudat. 2. Equiti rex equum dat.
 3. Ducis vox obsidem terret. 4. Civitati dux multas leges
 dat. ~~¶~~ Obsidum custodes sunt in silva. ~~¶~~ Validi equites
 hiemem non timent. ~~¶~~ Magnā celeritate pedites in silvam
 currunt. 8. Principibus leges sunt necessariae. ~~¶~~ Quis timido
 militi laudem dat? ~~¶~~ 10. Princeps obsides in silvam mittit. ~~¶~~
 Faber longas trabes habet. 12. Pedites custodes templi gladio
 vulnerant.

B. 1. The hostages run into the temple. 2. Who praises
 the long winter? 3. Winter is not always pleasant to foot-
 soldiers. 4. The voice of the hostage is not pleasant to the
 leaders. ~~¶~~ To the guardian of the temple the chiefs give gold.
 6. The states have good laws. 7. The companions of the
 hostages fear the horse-soldier. 8. The winter terrifies the sick
 soldier. 9. The horses wound the guardians with [their] feet.
 10. The horse-soldiers send the hostages into the wood with
 great speed. 11. The arms of the foot-soldiers are swords and
 shields. 12. The kings of the Gauls give hostages to the
 Romans.

(4) *Nouns with stems ending in l, r, s.*

For gender, see Appendix, p. 303.

consul (masc.), <i>consul</i>	victor (masc.), <i>conqueror</i>	flōs (masc.), <i>flower</i>
---	--	---------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	consul	victor	flōs
Acc.	consul- em	victor- em	flōr- em
Gen.	consul- is	victor- is	flōr- is
Dat.	consul- i	victor- i	flōr- i
Abl.	consul- ē	victor- ē	flōr- ē

PLURAL.

N. and V.	consul- ēs	victor- ēs	flōr- ēs
Acc.	consul- ēs	victor- ēs	flōr- ēs
Gen.	consul- um	victor- um	flōr- um
Dat.	consul- ibus	victor- ibus	flōr- ibus
Abl.	consul- ibus	victor- ibus	flōr- ibus

māter (fem.), <i>mother</i>	anser (masc.), <i>goose</i>
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	māter	anser
Acc.	mātr- em	ansēr- em
Gen.	mātr- is	ansēr- is
Dat.	mātr- i	ansēr- i
Abl.	mātr- ē	ansēr- ē

PLURAL.

N. and V.	mātr- ēs	ansēr- ēs
Acc.	mātr- ēs	ansēr- ēs
Gen.	mātr- um	ansēr- um
Dat.	mātr- ibus	ansēr- ibus
Abl.	mātr- ibus	ansēr- ibus

EXERCISE 20.

Rule 12.—*There are boys in the garden* is merely another way of saying *Boys are in the garden*. In such expressions *there*¹ does not denote *place*, and it is omitted in Latin.

(*There*) *are boys in the garden*, **In horto sunt pueri.**

Viva voce :—

of the sun	to the father	by labour	to trees
sun (acc.)	to the fathers	by the sun	by colours
colours	to Cæsar	labours (acc.)	to the sun
of colours	Cæsar (acc.)	of labours	of mothers

many flowers of the red flower a famous general
of many flowers to the sick mother beautiful colours
by a beautiful flower of the good father to thy sister
to the famous conqueror many labours with a great shout

A 1. Consul victorem laudat. 2. Victori rex coronam dat.
3. Galli Cæsarem non amant. 4. Tunc Cæsar in Gallia erat.
5. Odor florum matrem delectat. 6. In agro sunt arbores et flores.
7. Imperator militum labores laudat. 8. Nostrarum sororum hortus multos flores habet.
9. Puer florem sorori aegrae dat.
10. Lux solis patrem aegrum delectat. 11. In agris sunt anseres et equi.
12. In Italia sunt multa oppida.
13. Labores puerorum patribus jucundi sunt. 14. Mater clamore militum terretur.
15. Galli aurum et argentum Cæsari dant.

B. 1. There were many soldiers in Gaul. 2. To the father [he] gives flowers. 3. The shout of the victors is not pleasant to the captives. 4. Cæsar was in Italy; Claudius [was] in Gaul. 5. The mother is terrified by the shouts of the leader. 6. The father praises the odour of the flowers. 7. Why does the chief praise the consul? 8. The consuls were in Italy

¹ Contrast *Cæsar lived there many years*, where *there* denotes place and would be translated in Latin.

then. ¶9. Caesar's soldiers terrify the Gauls. ¶10. O Claudius, thy labour is great. ¶11. The farmer delights the sisters with trees and flowers. ¶12. The consul gives a long peace to the Gauls.

(5) *Nouns with stems ending in -n.*

For gender see Appendix, p. 303.

lēo (masc.), *lion* **hōmo** (masc.), *man*¹

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	leo	hōmo
Acc.	leōn-em	hōmīn-em
Gen.	leōn-īs	hōmīn-īs
Dat.	leōn-ī	hōmīn-ī
Abl.	leōn-ě	hōmīn-ě

PLURAL

N. and V.	leōn-ēs	hōmīn-ēs
Acc.	leōn-ēs	hōmīn-ēs
Gen.	leōn-um	hōmīn-um
Dat.	leōn-ibus	hōmīn-ibus
Abl.	leōn-ibus	hōmīn-ibus

26. ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

āmāt	<i>he loves</i>	amāt-ur	<i>he is loved</i> ²
āmant	<i>they love</i>	āmant-ur	<i>they are loved</i>
terrēt	<i>he terrifies</i>	terrēt-ur	<i>he is terrified</i>
terrent	<i>they terrify</i>	terrent-ur	<i>they are terrified</i>

From the above examples it will be seen that in simple tenses the 3rd person singular and plural of passive verbs is got from the active by adding -ur.

¹ *Homo* means a *human being*; *vir* means a *man* (as distinguished from a woman), a *hero*.

² When the pupil has learnt the complete passive voice (R. 55, p. 106) he will see that *amātur* means *he is being loved*, i.e., the action is represented as going on, not as completed.

In the sentence *The farmer is wounded by the soldier, by the soldier* denotes the doer of the action or **agent**, and it is in the ablative case.

Rule 13.—The **ablative of the agent** requires the preposition **a** or **ab**.¹

The **ablative of the instrument** (§ 9, p. 2) has no preposition.

Agent.² The farmer is wounded by the soldier

Agricola **a** milite vulneratur

Instrument. The farmer is wounded by ³ a sword

Agricola gladio vulneratur

EXERCISE 21.

A. Put the following verbs into the passive voice, saying or writing the English:—

dat vulnerat delectat mittit videt laudat

dant vulnerant delectant mittunt vident laudant

B. Say which of the italicised phrases denote **agent** and which **instrument**; then translate:—

1. The girl is praised *by [her] mother*.
2. The girls are praised *by the father*.
3. The island is praised *by the queen*.
4. The queen is delighted *by the flowers*.
5. The queen is delighted *by the horses*.
6. The soldier is sent *by Caesar*.
7. The soldiers are sent *by the leader*.
8. The soldiers are delighted *by the booty*.
9. The boy is praised *by the father*.
10. The girl is terrified *by the eagle*.

EXERCISE 22.

1. Legio ducem bonum habet.
2. Caesar multas legiones

¹ **A** is used before a consonant; **ab** before a vowel or *h*: **a** rége, by the king; **ab** amico, by a friend; **ab** hostibus, by the enemy. It will be seen later that **ab** has other meanings. For the present however it will only mean **by**, denoting the agent.

² It should be noted that the **agent** must be a living person or animal.

³ **By** and **with** are both signs of the instrument. They are always translated by the ablative without preposition.

habet. 3. Scipio legionis ducem laudat. 4. Dux legionum nunc mortuus est. 5. Virgini pater flores dat. 6. Virgo a reginā laudatur. 7. Virgines templum floribus ornant. 8. Virginum mater a rege laudatur. 9. Virgo parva a leone terretur. 10. Templum floribus a virginibus ornatur. 11. Consuli Romani duas¹ legiones dant. 12. Labor legionum Scipioni iucundus est. 13. Leones mulieres terrent.

B. 1. Cæsar sends a legion into Gaul. 2. The victor praises the labours of the legions. 3. Diana praises the gifts of the maidens. 4. There are many lions in Africa. 5. The maidens are terrified by the lions. 6. The legions are sent into Gaul by Cæsar. 7. Scipio is victor; Claudius is dead. 8. To the legions the victor gives great praise. 9. To the victor a crown is given. 10. Money is given to the sailor by the leader. 11. Cæsar sends the legions into Italy. 12. The tender lamb is terrified by the savage lion.

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

NOTE.—Recapitulate Rule 19, pp. 9-10.

nōmen (neut.), **ōpus** (neut.), **corpus** (neut.), **cāput** (neut.)


a name

a work

body

head

SINGULAR.

N., V., A.	nōmen	ōpus	corpus	cāput
Gen.	nōmīn- 	ōpēr-īs	corpōr-īs	cāpīt-īs
Dat.	nōmīn-ī	ōpēr-ī	corpōr-ī	cāpīt-ī
Abl.	nōmīn-ē	ōpēr-ē	corpōr-ē	cāpīt-ē

PLURAL.

N., V., A.	nōmīn-ā	ōpēr-ā	corpōr-ā	cāpīt-ā
Gen.	nōmīn-um	ōpēr-um	corpōr-um	cāpīt-um
Dat.	nōmīn-ibus	ōpēr-ibus	corpōr-ibus	cāpīt-ibus
Abl.	nōmīn-ibus	ōpēr-ibus	corpōr-ibūs	cāpīt-ibus

For gender see Appendix, p. 305.

¹ *Duas* is the feminine plural accusative of *duo*, two.

Rule 14.—Time when is expressed by the ablative without preposition.

In winter the sailor fears
storms

Hiemē nauta tempestates
timet

Similarly aestatē in summer
noctē by (or at) night

CAUTION.—Remember that when in denotes place it cannot be omitted in Latin: in agro, in the field; but when it refers to time it must be omitted: aestate, in summer.

EXERCISE 23.

(1) Give the nominative and genitive plural of:—

carmen	sidus	aestas	litus	historia
genus	stella	fulmen	murus	genus
vulnus	tempus	corpus	caput	opus

(2) Give the Latin for:—

many wounds.	by lightning	with songs
of a constellation	of many kinds	a beautiful song
of stars	at night	a beautiful star
of the shores	by a wound	of a beautiful shore

A. 1. Nomina militum oculi nota sunt. 2. Anni tempora sunt varia. 3. In sidere sunt multae stellae. 4. Fulmen virginem terret. 5. Sidus iam nautis nocte monstrat. 6. In libro sunt multa genera carminum. 7. Mira sunt opera Dei. 8. Temporibus antiquis (R. 14) in insula multae silvae erant. 9. Quis hiemis frigus non timet? 10. Insula alta litora habet. 11. Aestate horti multos flores habent. 12. In (=on) litore sunt multi nautae.

B. 1. The poet's songs delight the woman. 2. Boys are sometimes terrified by lightning. 3. In summer the farmer gives flowers to the king. 4. In winter girls do not like snow. 5. The story of old times delights soldiers. 6. The names of

the constellations are known to the poet. 7. The island has high shores. 8. Wounds are the cause of honour to soldiers. 9. In ancient times the daughters of kings were shepherds. 10. On (say *in*) the shore are many cottages. 11. Poets praise ancient times. 12. By the light of the moon the sailor sees the shore. 13. The captive is wounded by the hostage.

27. Examples of **third declension** nouns declined with adjectives of the first and second declension.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
<i>Masc.</i>				<i>Masc.</i>	
Nom.	dux	clārus	ducēs	clārī	
Voc.	dux	clare	duces	clari	
Acc.	ducem	clārum	ducēs	clārōs	
Gen.	ducis	clārī	ducum	clārōrum	
Dat.	ducī	clārō	ducibus	clārīs	
Abl.	ducē	clārō	ducibus	clārīs	
<i>Fem.</i>				<i>Fem.</i>	
N. and V.	lex	iustā	lēgēs	iustae	
Acc.	lēgem	iustam	lēgēs	iustās	
Gen.	lēgis	iustae	lēgum	iustārum	
Dat.	lēgī	iustae	lēgibus	iustīs	
Abl.	lēgē	iustā	lēgibus	iustīs	
<i>Neut.</i>				<i>Neut.</i>	
N. and V.	magnum	ōpus	magnā	ōpērā	
Acc.	magnum	ōpus	magnā	ōpērā	
Gen.	magnī	ōpērīs	magnōrum	ōpērum	
Dat.	magnō	ōpērī	magnīs	ōpērībus	
Abl.	magnō	ōpērē	magnīs	ōpērībus	

EXERCISE 24.

(1) Decline, singular and plural: (*vox grata*, *obses aeger*, *clamor magnus*, *virgo stulta*, *litus altum*; sing. only, *pax longa*.)

Decline in plural only: *multi flores*, *multa genera*, *varia sidera*, *antiqua tempora*, *multae legiones*, *nostrae sorores*.

Nouns with Stems in -i.

For gender see Appendix, p. 304.

28. The point to be noticed is that nouns with *-i* stems have *-ium* in the genitive plural, sometimes *-i* in the ablative singular, and in the case of neuter nouns *-ia* in the nominative plural.

A. MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

hostis (com.),	nūbēs (fem.),	urbs (fem.),	imber (masc.)
<i>enemy</i>	<i>cloud</i>	<i>city</i>	<i>shower</i>

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	hostis	nūbēs	urbs	imber
acc.	hostem	nūbem	urbem	imbrem
Gen.	hostis	nūbīs	urbīs	imbris
Dat.	hostī	nūbī	urbī	imbrī
Abl.	hostē	nūbē	urbē	imbrē ē

PLURAL.

N. and V.	hostēs	nūbēs	urbēs	imbrēs
Acc.	hostēs	nūbēs	urbēs	imbrēs
Gen.	hostium	nūbium	urbium	imbrium
Dat.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	imbribus
Abl.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	imbribus

B. NEUTER.

māre , <i>the sea</i>	ānimāl , <i>animal</i>	calcar , <i>spur</i>
------------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------------

SINGULAR.

N., V., A.	mārē	ānimāl	calcar
Gen.	māris	ānimālīs	calcārīs
Dat.	mārī	ānimālī	calcārī
Abl.	mārī	ānimālī	calcārī

PLURAL.

N., V., A.	mārīā	ānimālīa	calcārīa
Gen.	mārīum	ānimālīum	calcārīum
Dat.	mārībus	ānimālībus	calcārībus
Abl.	mārībus	ānimālībus	calcārībus

29. There are four classes of **-i** stems:—

(1) Nouns ending in **-is** and **-es** not increasing¹ in the genitive, *e.g.*, **hostis, nubes**. They have the genitive plural in **-ium**.

Two exceptions to this rule are:—

cānis (c.)	cānis,	dog	gen. plur. canum
iūvēnis (m.)	iūvēnis,	young man	„ iuvenum

(2) Nouns of one syllable ending in **s** preceded by a consonant, *e.g.*, **urbs, dens**. They have the genitive plural in **-ium**.

Three of the commonest words of this class are:—

mons (m.)	montis,	mountain	gen. plur. montium
nox (f.)	noctis,	night	„ noctium
arx (f.)	arcis,	citadel	„ arcium

(3) The words **imber**² (masc.), *shower*; **linter** (fem.), *boat*; **ūter** (masc.), *bag*; **venter** (masc.), *belly*. These have the genitive plural in **-ium**.

(4) All neuters ending in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**, *e.g.*, **māre, ānimal, calcar**. These have the ablative singular in **-i**, the nominative plural in **-ia**, and the genitive plural in **-ium**.

30. Notes on **-i** stems.

Some **-i** stems have the accusative singular in **-im**, the ablative singular in **-i**, and occasionally the nominative and accusative plural in **-is**.

(1) The **accusative -im** is always found in names of rivers, *e.g.*, **Tībēris**, the Tiber, and in the nouns **sītis** (fem.), *thirst*, **tussis** (fem.), *cough*, and **vis** (fem.), *violence*.

¹ When the genitive singular has more syllables than the nominative, as in **dux, duc-is**, the noun is said to increase in the genitive. When the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables, as in **hostis, hostis**; **imber, imbris**, the noun is spoken of as not increasing in the genitive.

Nouns which do not increase are sometimes called **Parisyllabic** (*i.e.*, equal-syllabled); those which increase are called **Imparisyllabic**.

² The only common parisyllabic words which do not follow this rule are **pāter, māter** and **frāter**, all having **-um** in the genitive plural.

The following sometimes have *-im*: *febris* (fem.), *fever*; *turris* (fem.), *tower*; *sēcūris* (fem.), *axe*, and a few others.

(2) The **ablative** in *-i* is always found in those words which have the accusative in *-im*, and sometimes in the following: *āvis* (fem.), *bird*; *imber* (masc.), *shower*; *ignis* (masc.), *fire*; *nāvis* (fem.), *ship*; *turris* (fem.), *tower*.

EXERCISE 25.

(1) Give nominative and genitive plural of:—

auris	mensis	testis	canis
civis	vulpes	arx	turris
ignis	nox	avis	mons

(2) Put into Latin:—

to the citizen	ears (acc.)	by the mountain
of the citadel	of witnesses	of the towers
at night	the fox (acc.)	of the teeth
of the fires*	the mountain	the citizen (acc.)

A. 1. Civibus frumentum Cæsar dat. 2. Civium voces vulpem terrent. 3. Oppidum multas turres habet. 4. Aves virginem delectant. 5. Nocte milites in arce sunt. 6. Monumentum nomina puero nota sunt. 7. Cives testem laudant. 8. Testium voces captivum terrent. 9. In arce est turris alta. 10. Cives timidi in arcem currunt. 11. Portae arcium validæ sunt. 12. A civibus verba testis laudantur. 13. Dentibus canum vulpes terretur.

B. 1. There are many kinds of foxes. 2. The Romans were the enemies of the Gauls. 3. In the town are many towers. 4. The timid citizen fears the strong dog. 5. The voices of the birds delight the ears of the citizens. 6. The soldiers are preparing (= *pārānt*) a fire. 7. In winter the nights are long. 8. The heads of dogs are not large. 9. The names of the months are known to the girl. 10. The leader sees the gates

of the citadel. 11. The teeth of the foxes terrify the dog.
12. The witness is terrified by the voice of the citizen.

Rule 14 (b).—**Time when** is expressed by the **ablative** without preposition.

Time how long is expressed by the **accusative** without preposition.

In winter the sailor fears storms	Hieme nauta tempestates timet
For¹ many years he lived in Italy	Multos annos in Italia vixit

EXERCISE 26.

(1) Decline, singular and plural, *nox frigida, turris^a alta*;
in the plural only, *multi menses, parva animalia*.

(2) of the sea	a troublesome tax	to the strong hunter
by a tax	many animals (acc.)	in the sea
of spurs	with strong nets	the nets of the hunter
in the first year	of sharp teeth	of high towers
in the first month	of small foxes	with a strong spur

A. 1. Venator retia magna parat. 2. In mari sunt multae naves. 3. Maria litora habent, fluvii ripas (habent). 4. Vectigalia civi molesta sunt. 5. Nonnulla animalia multos annos vivunt. 6. Primo anno in Germania erat. 7. Marius litora alta navibus periculosa sunt. 8. Multa genera animalium sunt in silva. 9. Primo mense anni nives civibus saepe molestae sunt. 10. Capita nonnullorum animalium parva sunt. 11. In reti piscatoris sunt multi pisces. 12. Hiemis noctes frigidae venatori molestae sunt.

B. 1. Some foxes are white. 2. At night the hunters prepare nets in the wood. 3. The king gives strong spurs to

¹ When *for* or *during* refers to length of time it is omitted in Latin.

the horseman. 4. [There] are various kinds of animals. 5. Some animals have small ears. 6. Some birds do (R. 6) not live many months. 7. The animals of the seas are the booty of the fisherman. 8. Neptune is the god of the seas. 9. In the sea are many fishes. 10. On (=in) the shore of the sea are many cottages. 11. The sharp teeth of animals are destructive to the nets. 12. For many hours the queen is delighted by the birds.

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Most adjectives of the third declension fall under three classes:—

I. Adjectives of three terminations:—

Masc. **ācer**, Fem. **ācrīs**, Neut. **ācrĕ**, *keen*.

II. Adjectives of two terminations:—

Masc. and Fem. **fortīs**, Neut. **fortĕ**, *brave*.

III. Adjectives of one termination:—

Masc., Fem. and Neut. **fĕlix**, *happy*;

Masc., Fem. and Neut. **prūdēns**, *prudent*.

All these adjectives are -i stems. They have therefore:—

- 1. -i in the ablative singular.
- 2. -ium in the genitive plural.
- 3. -ia in the neuter plural.

(1) **Ācer**, **ācrīs**, **ācrĕ**, *keen*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. and V.	ācer	ācr-is	ācr-ĕ	acr-ēs	acr-ēs	acr-īā
Acc.	acr-em	acr-em	acr-ĕ	acr-ēs	acr-ēs	acr-īā
Gen.	acr-īs	acr-īs	acr-īs	acr-ium	acr-ium	acr-iur
Dat.	acr-ī	acr-ī	acr-ī	acr-ibus	acr-ibus	acr-ibus
Abl.	acr-ī	acr-ī	acr-ī	acr-ibus	acr-ibus	acr-ibus

32. There are only thirteen adjectives declined like *ācer*, of which the following are the chief:—

<i>ālācer</i> ,	<i>ālācris</i> ,	<i>ālācrē</i> ,	<i>brisk</i>
<i>cēler</i> , ¹	<i>cēlērīs</i> ,	<i>cēlērē</i> ,	<i>swift</i>
<i>ēquester</i> ,	<i>ēquestrīs</i> ,	<i>ēquestrē</i> ,	<i>equestrian</i>
<i>pēdester</i> ,	<i>pēdestrīs</i> ,	<i>pēdestrē</i> ,	<i>pedestrian</i>
<i>sālūber</i> ,	<i>sālūbris</i> ,	<i>sālūbrē</i> ,	<i>healthy</i>

(2) *Fortis*, *fortē*, *brave*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. and V.	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-ē</i>	<i>fort-ēs</i>	<i>fort-iā</i>
Acc.	<i>fort-em</i>	<i>fort-ē</i>	<i>fort-ēs</i>	<i>fort-iā</i>
Gen.	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-ium</i>	<i>fort-ium</i>
Dat.	<i>fort-i</i>	<i>fort-i</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>fort-i</i>	<i>fort-i</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>

(3) *Felix*, *happy*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. and V.	<i>felix</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>felic-ēs</i>	<i>felic-iā</i>
Acc.	<i>felic-em</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>felic-ēs</i>	<i>felic-iā</i>
Gen.	<i>felic-is</i>	<i>felic-is</i>	<i>felic-ium</i>	<i>felic-ium</i>
Dat.	<i>felic-i</i>	<i>felic-i</i>	<i>felic-ibus</i>	<i>felic-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>felic-i</i>	<i>felic-i</i>	<i>felic-ibus</i>	<i>felic-ibus</i>

33. NOTE.—Many words of this class end in *-ns*,² e.g., *prūdēns* (gen. *prudentis*), *prudent*. They are declined exactly like *felix*. Thus the masculine and feminine would be:—

singular, *prūdēns*, *prudent-em*, *prudent-is*, *prudent-i*, *prudent-i*;

plural, *prudent-ēs*, *prudent-ēs*, *prudent-ium*, *prudent-ibus*, *prudent-ibus*.

¹This word can be used as a noun to mean a certain body of soldiers in ancient Rome. It then takes *-um* in the genitive plural. Compare footnote, p. 39. But used as an adjective the genitive plural is in *-ium*. Notice that *cēler* retains the *e* in declension.

²Many words of this class are present participles. They take *-e* in the ablative singular in certain constructions to be explained later. Used as adjectives pure and simple, however, they take *-i*.

34. Some adjectives of the third declension have the ablative in *-e*, the genitive plural in *-um*, and the neuter plural in *-a*. Most of these are comparatives like—Masc. and Fem. **fortior**, Neut. **fortius**, *braver*.

Fortior, fortius, braver.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. and V. fortior	fortius	fortior-ēs	fortior-ā
Acc. fortior-em	fortius	fortior-ēs	fortior-ā
Gen. fortior-īs	fortior-īs	fortior-um	fortior-um
Dat. fortior-ī	fortior-ī	fortior-ibus	fortior-ibus
Abl. fortior-ē	fortior-ē	fortior-ibus	fortior-ibus

34 (a). In addition to comparatives there are a few third declension adjectives of one termination¹ with the ablative in *-e*, the genitive plural in *-um* and the neuter plural in *-a*. The commonest words of this class are:—

Dives ¹	gen. divitis	<i>rich.</i>
Pauper ¹	„ pauperis	<i>poor.</i>
Supplex ¹	„ supplicis	<i>suppliant.</i>
Vetus	„ veteris	<i>old.</i>

Dives, rich.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. and V. dives	dives	divit-ēs	divit-ā
Acc. divit-em	dives	divit-ēs	divit-ā
Gen. divit-īs	divit-īs	divit-um	divit-um
Dat. divit-ī	divit-ī	divit-ibus	divit-ibus
Abl. divit-ē	divit-ē	divit-ibus	divit-ibus

¹ Most words of this class can be used as nouns: *dives*, a rich man. Compare footnote 1, p. 38.

Mēmōr, gen. *mēmōris*, *mindful*, has the ablative singular in *-i*, and the genitive plural in *-um*.

EXERCISE 27.

Learn §§ 31-33.

(1) Write out (singular and plural) *celer equus, vita salubris*, and (plural only) *equestre proelium*.

(2) Give the nominative and accusative, singular and plural of:—

acris pugna	sagitta celeris	cibus saluber
acre bellum	hasta celeris	regio salubris
acer equus	equus celer	vita salubris

(3) Put into Latin:—

by a keen war	of equestrian battles	in a healthy region
of a swift arrow	of keen wars	by a keen leader
of swift arrows	of swift horses	of keen leaders
equestrian battles	of a healthy life	of swift ships

EXERCISE 28.

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *gladius brevis, aqua dulcis*; (singular only) *dux tristis*; (plural only) *exemplum utile*.

(2) Give the nominative and genitive singular of:—

a short life	a useful plan	a faithful hostage
sweet wine	a useful law	a brave boy
a fertile field	a faithful slave	a cruel war
a fertile region	a disgraceful death	a short war
a cruel master	a faithful dog	a sad war

(3) Put into Latin:—

to a faithful friend	of useful laws
of a cruel war	all the cities
a sad mother (acc.)	of all the cities
of a fertile region	all the dangers
the faithful leaders	of all the dangers
useful laws	all wars

EXERCISE 29.

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *audax nauta*, *audax consilium*; and (plural only) *amicus absens*.

(2) Give the nominative and genitive of:—

a bold word	wise men	a wise mother
a prudent mother	a wise plan	a wise father
a powerful leader	bold boys	a happy life
the present time	bold plans	a happy king

(3) Put into Latin:—

by bold plans	of an absent mother	the present time
of wise men	to a wise man	with bold words
a powerful king (acc.)	by a bold king	with wise words
to powerful kings	present times	of a powerful queen

Rule 15.—(a) A masculine adjective is often used without a noun (especially in the plural) to mean **man** or **men**.

sapiens	<i>a wise (man)</i>	sapientes	<i>wise (men)</i>
boni	<i>good (men)</i>	nostrī ¹	<i>our (men)</i>

NOTE.—In English this is only possible in the plural. In *The rich are not always happy*, *rich* means *rich people*, and is plural.

(b) A neuter adjective is often used (especially in the plural) to mean a **thing** or **things**.

bonā	<i>good (things)</i>	omnia	<i>all (things)</i>
-------------	----------------------	--------------	---------------------

EXERCISE 30. Vocs. 27-29.

Recapitulate §§ 31-33.

A. 1. Milites ducem audacem amant. 2. Reges insularum potentes sunt. 3. Ira potentium regum civibus molesta est. 4. Omnes (R. 15) tempora antiqua non laudant. 5. Omnia puerum tristem terrent. 6. Exempla sapientium matrum puellis sunt utilia. 7. Mala praesentium temporum regi nota sunt. 8. Boni non semper felices sunt. 9. Feroci leoni

¹ *Nostrī* is the plural of the adjective *noster* (Vocab. 16, p. 368).

venator agnum dat. 10. Romani gladios breves habent. 11. Caesar nostros in Galliam mittit. 12. Gallia solum fertile habet.

B. 1. Many [men] praise the brave hunter. 2. The wise are always happy. 3. All [things] are useful to the wise. 4. Our [men] praise the faithful hostage. 5. Our [men] are praised by (R. 13) the powerful leader. 6. The swift ships have bold sailors. 7. He gives sweet wine to the keen leader. 8. Who does not fear a disgraceful death? 9. A cruel war is not useful to citizens. 10. Wars are always cruel.

C. 1. The keen horse is wounded by the swift spear. 2. The Gauls give fresh (=sweet) water to our [men]. 3. In that (=ea) fight our-men were in sad dangers. 4. Britain is the fatherland of bold sailors. 5. The life of the brave is often short. 6. The words of absent friends are useful to friends. 7. The little girl is frightened by the swift horse. 8. In Africa are fierce lions. 9. The citizen does not praise the healthy life of the farmer. 10. Base examples are not troublesome to the prudent.

EXERCISE 31.

Learn §§ 34-34 (a).

(1) a shorter night	in a more fertile field
of a shorter night	more fertile gardens
shorter swords	a more useful plan
with shorter swords	by a more useful plan
a shorter song	more useful plans
shorter songs	of more useful plans
a more fertile field	more powerful kings
	of more powerful kings
	an easier work
	of an easier work
	a more powerful kingdom
	shorter spears
	more useful arms

(2) rich kings .	to poor soldiers	to an old soldier
of rich kings	a rich temple	old soldiers
to a rich queen	in a rich temple	of old soldiers
poor soldiers	an old soldier	old wine

EXERCISE 32. Vocs. 27-31, pp. 370-371.

A. 1. Rex dives fertiles insulas habet. 2. Divites non semper pauperes laudant. 3. Romani gladios breviores quam Galli habent. 4. Aestate noctes sunt breviores quam hieme. 5. Fortibus omnia pericula sunt levia. 6. Puella vocem dulciorem quam puer habet. 7. Ferrum utilius quam argentum est. 8. In ea (= *that*) pugna equites utiliores erant quam pedites. 9. Boni pecuniam pauperibus saepe dant. 10. Miles vetus multa vulnera habet.

B. 1. The wounds of the old soldier are not light.¹ 2. To a rich [man] all things are easy. 3. The light¹ of the sun is more useful than [the light] of the moon. 4. Bold plans are more useful than imprudent words. 5. To the poor girl many [things] are given by the rich queen. 6. In summer the nights are short. 7. To the old soldier the leader gives a reward. 8. The shield is shorter than the spear (R. 17). 9. Soldiers are not braver than sailors. 10. Arrows are more useful to the hunter than spears.

35. The fourth or -U declension.

The fourth declension consists of masculine and feminine nouns ending in -us and neuters in -u. The genitive singular is -ūs, genitive plural -uum.

For gender see Appendix, p. 306.

	grādūs (masc.), a step	cornū (neut.), horn
N. and V.	grād-ūs grād-ūs	corn-ū corn-ūā
Acc.	grād-um grād-ūs	corn-ū corn-ūā
Gen.	grād-ūs grād-ūum	corn-ūs corn-ūum
Dat.	grād-ūī grād-ībus	corn-ū corn-ībus
Abl.	grād-ū grād-ībus	corn-ū corn-ībus

¹ What part of speech is this word? See voc. 31, p. 371.

36. NOTES.—(1) The dative singular -ui is sometimes contracted to -u *e.g., gradu, cornu.*

(2) Certain words have the dative and ablative plural in -ibus instead of -ibus. These are:—

(a) Words ending in -cus.

acus	(fem.)	needle	dative and ablative plural	acibus
arcus	(masc.)	bow	" "	arcibus
lacus	(masc.)	lake	" "	lacibus
quercus	(fem.)	oak	" "	quercibus
(b) artus	(masc.)	joints	" "	artibus
partus	(masc.)	birth	" "	partibus
portus	(masc.)	harbour	" "	portibus
tribus	(fem.)	tribe	" "	tribibus

(3) Some names of trees, *e.g., ficus* (fem.), *a fig tree*, are declined throughout like the second declension, but in addition they can have those cases of the fourth declension which end in -u and -ūs, *viz.,* genitive and ablative singular, nominative and accusative plural.

EXERCISE 33.

Learn §§ 35-36.

A. 1. Arcus multos venator habet. 2. Acus est acuta. 3. Acus acuta manum vulnerat. 4. Agricolaë manūs duræ sunt. 5. Genua equi dura sunt. 6. Exercitum in Galliam Cæsar ducit. 7. Consules duces exercituum erant. 8. Exercitu magno Gallos superat. 9. Currus Gallorum Romanis perniciosi erant. 10. In portu sunt multæ naves. 11. Adventus Romanorum causa fugæ erat. 12. Britannia multos portus habet.

B. 1. The farmer gives a bow to the hunter. 2. The hunters have plenty of bows. 3. Sharp needles are useful to women. 4. The Gauls lead [their] army into Italy. 5. The slave fears the arrival of the lord. 6. The leader of the army is the consul (R. 8). 7. The attack of the Romans terrifies the Gauls. 8. The bull wounds the hunter with [his] horn. 9. The chariots of the consul are in the field. 10. In the harbours of Britain are many ships.

EXERCISE 34.

§§ 35-36.

A. 1. Hostium equitatus Romanorum exercitum superat.
 2. Exercituum duces ex¹ curribus pugnant. 3. Quercūs Britanniae omnibus notae sunt. 4. Galli impetum in (= on) equitatum Romanorum faciunt. 5. Adventus Hannibalis causa metūs Romanis erat. 6. Hannibal exercitum trans Alpes in Italiam ducit. 7. ~~transitus~~ Alpiū Hannibali non facilis erat. 8. In Alpibus sunt multi lacūs. 9. Adventus equitatus victōriam Hannibali dat. 10. Ex equis victor pugnat. 11. In conspectu exercituum duces pugnant. 12. Puella fructu arboris altae delectatur. 13. In Britannia (currūs incolarum) milites Romanos (terrent.)

B. 1. He leads the cavalry over the Alps. 2. The cavalry makes an attack on (= in with acc.) the Gauls. 3. The fruit of oaks is useful to animals. 4. Across the river are the Germans. 5. The crossing of the Alps was difficult to all generals. 6. The Gauls fight on horseback (= horses). 7. The inhabitants of Britain fight in chariots. 8. In the harbours of Britain are many sailors. 9. Caesar leads [his] army across the mountains. 10. The enemy (*plural*) has no (*say not*) cavalry. 11. Hannibal's victories were the cause of fear to the citizens. 12. In sight of the Alps Hannibal overcomes the Roman cavalry.

37. The fifth or -E declension.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in -es, with genitive in -ei.

rēs (fem.), thing		dīēs (masc.), day	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. and V. r-ēs	r-ēs	dī-ēs	dī-ēs
Acc. r-em	r-ēs	dī-em	dī-ēs
Gen. r-eī	r-ērum	dī-eī	dī-ērum
Dat. r-eī	r-ēbus	dī-eī	dī-ēbus
Abl. r-e	r-ēbus	dī-e	dī-ēbus

¹ Literally out of. Say in. An Englishman thinks of *where* the fighter is and says *in*; the Romans think of *where* the fighting comes from and say *out of*.

33. NOTES.—(1) The genitive and dative singular sometimes contract *-ei* into *-ē*.

(2) **Dies** and **res** are the only nouns of the fifth declension which are declined throughout in singular and plural. Most of the others have no plural, though the nominative and accusative plural are found in a few words, *e.g.*, *acies*, *facies*, *spes*, etc.

(3) Gender of fifth declension: **Dīēs**¹ and **mēridiēs** (*mid-day*) are masculine; all others are feminine.

(4) The meaning of **res** is always a trouble to beginners. It means thing or things in the sense of circumstances or affairs.

EXERCISE 35.

1. Write out (singular only) *acies*, *spes* and *res publica*.
2. by hope of the face of adversity
hope (acc.) face (acc.) in adversity
in the line of battle prosperity (acc.) in the plain
to the commonwealth in prosperity on the first day

A. 1. *Horae diei aestate iucundae sunt.* 2. *Multos dies in nostra urbe mansit* (*he remained*). 3. *Victoria exercitus cives spe complet.* 4. *Bonae leges rei publicae utiliores sunt quam alti muri.* 5. *In acie hostium sunt servi.* 6. *In dextro cornu acie ierant equites.* 7. *Spes praedae militem delectat.* 8. *Initia multarum rerum sunt parva.* 9. *In rebus secundis homines multos amicos habent.* 10. *Primo die Caesar exercitum in Galliam mittit.*

B. 1. The hour of mid-day is often the hour of a meal (= food). 2. The girl delights [her] friends by [her] beautiful face. 3. Our camp is (*say are*) in the plain. 4. The leader sees the line-of-battle of the enemy. 5. Men are delighted by prosperity. 6. In adversity wretched [men] have not always

¹ **Dies** is always masculine in the plural. **Dies** in singular is feminine when it means a fixed, appointed time, and also in poetry. Pupils however should always **make it masculine** until they have acquired greater experience.

friends. 7. The victory gives a new hope to the commonwealth. 8. The king is the lord of all things. 9. The long line [of the army] terrifies the enemy (plural). 10. Fear is the enemy of hope.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison:—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<i>dur-us, hard</i>	<i>dur-ior, harder</i>	<i>dur-issimus, hardest</i>

39. In Latin the **comparative** is formed by taking away the **-i** or **-is** of the genitive singular of the positive and adding **-ior**. Thus

• **durus**, genitive *dur-i*, comparative *dur-ior*.

The **superlative** is formed by taking away the **-i** or **-is** of the genitive singular of the positive and adding **-issimus**. Thus:—

durus, genitive *dur-i*, superlative *dur-issimus*.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Genitive Sing.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<i>clārus</i>	<i>clār-i</i>	<i>clār-ior</i>	<i>clār-issimus</i>
<i>famous</i>		<i>more famous</i>	<i>most famous</i>
<i>fortis</i>	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-ior</i>	<i>fort-issimus</i>
<i>brave</i>		<i>braver</i>	<i>bravest</i>
<i>audax</i>	<i>audāc-is</i>	<i>audāc-ior</i>	<i>audāc-issimus</i>
<i>bold</i>		<i>bolder</i>	<i>boldest</i>
<i>prūdens</i>	<i>prūdent-is</i>	<i>prūdent-ior</i>	<i>prūdent-issimus</i>
<i>prudent</i>		<i>more prudent</i>	<i>most prudent</i>

40. **Special cases.**—All adjectives ending in **-er** are regular in the comparative, but they form the superlative irregularly by adding **-rimus** to the **nominative**.¹

¹As the ending is added to the nominative, the superlative has double r.

<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Genitive Sing.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
pulcher	beautiful	pulchr-i	pulchr-ior	pulcher-rĭmus
asper	rough	aspĕr-i	aspĕr-ior	asper-rĭmus
acer	keen	acr-is	acr-ior	acer-rĭmus
celer	swift	cĕlĕr-is	cĕlĕr-ior	cĕler-rĭmus

41. Six adjectives ending in **-ilis** are regular in the comparative, but form the superlative by adding **-lĭmus** instead of **-issĭmus**.

<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
facil-is	easy	facil-ior	facil-lĭmus ¹
difficil-is	difficult	difficil-ior	difficil-lĭmus
simil-is	like	sĭmil-ior	sĭmil-lĭmus
dissimil-is	unlike	dissĭmil-ior	dissimil-lĭmus
gracil-is	thin	gracil-ior	racil-lĭmus
humil-is	low	humil-ior	humil-lĭmus

41 (a). All other adjectives in **-ilis** are regular, e.g.,

nobil-is	noble	nobil-ior	nobil-issĭmus
----------	-------	-----------	---------------

Rule 16.—All comparatives are declined like **fortior** (masc. and fem.), **fortius** (neut.), p. 39 ; all superlatives like **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**.

EXERCISE 36.

§§ 39-41.

A. Give the comparative and superlative of :—

gratus	altus	brevis	audax
longus	molestus	crudelis	ferox
validus	aeger	dulcis	potens
latus	pulcher	fidelis	sapiens

B. Give nominative and accusative singular of :—

a long day	a short garment	a beautiful garden
a longer day	a shorter garment	a more beautiful garden
the longest day	the shortest garment	the most beautiful garden
a broad river	a bold plan	a powerful leader
a broader river	a bolder plan	a more powerful leader
the broadest river	the boldest plan	the most powerful leader

¹ Notice the double l in the superlative.

Rule 17.—The case of the noun after *than* can always be found by completing the sentence. Thus *The earth is larger than the moon* means *The earth is larger than the moon (is)*, from which we see that *moon* is nominative to *is* (understood). Again, *I see the sun more plainly than the moon* means *I see the sun more plainly than (I see) the moon*. Here then the word *moon* is the object of *see* (understood).

Rule 18.—When the noun after *quam* is either nominative or accusative *quam* may be omitted, the noun being put in the ablative.¹

The sailor is stronger **than** Nauta validior est **quam**
the soldier miles
or Nauta validior est **militē**

Rule 19.—When **more**² and **most**² are used with **adjectives** they are merely signs of the comparative and superlative degree, and are not translated (as a rule³) by a separate word *e.g.*, *more beautiful* = *pulchrior*.

EXERCISE 37.

Viva Voce :—

a most faithful ally	to a dearer companion	to a most keen man
a keener weapon	higher towers	the highest mountains
stronger soldiers	of a denser wood	happier times
safer peace	a most difficult work	swifter ships

A. 1. Equi celeriores quam canes sunt. 2. Sapientissimus Romanorum erat Scipio. 3. Rhenus est latior Rhodāno. 4. Columba hominibus gratior quam aquila est. 5. Pax tutior est bello. 6. Sociorum potentissimi erant Belgae. 7. Oppidum turrem altissimam (R. 20 (b)) habet. 8. Quis est acrior quam

¹ This is usually parsed as the ablative of comparison.

² When these words are used with nouns, *e.g.*, *more men*, they denote quantity and are translated by *plus*, etc. (R. 22).

³ See § 47.

audax nauta? 9. Quid tristius bello est? 10. Hannibal exercitum acriorem habet quam Scipio.

B. 1. Who is more powerful than our consul? 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. Sometimes a slave is more faithful than [his] master. 4. The highest tower is in the citadel. 5. War is the saddest of evils. 6. The work is more difficult to the boy than to the girl. 7. The Belgians were keener than the Gauls. 8. The victories of Cæsar were easier in Gaul than in Britain. 9. O most wise judge, grant pardon (= *da veniam*) to the most wretched captive. 10. What is more useful to a soldier than a very keen weapon?

Rule 20.—Comparatives and superlatives can be translated in several ways:—

- (a) **Fortior** means *braver* or *rather brave* or *too brave*.
- (b) **Fortissimus** means *bravest* or *very brave*.

Rule 21.—Latin uses the **superlative** much more than English. Thus *The brave leader was killed* could be translated *The very brave leader*, etc.

EXERCISE 38.

A. 1. Galli sociique fidelissimos habebant. 2. Dux militibus quam equitibus carior est. 3. Quid difficilius est quam transitus Alpium? 4. Omnium Gallorum ferocissimi sunt Belgae. 5. Memoria feliciorum temporum seni iucundissima erat. 6. Rhenus longissimus (R. 20 (b)) et latissimus est. 7. Omnium acerrimus erat Hannibal. 8. Multi divites sunt miserrimi. 9. In Hannibale erat acerrimus amor patriae. 10. Transitus Alpium difficillimus est.

B. 1. The mountains of the island are very high. 2. Our [men] have rather-short swords. 3. The journey is more difficult in winter than in summer. 4. The Alps are the highest mountains of Europe. 5. Journeys are easiest in

(2) Give nominative and accusative of:—

a better part	more words	very many trees
a worse place	the best deeds	the worst deeds
smaller islands	the greatest number	most worthless sons
more trees	very many [men]	the oldest soldier

(3) Put into Latin:—

former times	the inner wall (acc.)	rather old [men]
in former times	of the inner wall	to rather old [men]
the upper fords	on the first night	of most benevolent [men]
of the upper fords	on the next night	to a very dutiful son

Rule 22.—When the words **much**,¹ **more**, **most** are used with a noun in the singular number, the neuters **multum**, **plus**, **plurimum** are used, the noun being put in the **genitive case**:

Much money, Multum pecuniae

The genitive used with words of this kind is called the **partitive genitive** because it means a **part** of the thing spoken of. Compare R. 24.

With plural nouns the words **many**, **more**, **most** are treated as adjectives agreeing with their nouns in every way:

More bravery, Plus fortitudinis

More daughters, Plures filiae

EXERCISE 40.

-§§ 42-47 and R. 22.

Viva voce:—

very much money	more hope	much wisdom
very many sailors	more time	many allies
to very many sailors	more flowers	many islands

- A. 1. Maiorem partem insulae superat. 2. Maximum (R. 20 (b)) numerum carrorum Galli habent. 3. Senis consilium est melius et facilius. 4. Pessimi (R. 20 (b)) ab omnibus

¹ When *much*, *more*, *most* mean quantity, they are put in the neuter and take a genitive. When they refer to number, they are treated as adjectives.

timentur. 5. In duce erat plus audaciae quam sapientiae. 6. Superiora vada inferioribus meliora sunt. 7. In flumine sunt minores insulae. 8. Plures ignes in castris imperator facit. 9. Optimo militum plurimum pecuniae dat. 10. Priore bello victor erat. 11. Quid peius bello est? 12. Proxima nocte socios in arcem duxit. 13. Maior perniciēs jumentorum quam hominum in transitu erat.

B. 1. The enemy have a very great number of foot-soldiers. 2. In the next year he overcomes the smaller states. 3. What is better for men than virtue? 4. In the former summer he led the army across the Alps. 5. The upper part of the river has very high banks. 6. On (= *in* with ablative) the interior wall were many soldiers. 7. In (R. 14. *Caution*) our leader there is very much boldness. 8. The lower fords are too (R. 20 (a)) difficult. 9. The greater part of the enemy is in the woods. 10. There was more hope in the old man than in [his] son.

48. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1st Person.

2nd Person.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	ĕgō	<i>I</i>	tū	<i>thou</i>
Acc.	mē	<i>me</i>	tē	<i>thee</i>
Gen.	mēi	<i>of me</i>	tūi	<i>of thee</i>
Dat.	mihī	<i>to me</i>	tibi	<i>to thee</i>
Abl.	mē	<i>by me</i>	tē	<i>by thee</i>

PLURAL.

Nom.	nōs	<i>we</i>	yōs	<i>you</i>
Acc.	nōs	<i>us</i>	yōs	<i>you</i>
Gen.	nostrī or nostrum ¹	<i>of us</i>	vestrī or vestrum ¹	<i>of you</i>
Dat.	nōbīs	<i>to us</i>	yōbīs	<i>to you</i>
Abl.	nōbīs	<i>by us</i>	yōbīs	<i>by you</i>

¹ See R. 24, p. 55.

3rd Person.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	is	he	ěā	her	īd	it
Acc.	ĕum	him	ĕam	her	īd	it
Gen.	ĕiūs	of him	ĕius	of her	ĕius	of it
Dat.	ĕī	to him	ĕī	to her	ĕī	to it
Abl.	ĕō	by him	ĕā	by her	ĕō	by it

PLURAL.

Nom.	ĕi(orii)	they	ĕae	they	ĕā	they
Acc.	ĕōs	them	ĕās	them	ĕā	them
Gen.	ĕōrum	of them	ĕārum	of them	ĕōrum	of them
Dat.	ĕīs (iis)	to them	ĕīs (iis)	to them	ĕīs (iis)	to them
Abl.	ĕīs (iis)	by them	ĕīs (iis)	by them	ĕīs (iis)	by them

48 (a). The reflexive pronoun has no nominative. Its declension is the same for all genders and for singular and plural.

Acc. sē himself, herself, itself, themselves.

Gen. sūī of " " " "

Dat. sibi to " " " "

Abl. sē by " " " "

NOTES.—(1) The double form sēsē is used emphatically for se (accusative and ablative).

(2) The nominative is supplied by the adjective ipse, ipsa, ipsum, to be explained later.

49. Present tense of the verb To be.

SINGULAR.

ego sum I am

tu es thou art

is est he is

PLURAL.

nos sūmus we are

vos estis you are

ei sunt they are

Personal pronouns used as subjects of verbs are not expressed except when emphatic. See R. 30.

Rule 23.—When you refers to one person it must be translated in Latin by tu, and the corresponding singular verb must be used.

Rule 24.—Nostrum, of us, and vestrum, of you, can only

be used when a number is referred to.¹ **Nostri**, of *us*, and **vestri**, of *you*, are used in other cases.

Many of us

Multi nostrum

He is mindful of us

Memor nostri est

EXERCISE 41.

A. 1. Mihi multos libros pater dat. 2. Nos sumus in horto, vos estis in urbe. 3. Eis libros dat, nobis equos (dat). 4. Me mater culpat, te laudat. 5. Nemo nostrum vos laudat. 6. Hostes audaces sunt; consilia ducis eis nota sunt. 7. Tibi hortus gratus est, nobis urbs grata est. 8. In me est amor patriae. 9. Stulti saepe se laudant. 10. Soror bona est; fratres eam laudant.

B. 1. The leader praises us. 2. Who blames you, O son? 3. Many of us blame her. 4. The city is not pleasing to us in summer. 5. The children are always mindful of us. 6. In you, O soldiers, there is great love of valour. 7. Which of you blames me? 8. Wise [men] do not praise themselves. 9. The plans of the enemy are known to him. 10. To me he gives gold, to you silver.

Rule 25.—Translation of **it** and **they**. In Latin *it* and *they* may be masculine, feminine or neuter, according to the gender of the word they stand for.

Thus *it* standing for *field*, ager (masc.) = *is*.

it „ „ *spear*, hasta (fem.) = *ea*.

it „ „ *war*, bellum (neut.) = *id*.

Rule 26.—**Is, ea, id** is really an adjective meaning **that**,² plural **those**.

At **that** time

Eo tempore

In **those** times

Eis temporibus

¹ *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are **partitive genitives**; i.e., they can only be used when a number (i.e., a part) of us or of you is meant.

² It will be seen from this rule that when *is* is used to translate *he* it really means *that man*; *ea* means *that woman*, etc.

The plurals of *is*, *viz.*, *ei*, *eae*, *ea*, will therefore be frequently translated by **those** as well as by **they** and **them**.

EXERCISE 42.

A. 1. Equus niger est; quis eum non laudat? 2. Consilia bona sunt; ea nobis nota sunt. 3. Femina bona sese non laudat. 4. Rex scutum militi dat; miles id amico dat. 5. Ea templa sunt Neptuni domus. 6. Eo die rex in templo erat. 7. Patria eis grata est, eam omnes laudant. 8. Ea nocte comites in castris erant. 9. Castra in conspectu urbis sunt;¹ in eis¹ sunt multi milites. 10. Noctes hiemis longae sunt; quis nostrum eas laudant?

B. 1. The temple is in the wood; the maidens adorn it with flowers. 2. To them the farmers give corn. 3. In that summer the leader was in Italy. 4. That queen has many islands. 5. In that island are many farmers. 6. The wars of the Gauls are known to you; Cæsar narrates (= *narrat*) them. 7. The women are brave; the citizens praise them. 8. He gives those things (R. 15 (b)) to the leader. 9. To me he gives water; to her wine. 10. In us is love of [our] fatherland.

50. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

mĕus, mĕă, mĕum	my, mine
tŭus, tŭă, tŭum	thy, thine
sŭus, sŭă, sŭum	his, hers, its, their
noster, nostră, nostrum	our, ours
vester, vestră, vestrum	your, yours

These words are all declined like *bonus* or *niger*, and like all adjectives they agree in gender, case and number with their nouns. Thus *păter meus*, accusative *pătre^m meum*, etc.; *măter mea*, dative *matri meae*.

Rule 27.—Place the possessive adjective **after** its noun: our father = pater **noster**.

¹ The pupil should remember the number and gender of *castra*.

EXERCISE 43.

Put into Latin :—

to my brother	our friend	my friends (acc.)
my brothers (acc.)	to our friend	of my horses
of my brothers	our island	by my voice
my land	in our island	of our city
of my land	your garden	our [men] (R. 15)
my lands (acc.)	your gardens	to your mother
thy plans	your war	your wounds
of thy plans	your wars	into thy hands

51. *How to translate his, her, etc.*

There is some difficulty in translating the words **his, her, its** and **their**. Sometimes **suus** is used, sometimes **eius, eorum, earum**.

Rule 28.—(a) **Suus** can only be used when the word it translates stands for the **subject¹ of the sentence**.

The king praises **his** soldiers *Milites suos rex laudat*

The subject of *praises* is *king*; **his** = the king's, *i.e.*, *his* stands for the subject of the sentence, and is therefore translated by **suus**.

In using **suus** it must be noted that **suus** must agree with the noun it goes with. Thus :—

his mother	sua mater	his shield	suum scutum
his sword	suus gladius	their spear	sua hasta
his friends	sui amici	their spears	suae hastae

* * * NOTE.—Each of the words **suus, sua, suum** can mean **his, her, its, or their**, the gender depending entirely on the noun **his, etc.**, agrees with. Thus in the case of **suus** :—

The father praises his son	= suum filium
The mother praises her son	= suum filium
The horse carries its master	= suum dominum
The soldiers praise their leader	= suum ducem

¹ This rule will require a slight qualification later. For the present it will cover all cases that occur.

(b) When *his*, *her*, *its* or *their* do not stand for the subject of the sentence the words **eius**, **eorum**, **earum** are used.

I praise her daughters **Eius** filias ego laudo

Here *I* is the subject of the sentence; *her* cannot stand for *I*, and so we translate, *I praise the daughters of that [woman]*. R. 26.

* * NOTE.—The following is a very good test for **suus** and **eius**: If *his*, *her*, etc., can be turned into *that man's*, *that woman's*, etc., **eius**, etc. (not **suus**), must be used.

Thus, I praise her (= that woman's) daughter [**eius** filiam]. In *the queen praises her daughters*, if *her* means the queen's **suus** is used by R. 28. If, however, *her* means that woman's, **eius** is used.

Remember that **suus** is an adjective and agrees in number, gender and case with the noun it is used with; **eius**, etc., are not adjectives, but the **genitive cases** of *is*, *ea*, *id*, and they agree with the words they stand for in number and gender.

The women are brave; I praise **Feminae** fortes sunt; **earum**
their constancy constantiam laudo

(c) In cases like *Cæsar and his friend* **eius** is always used.¹

Cæsar and his friend Cæsar et **eius** amicus

EXERCISE 44.

Viva voce. Translate the following, using **suus** (R. 28):—

his friends (acc.)	their garden (acc.)	his arrows (acc.)
of his friends	their bodies	his slaves (acc.)
her brother (acc.)	their mother (acc.)	his swords (acc.)
her horses (acc.)	of their sister	his shields (acc.)

A. 1. *Pueri matrem suam laudant.* 2. *Puella aegra est; eius mater tristis est.* 3. *Dux milites laudat; eorum² liberis pecuniam dat.* 4. *In horto sunt multae arbores; earum²*

¹ *Cæsar and his friend are here* means *Cæsar is here and his friend is here*. Thus *his* is in one sentence and refers to the subject of another, and so does not fall under R. 28.

² What words do these words refer to? Explain their gender.

fructus bonus est. 5. Dux suos (R. 15) laudat. 6. Homo stultissimus sua (R. 15 (b)) semper laudat. 7. Insula est magna; eius incolae sunt nautae. 8. Verba stultorum sibi grata sunt.

B. 1. My brothers always praise their friends. 2. Our plans are known to our companions. 3. The girl loves her father and her mother, her sisters and her brothers. 4. The slave loves his children. 5. The islands are in the great sea; their inhabitants are very bold. 6. Your words, O Claudius, are not always wise. 7. The hunter wounds the lion with his spear. 8. Claudius sends his [men] into Italy. 9. Claudius praises the girl and her companions. 10. The boys and their companions are bold and brave.

52. THE VERB.

Latin verbs are divided into four classes or conjugations according to the ending of the **present infinitive active**.

1st conjugation ending in -āre, <i>āmāre</i>	to love
2nd conjugation „ -ēre, <i>mōnēre</i>	to advise
3rd conjugation „ -ere, <i>rēgēre</i>	to rule
4th conjugation „ -ire, <i>audire</i>	to hear

53. Verbs have four **principal parts**, from which the various tenses, moods, persons, numbers, etc., are obtained by altering the endings.

54. The principal parts of a verb are:—

- (1) The **present indicative** (*āmo*).
- (2) The **present infinitive** (*āmāre*).
- (3) The **perfect indicative** (*āmāvī*).
- (4) The **supine**¹ (*āmātum*).

Present tense of āmō.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>ām-o</i> , I love or am loving	<i>ām-āmŭs</i> , we love or are loving
<i>ām-ās</i> , thou lovest or art loving	<i>ām-ātis</i> , you love or are loving
<i>ām-āt</i> , he loves or is loving	<i>ām-ant</i> , they love or are loving

It will be seen that the endings are obtained by changing the final -o into -ās, -āt, etc.

¹ The *supine* in -um, as will be explained later, is only used to denote purpose after verbs of motion; the *supine* in -u is only used after certain adjectives, e.g., hard, easy, etc.

Rule 29.—In Latin there is no continuous¹ form of the tense. **Amo** means *I love* and *I am loving*.

Rule 30.—The subject pronouns of verbs are not expressed unless they are very emphatic. (We) love = *amamus*.

EXERCISE 45.

A. Write out the present tense of **culpo**, *I blame*; **orno**, *I adorn*; **do**, *I give*. (See footnote 1, p. 63.)

B. Give the Latin for:—

we praise	they give	we delight	he ploughs
they praise	I give	we lay waste	he wounds
thou praisest	thou givest	we adorn	thou praisest
he wounds	thou blamest	you adorn	we plough
we wound	they blame	you delight	we give
they wound	he delights	you wound	you give

C. Put into English:—

ornamus	aratis	das	dātis
ornas	vastamus	culpas	culpamus
delectant	vastant	culpatis	vulnerat
aro	dant	laudamus	vasto

Imperfect tense of amo.

ām-ābam , <i>I was loving</i>
ām-ābās , <i>thou wast loving</i>
ām-ābāt , <i>he was loving</i>
ām-ābāmūs , <i>we were loving</i>
ām-ābātis , <i>you were loving</i>
ām-ābant , <i>they were loving</i>

Future tense of amo.

ām-ābo , <i>I shall love</i>
ām-ābis , <i>thou wilt love</i>
ām-ābit , <i>he will love</i>
ām-ābimūs , <i>we shall love</i>
ām-ābitis , <i>you will love</i>
ām-ābunt , <i>they will love</i>

The imperfect endings of *am-o* are got by changing the *-o* into *-ābam*, etc.; the future by changing *-o* into *-ābo*, etc.

Rule 31.—The imperfect tense, e.g., *amatam*, besides meaning *I was loving*, also means *I used-to-love*.

¹ I write is present tense, I am writing is also present; but as the latter lays stress on the fact that the action is continuing at the time mentioned, *I am writing* is said to be present continuous tense.

EXERCISE 46.

(1) Write out imperfect and future of *laudo*, *aro* and *do*.

(2) Put into Latin:—

he was blaming ¹	they were pointing out	they were overcoming
we shall blame	we shall lay waste	they were entering
they were adorning	we are laying waste	I was entering
I shall adorn	we were laying waste	I was giving
you will delight	he was ploughing	I shall give
I was delighting	he will plough	I shall point out

A. 1. Nauta agricolam culpabat. 2. Galli Romanos superabunt. 3. Scipio insulam superabat. 4. Agricola locum militibus monstrabat. 5. Hieme agricolae agros arabunt. 6. Dux urbem cras intrabit. 7. Romani fines hostium vastabunt. 8. Monstrabimus urbem pulcherrimam militibus. 9. Cur, miles, ducem culpabas? 10. Priore bello Romani ex equis (Ex. 34, A. 2) pugnabant (R. 31).

B. 1. Thou wilt overcome the Gauls. 2. The boys were pointing out the place to the leader. 3. The mother will adorn the girl with a beautiful garment. 4. The girls were adorning the temple with flowers. 5. Why were you not ploughing the fertile valley? 6. [We] shall give rewards to the soldiers. 7. They were laying-waste the territories of the Gauls. 8. The soldiers were entering the city. 9. The diligent husbandman will plough [his] land. 10. The Gauls used-to-fight (R. 31) in (= out of) chariots.

55. When the verb means that an action is completed at the time referred to, the tense is said to be **perfect**. Thus I *write* is present; I *have written*, meaning that the action is completed, is perfect.

There are three perfects corresponding to the present, imperfect and future.

¹ The pupil should first say what the tense of the English is.

Simple Tenses.

Present—I love

Imperfect—I was loving

Future—I shall love

Perfect Tenses.

Present perfect or perfect—I have loved

Past perfect or pluperfect—I had loved

Future perfect—I shall have loved

NOTE.—Have is the sign of the perfect; had of the pluperfect; shall have of the future perfect.

56. In Latin verbs all perfect tenses are got by adding different endings to the perfect stem. In the same verb this perfect stem is found in all the perfect tenses.

Verbs like *āmo* form the perfect stem by changing -o into -āv. Thus *ām-o*, *āmāv-*; *laudō*, *laudāv-*.

NOTE.—The perfect of *do*, *I give*, is *dēd-i*.¹

The perfect tenses of *āmo*. Perfect stem *āmāv-*.

PERFECT.²

āmāv-ī, I have loved or I loved

āmāv-istī, thou hast loved or thou lovedst

āmāv-īt, he has loved or he loved

āmāv-īmūs, we have loved or we loved

āmāv-istīs, you have loved or you loved

āmāv-ērunt or *āmāv-ērē*, they have loved or they loved

PLUPERFECT.²

āmāv-eram, I had loved

āmāv-erās, thou hadst loved

āmāv-erāt, he had loved

āmāv-erāmūs, we had loved

āmāv-erātīs, you had loved

āmāv-erant they had loved

FUTURE PERFECT.²

āmāv-ēro, I shall have loved

āmāv-erīs, thou wilt have loved

āmāv-erīt, he will have loved

āmāv-erīmūs, we shall have loved

āmāv-erītīs, you will have loved

āmāv-erint, they will have loved

Rule 32 (a).—The perfect tense has two meanings. Thus *amavi* means I have loved and I loved.

¹ This is the only verb which has a short *ā* in the infinitive (*dāre*). The short *ā* (the stem vowel) occurs throughout the verb, except in the 2nd person singular present indicative (*dās*) and in the imperative singular (*dā*). Thus, *dāmus*, *dātis*; *dābo*, etc.; *dābam*, etc.

² The endings -i, -istī, etc., should first be learned separately. They occur in these tenses of all Latin verbs.

Rule 32 (b).—When *I loved* is made negative it becomes *I did not love*. *I did not love* means *I loved not*, and *did love* must be translated generally by the perfect tense.

EXERCISE 47.

- (1) Give the **perfect stem** of the following verbs:—

culpo	vasto	orno	do
porto	aro	supero	regno
vulnero	delecto	intro	paro

- (2) Say the **endings** of the pluperfect and future perfect.

- (3) Turn into Latin:—

he had carried	they have dwelt
we have fought	they prepared
I shall have prepared	he will have avoided
you had avoided	we carried
you had carried	we prepared
he has reigned	we avoided

A. 1. Iam nautae aurum in templum portaverant. 2. Galli strenue pugnāvērunt. 3. Multos annos (R. 14 (b)) in Britannia regnaverat. 4. Dux milites laudabat quod Gallos bello superaverant. 5. Priore anno in Gallia strenue pugnāvimus. 6. Con-vocāvērunt sapientes (R. 15 and 30) quod in magno periculo sunt. 7. Insulae incolae non in oppidis habitāvērunt. 8. Cervus crura culpaverat; cornua laudaverat. 9. Duces servis arma dedērunt quod erant in magno periculo. 10. Consul militum impetum laudabat.

B. 1. By [his] long legs the stag had avoided many dangers. 2. The allies have prepared arms. 3. They had dwelt for many years in the island. 4. [We] have carried the swords into the citadel. 5. The Gauls dwelt in the woods. 6. [In] many battles we had overcome the Romans. 7. He was praising the leader because our men had fought vigorously. 8. The consul called together [his] allies because the enemy (plural) were preparing arms. 9. Already you have overcome the enemy, soldiers. 10. The Romans did not always surpass (= overcome) the Gauls [in] boldness.

Subjunctive Mood of amo.

PRESENT.

am-em, I may love
am-ēs, thou mayst love
am-ēt, he may love
am-ēmus, we may love
am-ētis, you may love
am-ent, they may love

PERFECT.

āmāv-ērim, *I may have loved*
 amāv-ērīs, *thou mayst have loved*
 amāv-ērīt, *he may have loved*
 amāv-ērīmūs, *we may have loved*
 amāv-ērītīs, *you may have loved*
 amāv-ērint, *they may have loved*

IMPERFECT.

ān-ārem, *I might love*
 am-ārēs, *thou mightest love*
 am-ārēt, *he might love*
 am-ārēmus, *we might love*
 am-ārētis, *you might love*
 am-ārent, *they might love*

PLUPERFECT.

amāv-issēm,¹ *I might have loved*
amāv-issēs, *thou mightest have loved*
amāv-issēt, *he might have loved*
amāv-issēmus, *we might have loved*
amāv-issētis, *you might have loved*
amāv-issent, *they might have loved*

Rule 33.—The **imperfect subjunctive** is always obtained by adding the endings *-m*, *-s*, etc., to the **infinitive**.

Rule 34.—In English **may** is the sign of the **present subjunctive**; **might** (or **should**) is the sign of the **imperfect subjunctive**; **may have** of the **perfect subjunctive**; and **might have** (or **should have**) of the **pluperfect subjunctive**. But the Latin subjunctive is often used when the corresponding English is indicative.

57. The subjunctive in clauses of purpose :—

He praises the soldier **that he may fight well**; the words in thick type denote **purpose** and they form a **clause of purpose**, the verb being in the subjunctive.

In clauses of purpose **that** is translated by **ut**; **that . . . not** by **nē**.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) He praises the soldier that he
may fight well | Militem laudat ut bene
pugnet |
| (b) He praises the soldier that he
may not fight badly | Militem laudat ne male
pugnet |

¹ Notice that the stem *amav-* is still the same as in the perfect tenses of the indicative. See p. 56.

58. In negative clauses of purpose *lest* is sometimes used instead of *that . . . not*. *Lest* is translated by *ne*, and always takes the subjunctive.

59. The tense used in the subjunctive always depends on the tense of the principal verb. For this purpose all tenses are divided into two classes—
(a) tenses which do not refer to the past, often called **primary tenses**;
(b) tenses which do refer to the past, called **historic or past tenses**.

(a) *Primary Tenses.*

Present indicative ✓

Future indicative ✓

Imperative mood ✓

Perfect *with* have (R. 32 (a))

(b) *Historic Tenses.*

Imperfect indicative ✓

Pluperfect indicative ✓

Perfect *without* have (R. 32 (a))

Rule 35. Sequence of tenses.¹—The present subjunctive is used after primary tenses; the imperfect subjunctive is used after historic tenses.²

Thus (a) He fights that he **may** conquer.

(b) He fought that he **might** conquer.

Rule 36.—Since the perfect indicative has two meanings (R. 32 (a)) it can be followed by either present subjunctive or imperfect subjunctive, the one used depending entirely on the meaning of the perfect.

(a) He *has fought* (**pugnavit**) that he *may overcome* (**superet**).

(b) He *fought* (**pugnavit**) that he *might overcome* (**superaret**).

EXERCISE 49.

Viva voce :—

A. he may blame	we may fight	I may plough
we may blame	we may enter	I might plough
they may lay waste	we may give	you may delight
he might give	they might overcome	you might delight
they might give	they might carry	they may adorn
we may give	they might avoid	they might adorn

Before translating B explain how R. 35 on the sequence of tenses is observed in the italicised verbs.

¹ *I.e.*, the way in which one tense follows another.

² This rule will be amplified later. It is given here in this incomplete form in order that the pupil may see from the very first how one tense depends on another.

B. 1. He *fight*s that the leader *may* praise. 2. He *was fighting* that the leader *might* praise. 3. We *shall* plough that we *may* prepare corn. 4. We *had* ploughed that we *might* prepare corn. 5. You *have* prepared arms that you *may* fight. 6. You *were* preparing arms that you *might* fight. 7. He *will* fight that he *may* obtain (= prepare) booty. 8. He *was fighting* that he *might* obtain booty. 9. The leader *has* prepared¹ arms that they *may* set free [their] friends. 10. The leader *prepared*¹ arms that they *might* set free [their] friends.

EXERCISE 49.

A. 1. Arma servis dat ut pugnent. 2. Legati in urbem festinabant ut victoriam nuntiarent. 3. Dux milites laudabat ne pericula vitarent. 4. Consul praemia militibus dabit ut strenue pugnent. 5. Agricola frumentum dat ne Galli agros vastent. 6. Senex materiam parabat ut domum aedificaret. 7. Consul exercitum revocavit ut in Britannia pugnet. 8. Galli arma parabant ut contra Romanos pugnarent. 9. Imperator legatōs mittit ut omnia regi nuntient. 10. Nautae flores in templum portaverant ut puellae statuas ornarent.

B. 1. Soldiers will fight vigorously that they may obtain (= prepare) great booty. 2. The allies were fighting vigorously that the leader might not blame them. 3. We have called together the allies that the enemy may not overcome us. 4. The farmer had praised the soldiers that he might avoid the evils of war. 5. The mother is preparing beautiful garments that she may delight the maidens. 6. The leader gave money to the old man that he might not show the place to the enemy. 7. Caesar recalled the soldiers out-of (ex) Italy that they might fight in Gaul. 8. He has hastened into the town that he may announce the victory to the citizens. 9. We shall fight vigorously that we may set free our children. 10. We shall call together the allies that the Gauls may not lay waste our lands.

¹ See Rule 36.

The Imperative Mood of Amo.

PRESENT TENSE.

ăm-ă, love (*thou*)

ăm-ătě, love (*ye*)

FUTURE OR LEGAL IMPERATIVE.

ăm-ăto, *thou must love*

ăm-ătôtě, *you must love*

ăm-ăto, *he must love*

ăm-anto, *they must love*

60. What is called the future imperative is chiefly used in wills and legal documents. It is called future because it usually implies that the action referred to will be done not in the immediate present, but at some future time.

61. *Rules for the imperative :—*

Rule 37.—(a) The imperative mood expresses a **command**.

(b) In all commands the word for *not* is **nē**.

NOTE.—A negative command is often called a **prohibition**.

(c) When the command is 2nd person and **negative** it is translated¹ by **nē** and the **perfect subjunctive**.²

Praise the king

Laudā regem

Do not praise the king

Nē regem laudāvērīs

Do not praise, do not blame, etc., is to be translated therefore by the **perfect subjunctive**.

(d) When a command is 1st or 3rd person it is translated by the **present subjunctive**. Thus Let us praise = may we praise, Let him praise = may he praise.

Let us praise the king

Regem laudemus

Let him not hasten

Nē festinet

¹ That is in prose. In poetry *ne* is sometimes used with the ordinary imperative.

² Other ways of translating a negative command will be explained later. The explanation of this use of the perfect subjunctive is as follows; instead of bluntly saying *Do not praise*, the Romans said in a half apologetic way *May you not have praised!*

EXERCISE 50.

Rule 38.—Whenever *you* is used in speaking of one person always translate it by *thou* in Latin, making the verb singular.

Put into Latin¹ :—

call	do not carry	let him not wound	enter
blame	do not prepare	let him not give	do not enter
give	do not avoid	let us not give	let us enter
plough	let him plough	you must not enter	let them enter
point out	let us adorn	thou must avoid	let them not give
fight	let us fight	let him dwell	do not give

A. 1. Da vinum aegris (R. 15). 2. Monstrate locum exploratoribus. 3. Statuam floribus ornemus. 4. Ne parentes culpaveritis. 5. Parate arma, milites. 6. Ne puer in horto ambulet. 7. Arate vestros agros, agricolae. 8. Vitate belli mala consiliis bonis. 9. Virgines templum floribus ornanto. 10. Ne urbem nocte intraveris.

B. 1. Do not show the way to the spy. 2. O slaves, carry the corn into the city. 3. Do not give the booty to the slothful soldier. 4. Let us call together our [men]. 5. Prepare arms, Gauls, that you may overcome the Romans. 6. Let the girls² adorn [their] mother with a beautiful garment. 7. Recall (R. 38) the army, great consul, that it may fight in Italy. 8. O ambassadors, hasten into the city; announce the victory to the consul. 9. Let us prepare wood that we may build a house. 10. Do not praise the deeds of the wicked (R. 15).

¹ Where there is nothing to show whether the command in this part of the exercise is singular or plural, translate both ways for practice.

² When *let* is changed to *may* (R. 37 (d)) what case is girls? Who does the action? (§ 4.)

FIRST OR -A CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

ăm-o, ăm-ără, ămāv-ī, ăm-atum, *to love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

am-o, *I love or am loving*
 am-ās, *thou lovest or art loving*
 am-āt, *he loves or is loving*
 am-āmūs, *we love or are loving*
 am-ātīs, *you love or are loving*
 am-ant, *they love or are loving*

PERFECT.

amāv-ī, *I have loved **
 amāv-istī, *thou hast loved **
 amāv-īt, *he has loved **
 amāv-īmūs, *we have loved **
 amāv-istīs, *you have loved **
 amāv-ērunt or amāv-ērē, *they have loved **

* Or *I loved, thou lovedst, he loved, we loved, you loved, they loved.*

IMPERFECT.

am-ābam, *I was loving*
 am-ābās, *thou wast loving*
 am-ābāt, *he was loving*
 am-ābāmūs, *we were loving*
 am-ābātīs, *you were loving*
 am-ābant, *they were loving*

PLUPERFECT.

amāv-ēram, *I had loved*
 amāv-ērās, *thou hadst loved*
 amāv-ērāt, *he had loved*
 amāv-ērāmūs, *we had loved*
 amāv-ērātīs, *you had loved*
 amāv-ērant, *they had loved*

FUTURE.

am-ābo, *I shall love*
 am-ābīs, *thou wilt love*
 am-ābit, *he will love*
 am-ābīmūs, *we shall love*
 am-ābitīs, *you will love*
 am-ābunt, *they will love*

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāv-ēro, *I shall have loved*
 amāv-ērīs, *thou wilt have loved*
 amāv-erit, *he will have loved*
 amāv-erīmūs, *we shall have loved*
 amāv-erītīs, *you will have loved*
 amāv-erint, *they will have loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

am-em, *I may love*
 am-ēs, *thou mayst love*
 am-ēt, *he may love*
 am-ēmūs, *we may love*
 am-ētis, *you may love*
 am-ent, *they may love*

PERFECT.

amāy-ērim, *I may have loved*
 amāy-ērīs, *thou mayst have loved*
 amāy-ērīt, *he may have loved*
 amāy-ērimūs, *we may have loved*
 amāy-ērītis, *you may have loved*
 amāy-ērint, *they may have loved*

IMPERFECT.

am-ārem, *I might * love*
 am-ārēs, *thou mightest love*
 am-ārēt, *he might love*
 am-ārēmūs, *we might love*
 am-ārētīs, *you might love*
 am-ārent, *they might love*

PLUPERFECT.

amāy-issem, *I should have loved*
 amāy-issēs, *thou wouldst have loved*
 amāy-issēt, *he would have loved*
 amāy-issēmūs, *we should have loved*
 amāy-issētīs, *you would have loved*
 amāy-issent, *they would have loved*

* Or *should*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ā, *love thou*
 am-ātē, *love ye*

FUTURE OR LEGAL TENSE.

am-āto, *thou must love*
 am-āto, *he must love*
 am-ātōtē, *ye must love*
 am-antō, *they must love*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. am-ārē, *to love*
 Perf. amāy-isse, *to have loved*
 Fut. am-ātūrūs esse, *to be*
 about to love

GERUND.

Acc. am-andum, *the loving*
 Gen. am-andī, *of loving*
 Dat. am-andō, *for loving*
 Abl. am-andō, *by loving*

SUPINES.

am-ātum, *(in order) to love*
 am-ātū, *in loving*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. am-ans, -antis,
 Fut. am-ātūrūs, -a, -um,
 about to love

SECOND OR -E CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

mōn-ēo, mōn-ērē, mōnu-ī, mōn-ītum, *to advise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

mōn-eo, *I advise or am advising*
 mōn-ēs, *thou advisest* *
 mōn-ēt, *he advises or is advising*
 mōn-ēmūs, *we advise* †
 mōn-ētis, *you advise* †
 mōn-ent, *they advise* †

* Or *art advising*† Or *advisedst.*

PERFECT.

mōnu-ī, *I have advised or advised*
 mōnu-istī, *thou hast advised* ‡
 mōnu-īt, *he has advised* §
 mōnu-īmūs, *we have advised* §
 mōnu-istis, *you have advised* §
 mōnu-erunt or } *they have ad-*
 mōnu-ērē } *vised* §

‡ Or *are advising.*§ Or *advised.*

IMPERFECT.

mōn-ēbam, *I was advising*
 mōn-ēbās, *thou wast advising*
 mōn-ēbāt, *he was advising*
 mōn-ēbāmūs, *we were advising*
 mōn-ēbātis, *you were advising*
 mōn-ēbant, *they were advising*

PLUPERFECT.

mōnu-eram, *I had advised*
 mōnu-erās, *thou hadst advised*
 mōnu-erāt, *he had advised*
 mōnu-erāmūs, *we had advised*
 mōnu-erātis, *you had advised*
 mōnu-erant, *they had advised*

FUTURE.

mōn-ēbo, *I shall advise*
 mōn-ēbis, *thou wilt advise*
 mōn-ēbit, *he will advise*
 mōn-ēbimūs, *we shall advise*
 mōn-ēbitis, *you will advise*
 mōn-ēbunt, *they will advise*

FUTURE PERFECT.

mōnu-ēro, *I shall have advised*
 mōnu-eris, *thou wilt have advised*
 mōnu-erit, *he will have advised*
 mōnu-erimūs, *we shall have advised*
 mōnu-eritis, *you will have advised*
 mōnu-erint, *they will have advised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

mön-eam, *I may advise*
 mön-eās, *thou mayst advise*
 mön-eāt, *he may advise*
 mön-eāmūs, *we may advise*
 mön-eātīs, *you may advise*
 mön-eant, *they may advise*

PERFECT.

mönu-ërim, *I may have advised*
 mönu-ëris, *thou mayst have advised*
 mönu-ërit, *he may have advised*
 mönu-ërimūs, *we may have advised*
 mönu-ëritīs, *you may have advised*
 mönu-ërint, *they may have advised*

IMPERFECT.

mön-ërem *I might* advise*
 mön-ërēs, *thou mightest advise*
 mön-ërēt, *he might advise*
 mön-ërēmūs, *we might advise*
 mön-ërētīs, *you might advise*
 mön-ërent, *they might advise*

PLUPERFECT.

mönu-issem, *I should have advised*
 mönu-issēs, *thou wouldst have advised*
 mönu-issēt, *he would have advised*
 mönu-issēmūs, *we should have advised*
 mönu-issētīs, *you would have advised*
 mönu-issent, *they would have advised*

* Or *should*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

mön-ē, *advise thou*
 mön-ētē, *advise ye*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

mön-ētō, *thou must advise*
 mön-ētō, *he must advise*
 mön-ētōtē, *ye must advise*
 mön-entō, *they must advise*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. mön-ëre, *to advise*
 Perf. mönu-isse, *to have advised*
 Fut. mön-ītūrūs esse, *to be about to advise*

GERUND.

Acc. mön-endum, *the advising*
 Gen. mön-endī, *of advising*
 Dat. mön-endō, *for advising*
 Abl. mön-endō, *by advising*

SUPINES.

mön-ītum, *(in order) to advise*
 mön-ītū, *in advising*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mön-ens, -entīs, *advising*
 Fut. mön-ītūrūs, -a, -um, *about to advise*

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

Consonant or -U¹ Conjugation.

rĕg-o, rĕg-ĕrĕ, rex-ī, rec-tum, to rule.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

rĕg-o, I rule or am ruling
 rĕg-īs, thou rulest or art ruling
 rĕg-īt, he rules or is ruling
 rĕg-īmūs, we rule or are ruling
 rĕg-ītīs, you rule or are ruling
 rĕg-unt, they rule or are ruling

PERFECT.

rex-ī, I have ruled or I ruled
 rex-istī, thou hast ruled *
 rex-īt, he has ruled or he ruled
 rex-īmūs, we have ruled †
 rex-istīs, you have ruled ‡
 rex-ērunt or } they have ruled
 rex-ērĕ } or they ruled

* Or thou ruledst.

† Or we ruled.

‡ Or you ruled.

IMPERFECT.

rĕg-ĕbam, I was ruling
 rĕg-ĕbās, thou wast ruling
 rĕg-ĕbāt, he was ruling
 rĕg-ĕbāmūs, we were ruling
 rĕg-ĕbātīs, you were ruling
 rĕg-ĕbant, he was ruling

PLUPERFECT.

rex-ĕram, I had ruled
 rex-ĕrās, thou hadst ruled
 rex-ĕrāt, he had ruled
 rex-ĕrāmūs, we had ruled
 rex-ĕrātīs, you had ruled
 rex-ĕrant, they had ruled

FUTURE.

rĕg-am, I shall rule
 rĕg-ēs, thou wilt rule
 rĕg-ēt, he will rule
 rĕg-ēmūs, we shall rule
 rĕg-ētīs, you will rule
 rĕg-ent, they will rule

FUTURE PERFECT.

rex-ĕro, I shall have ruled
 rex-ĕrīs, thou wilt have ruled
 rex-ĕrīt, he will have ruled
 rex-ĕrimūs, we shall have ruled
 rex-ĕrītīs, you will have ruled
 rex-ĕrint, they will have ruled

¹ Some verbs of the third conjugation have u before -ĕre, e.g., minū-ĕre.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

rĕg-am, *I may rule*
rĕg-ās, *thou mayest rule*
rĕg-āt, *he may rule*
rĕg-āmūs, *we may rule*
rĕg-ātīs, *you may rule*
rĕg-ant, *they may rule*

PERFECT.

rex-ĕrim, *I may have ruled*
rex-ĕris, *thou mayest have ruled*
rex-ĕrit, *he may have ruled*
rex-ĕrimūs, *we may have ruled*
rex-ĕritīs, *you may have ruled*
rex-ĕrint, *they may have ruled*

IMPERFECT.

rĕg-ĕrem, *I might * rule*
rĕg-ĕrēs, *thou mightest rule*
rĕg-ĕrēt, *he might rule*
rĕg-ĕrēmūs, *we might rule*
rĕg-ĕrētīs, *you might rule*
rĕg-ĕrent, *they might rule*

PLUPERFECT.

rex-issem, *I should have ruled*
rex-issēs, *thou wouldst have ruled*
rex-issēt, *he would have ruled*
rex-issēmūs, *we should have ruled*
rex-issētīs, *you would have ruled*
rex-issent, *they would have ruled*

* Or should.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

rĕg-ĕ, *rule thou*
rĕg-itĕ, *rule ye*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

rĕg-itō, *thou must rule*
rĕg-itō, *he must rule*
rĕg-itōtĕ, *ye must rule*
rĕg-untō, *they must rule*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. **rĕg-ĕrĕ**, *to rule*
 Perf. **rex-issĕ**, *to have ruled*
 Fut. **rec-tūrūs esse**, *to be*
 about to rule

GERUND.

Acc. **rĕg-endum**, *the ruling*
 Gen. **rĕg-endī**, *of ruling*
 Dat. **rĕg-endō**, *for ruling*
 Abl. **rĕg-endō**, *by ruling*

SUPINES.

rec-tum, *(in order) to rule*
rec-tū, *in ruling*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. **rĕg-ens**, **-entīs**, *ruling*
 Fut. **rec-tūrūs**, **-a**, **-um**, *about to*
 rule

FOURTH OR -I CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

aud-io, aud-īrē, aud-īvī, aud-ītum, to hear.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

aud-io, I hear or am hearing
 aud-is, thou hearest *
 aud-īt, he hears or is hearing
 aud-īmūs, we hear
 aud-ītis, you hear
 aud-iunt, they hear

or are
 hearing

* Or art hearing.

† Or thou hearest.

PERFECT.

audīv-ī, I have heard or I heard
 audīv-istī, thou hast heard †
 audīv-īt, he has heard or he heard
 audīv-īmūs, we have heard †
 audīv-istis, you have heard §
 audīv-ērunt or audīv-ērē } they have heard
 } or they heard

‡ Or we heard.

§ Or you heard

IMPERFECT.

aud-iēbam, I was hearing
 aud-iēbās, thou wast hearing
 aud-iēbāt, he was hearing
 aud-iēbāmūs, we were hearing
 aud-iēbātis, you were hearing
 aud-iēbant, they were hearing

PLUPERFECT.

audīv-ēram, I had heard
 audīv-ērās, thou hadst heard
 audīv-ērāt, he had heard
 audīv-ērāmūs, we had heard
 audīv-ērātis, you had heard
 audīv-ērānt, they had heard

FUTURE.

aud-iam, I shall hear
 aud-iēs, thou wilt hear
 aud-iēt, he will hear
 aud-iēmūs, we shall hear
 aud-iētis, you will hear
 aud-ient, they will hear

FUTURE PERFECT.

audīv-ēro, I shall have heard
 audīv-eris, thou wilt have heard
 audīv-erit, he will have heard
 audīv-erimūs, we shall have heard
 audīv-eritis, you will have heard
 audīv-erint, they will have heard

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

aud-iam, *I may hear*
 aud-iās, *thou mayest hear*
 aud-iāt, *he may hear*
 aud-iāmūs, *we may hear*
 aud-iātīs, *you may hear*
 aud-iant, *they may hear*

PERFECT.

audīv-ĕrim, *I may have heard*
 audīv-ĕrīs, *thou mayest have heard*
 audīv-ĕrīt, *he may have heard*
 audīv-ĕrīmūs, *we may have heard*
 audīv-ĕrītīs, *you may have heard*
 audīv-ĕrint, *they may have heard*

IMPERFECT.

aud-īrem, *I might * hear*
 aud-īrēs, *thou mightest hear*
 aud-īrēt, *he might hear*
 aud-īrēmūs, *we might hear*
 aud-īrētīs, *you might hear*
 aud-īrent, *they might hear*

PLUPERFECT.

audīv-issem, *I should have heard*
 audīv-issēs, *thou wouldst have heard*
 audīv-issēt, *he would have heard*
 audīv-issēmūs, *we should have heard*
 audīv-issētīs, *you would have heard*
 audīv-issent, *they would have heard*

* Or should.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

aud-ī, *hear thou*
 aud-ītē, *hear ye*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

aud-ītō, *thou must hear*
 aud-ītō, *he must hear*
 aud-ītōtē, *you must hear*
 aud-iuntō, *they must hear*



INFINITIVE.

Pres. aud-īrē, *to hear*
 Perf. audīv-isse, *to have heard*
 Fut. aud-ītūrūs esse, *to be about to hear*

GERUND.

Acc. aud-iendum, *the hearing*
 Gen. aud-iendi, *of hearing*
 Dat. aud-iendō, *for hearing*
 Abl. aud-iendō, *by hearing*

SUPINES.

aud-ītum, *(in order) to hear*
 aud-ītū, *in hearing*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. aud-iens, -ientis, *hearing*
 Fut. aud-īturus, -a, -um, *about to hear*

52. *Contraction of Perfect Endings.*

When the **perfect stem** ends in **-v** there is often contraction.

(a) In the **first conjugation** **vi** or **ve** is often omitted before **-is** and **-er**. Thus

āmāvistī becomes **amāstī**
āmāvērunt „ **amārunt**

(b) In the **second conjugation** this also occurs sometimes with perfects in **-exi**.

implēvissem becomes **implessem**.

(c) In the **fourth conjugation** **v** or **vi** is often omitted, especially before **-is**.

audīvistī becomes **audiistī** or **audistī**
audīvissem „ **audiisem** „ **audissem**

Similarly **audīvit** becomes **audiit** .

audīvērunt „ **audiērunt**
audīvero „ **audiēro**, etc.
audīveram „ **audiēram**, etc.
audīverim „ **audiērim**, etc.
audīvissem „ **audiissem**, etc.

Rule 39.—When two nouns of similar meaning (denoting things which **often go together**) are joined by *and*, **-que** is used instead of *et*, and it is joined on to the end of the second noun.

Flowers and trees Flores arboresque

Rule 39 (a).—*He gives me money* = *He gives money to me*. After verbs like *give*, *owe*, *offer*, *set*, etc., **to** (the sign of the **dative case**) is often omitted in English. In Latin the **dative** must always be used in such cases

He gives the boy money Puero pecuniam dat.

EXERCISE 51.

The Present, Imperfect and Future of moneo.

he has ¹	we were fearing	you restrain
we shall have	thou fearest	you offer
they had (imperf.)	he will fear	they will offer
we owe	we were teaching	thou wilt teach
I was owing	we shall teach	he was teaching
they will owe	we are teaching	they are teaching

A. 1. Caesar in conspectu urbis castra habebat.² 2. Omnia beneficia deis debemus. 3. Socii Romanis frumentum praebebant. 4. Animalia asinum timebant quod leonis pellem habebat. 5. Vix militum iram dux coercet. 6. Docemus pueros frigus tolerare. 7. Galli oppida vicosque habent. 8. Puerum multis verbis coercebimus. 9. Britanniae incolae auxilium Gallis praebent. 10. Agricola verbis ferocibus milites terrebunt.

B. 1. He owes me much money (R. 22). 2. They will have [their] camp there. 3. We were offering food to the girl. 4. The farmers have fields and gardens (R. 39). 5. I shall teach my children to bear heat in summer. 6. The ass terrifies the animals because he has the lion's skin. 7. Who fears the foolish ass? 8. Scarcely does the king restrain the keen soldiers. 9. They will have the camp in that place. 10. We were offering help to [our] allies.

¹ The verb *to have* can be used as an auxiliary when it is a sign of the perfect tenses, § 55, e.g., he has ploughed. But it can also be an independent verb, meaning *to possess*, when it is translated by *habeo*.

² The imperfect must very often be translated by the simple past, e.g., *monebat* = he was advising or he advised.

63. The clause introduced by *si* = *if* expresses a condition. *If he overcomes the enemy* all will praise him.

Rule 40.—In English *if* is followed by the present even when the future is meant. In Latin *si* must be followed by the **future perfect**¹ or **future**¹ whenever the future is meant. *If he overcomes*² the enemy *Si hostes superaverit*² omnes all men will praise him. eum laudabunt.

The same rule applies to *nisi*, *if not*, *unless*.

EXERCISE 52.

The Perfect Tenses of moneo.

(1) Write the 3rd person perfect of the following, placing a hyphen between the **perfect stem** and the ending:—

praebeo	teneo	habeo	fleo	compleo
doceo	deleo	debeo	terreo	moveo

(2) I had taught	he has wept
we shall have taught	we had wept
they have taught	you have wept
I shall have held	they had destroyed
we have held	you will have destroyed
you had held	I had moved

we have moved
thou hast moved
thou hast frightened
thou hast destroyed
he will destroy
he will have destroyed

¹ Whether the future or future perfect is used depends entirely on the sense. *We will go out if the sun shines*, *i.e.*, if the sun **shall** be shining. Here the future simple is the correct tense. But *He will repay me if he succeeds* means *when he shall have succeeded*, and the future perfect must be used in Latin.

² The real meaning is: When he *shall have overcome* the enemy all will praise him, *i.e.*, at a future time when the action is finished.

A. 1. Galli in castris se tenuerant. 2. Milites multas urbes deleverunt. 3. Rigidi frigores parvos debebat. 4. Insulam firmo praesidio tenuimus. 5. Adventus consulis exercitum spe complevit. 6. Decimo anno Graeci Troiam deleverunt. 7. Si vos Romani, foedera tenueritis, nostra foedera tenebimus. 8. Milites fossam aquā compleverunt. 9. Scipio castra trans flumen movebat. 10. Si ventus fructum deleverit agricolae flebunt.

B. 1. They had filled the ditch with stones and trees (R. 39). 2. We have destroyed the towns and villages of the Gauls. 3. If the Romans overcome the Gauls they will destroy [their] village. 4. To-morrow they will move the camp into the plain. 5. The Romans had taught the soldiers (acc.) to bear heat and cold. 6. The consul had filled our men with the hope of booty. 7. He will weep if we restrain (R. 40) him. 8. We were weeping because the Greeks had destroyed our city. 9. Why have you not offered corn to us? 10. If the consul moves the camp the allies will offer corn.

EXERCISE 53.

The Subjunctive of moneo (§§ 57-59 and R. 33-36).

Viva voce :—

that he may destroy	that we may not have
that he may weep	that we may not destroy
that we may hold	that you might not weep
that you may move	that he may not frighten
that he might teach	that we might not offer
that he might have	that we may not move

A. 1. Exercitum convocabat ut insulam firmo praesidio tenēret. 2. Milites festinant ut urbem deleant. 3. Castra movemus ut hostes terreamus. 4. Caesar agricolas terrebat ne hostibus frumentum praebērent. 5. Frumentum Caesarī prae-buerant ut belli mala vitarent. 6. Paremus arma ut servi nos timeant. 7. Graeci socios convocaverunt ut Troiam dele-~~rent~~rent. 8. Galli auxilium praebe-bunt ne Caesar oppidum

deleat. 9. Servos terrebitur ne arma pārent.¹ 10. Convoca milites ut fossam aquā compleant.

B. 1. We are frightening the farmers that they may offer corn. 2. The leader will blame vigorously that he may restrain the soldiers. 3. Scipio was holding the island with a strong garrison that he might frighten the inhabitants. 4. We shall move the camp that the farmers may not fear the horsemen. 5. Prepare arms, citizens, that you may restrain the soldiers. 6. He offers money that the enemy (plural) may not destroy [his] corn. 7. Cæsar has frightened the Gauls that they may not offer help to the enemy (plural). 8. We had destroyed the city that the allies might keep the treaty. 9. We shall have a camp there that we may obtain (= prepare) food. 10. The consul praises that he may fill our men (R. 15) with hope.

Rule 41.—Certain verbs govern the **dative case** in Latin although they have an accusative in English. The commonest of these are:—

pāreo *I obey*

plāceo *I please*

nōceo *I injure*

displāceo *I displease*

The soldier obeys **the leader**

Miles **duci** pāret.

NOTE.—Verbs governing the dative are sometimes grouped according to meaning thus: (1) obeying and disobeying, (2) harming and helping, (3) pleasing and displeasing.

EXERCISE 54.

On the Imperative of mōneo and R. 37.

Viva voce:—

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------------|------------------|---------------------|
| (1) teach | let us obey | do not teach | let him obey |
| destroy | let us please | do not please | let him have |
| weep | let us destroy | do not displease | let him not destroy |
| frighten | let us offer | do not fear | do not destroy |

¹ It should be noted that first conjugation verbs in the *present subjunctive* greatly resemble the *present indicative* of the 2nd conjugation. *Ne* here shows that *parent* is subjunctive; it comes therefore from *pārare*.

(2) he pleases me	he has obeyed us
I please my father	do not injure the tree
we obey the laws	we shall obey our king
they obey the leaders	he displeases the master
they had obeyed me	obey the wise
do not displease Cæsar	let us obey the king
do not injure the flowers	do not displease us
do not injure me	he has injured the flower

(3) Write¹ in opposite columns (a) the present indicative, (b) the present subjunctive of the following pairs of verbs: **pāro**, 1, *I prepare*, and **pāreo**, 2, *I obey*; **flo**, 1, *I blow*, and **fleo**, 2, *I weep*; **plāco**, 1, *I appease*, and **plāceo**, 2, *I please*.

A. 1. *Pāreamus legibus bonis.* 2. *Milites, complete fossam lapidibus.* 3. *Ne terrueritis insulae incolae.* 4. *Lauda regem; imperatori pāre.* 5. *Castra in campum moveamus.* 6. *Ne amicis displiceamus.* 7. *Flete, feminae; milites hortos delent.* 8. *Frumentum hostibus ne praeberitis.* 9. *Parete duci ne vos verbis ferocibus coerceat.* 10. *Animalia pelle leonis, O asine, ne terrueris.* 11. *Consules militiae summum ius habento; nemini pārento; illis (= to them) salus rei publicae suprema lex esto.*²

B. 1. Let us fill the ditch with water. 2. Let us not displease our parents. 3. Restrain the anger of the soldiers with wise words. 4. Do not move the camp across the river. 5. Hold the town with a strong garrison. 6. Soldiers must obey the general. 7. Frighten the farmers that they may not offer corn to the enemy. 8. The cold has injured my trees. 9. Let us teach boys to bear cold. 10. Do not destroy the town, allies.

¹ See footnote, p. 82. Notice the difference of quantity in these pairs of verbs.

² This is the future imperative (§ 60) of the verb *to be*, i.e., *let . . . (it) be*.

EXERCISE 55.

On the Present, Imperfect and Future of rego.

Rule 42.—When **to** means **motion towards** it is translated by the preposition **ad** with the **accusative**.

He sends the hostages **to** Cæsar. Obsides **ad** Cæsārem mittit.

Viva voce:—

he was leading	I shall cover	I was sending
we shall lead	thou wast covering	he will send
they are leading	he is covering	they were sending
I shall lead	he was covering	they are sending
he leads	we shall cover	they will send
they were leading	they will cover	you are sending

A. 1. Scipio magnum exercitum in Africam mittet. 2. Consules in Galliam multas legiones ducebant. 3. Puer ad matrem scribebat. 4. Pater pueri corpus pallio tegit. 5. Pueri multos libros legent. 6. Auxilium ad socios mittemus. 7. Quid dicitis, amici? 8. Saepe ad amicos scribebamus (R. 31). 9. Novas legiones in castra mittebant. 10. Princeps civitatem bene reget.

B. 1. I, O king, shall lead the cavalry into Italy. 2. We were writing a long letter to the king. 3. The earth will cover the bones of the animals. 4. Cæsar sends many hostages to the consul. 5. The boy will read the mother's letter. 6. The allies send help to the Romans. 7. Why were you not reading the letter? 8. What are you reading, friends? 9. If you send (R. 40) the boy to me, I will say a few words to him (R. 3). 10. Why do you not send a cloak to the old man?/

EXERCISE 56.

Perfect Tenses of rego.

(1) Write out, without endings, the **perfect stem**¹ of *dūco*, *dūco*, *tēgo*, *lēgo*, *scribo*, *mitto*, *ēmo*, *vinco*, *claudio*, *dēfendo*, *descendo*, *contendo*.

¹ The perfect stem is obtained by taking the ending -i from the 1st person of the perfect tense.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

he has led	we have written	they have bought
we had led	you had written	they have shut
they will have led	I shall have bought	they have defended
I had read	thou hadst conquered	we had read
thou hast read	they have conquered	we had sent
they have read	they will have conquered	we had said

A. 1. Galli magnam copiam frumenti emerant. 2. Nostri in Italiam contendērunt. 3. Cras multos Gallos vicerit. 4. Si auxilium ad socios miseritis, hostes vincent. 5. Urbem nostram defendemus; portas iam clausimus. 6. Copias Romanorum Hannibal vicit. 7. Cæsar magnis itineribus in Italiam contendebat. 8. Cur in planitiem descenderatis, O milites? 9. Dux noster hostes vicerat quod socii auxilium miserant. 10. Hannibal copias suas per (*through, over*) Alpes duxit.

B. 1. The Romans have bought a great number of carts. 2. If you conquer (R. 40) all will praise you. 3. The allies had sent many hostages into camp. 4. The little boy had written a letter to [his] mother. 5. The forces of Hannibal were hastening into Italy. 6. They had covered the bones with earth. 7. The farmers fear the evils of war because the army has descended into the plain. 8. The Gauls were holding themselves in the camp because Cæsar's forces had hastened into Gaul. 9. The inhabitants have sent a great quantity of wine to the soldiers. 10. Why have you shut the gates of the city, O foolish citizens?

EXERCISE 57.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of rego.

Rule 43.—Four verbs drop the *-e* of the imperative singular, viz.: *dīco*, to say; *dūco*, to lead; *fācio*,¹ to make; *fēro*,² to carry. The imperative singular is therefore *dic, duc, fac, fer*.

¹ Some verbs of the third conjugation have *-io* in the 1st person. These will be explained later.

² A very irregular verb, to be explained later.

Viva voce :—

let us buy	shut	that he might conquer
let us read	hasten	that we may defend
let us shut	buy	that they may buy
let him shut	do not say	that they might read
let him conquer	do not write	that thou mayst write
let him defend	do not send	that you may conquer

A. 1. Ducamus copias nostras in Galliam citeriorem. 2. Dic mihi nomina comitum tuorum. 3. Cæsar copias in Italiam duxit; ibi castra posuit. 4. Ponamus praesidia ut urbem defendamus. 5. Dux milites in urbem miserat ut frumentum emerent. 6. Instruite aciem, milites, ne hostes nos vincant. 7. Ne scripseris epistolam longam ad matrem. 8. Cæsar cum Gallis bellum gerebat. 9. Consul copias convocat ut auxilium ad socios mittat. 10. Ponite praesidia ad (at) portas urbis.

B. 1. Let us buy a large quantity of corn. 2. The soldiers were filling the ditch with water that they might defend the city. 3. He sends the army into Gaul that it may wage war. 4. Read good books, boys. 5. We shall hasten into Africa that we may buy corn. 6. O great consul, lead the army into Italy. 7. For many years (R. 14 (b)) the Romans were waging war in Gaul. 8. Cover the boy with a new garment. 9. Send foot-soldiers that they may defend the city. 10. Cæsar often waged war; he conquered many nations.

EXERCISE 58.

On the Indicative of audio.

Viva voce :—

he is punishing	he has fortified	he will end
they will punish	we shall fortify	he has ended
we had punished	they will fortify	you were ending
thou wast punishing	they had fortified	I had ended
I shall have punished	they will have fortified	they end
they punish	thou wast fortifying	we have ended

A. 1. Vallo fossaque hostes castra muniverunt. 2. Pueri senis verba audiebant. 3. Leges scelera improborum virorum punient. 4. Patres filios magna cura erudiverant. 5. Urbem alto muro muniebamus. 6. Mors omnes labores finiet. 7. Si pedites obsides male custodiverint, dux culpabit. 8. Decimo anno consul bellum finivit. 9. Iam castra muniveramus; iam praesidia posueramus. 10. Frumentum custodiunt quod impetum hostium timent.

B. 1. The boys were hastening into the wood because they had heard the sweet voice of the bird. 2. The Gauls had fortified the town with a rampart. 3. Why are you not guarding the hostages? 4. We shall train our children with great care. 5. The master was punishing the pupils because they wrote badly. 6. If you punish the boy he will write better (*melius*). 7. Who will hear the speech of Claudius? 8. They were finishing [their] labours. 9. They were punishing the slaves because they had guarded the hostages badly. 10. If you fortify the camp the enemy will not draw up the line of battle.

EXERCISE 59.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of audio.

Viva voce:—

he is coming	I may come	they have bound
they were coming	he might come	we are binding
I shall come	we may come	they will bind
he has come	come (plural)	let us bind
we had come	do not come	let us not bind.
they will have come	he might have come	we had bound

A. 1. Veni ad me statim. 2. Decimo die nostrae copiae in fines Gallorum pervenerant. 3. Post pugnam occisos (R. 15) dux sepelivit. 4. Milites conveniebant ut bellum finirent. 5. Venite in templum, comites. 6. Ne corpora in urbe sepeliveritis. 7. Catenas parabit ut captivos vinciat. 8. Laboremus ut nostra

corpora nutriamus. 9. Patres liberos bene nutriunto? 10. Legati ad Cæsarem ante noctem vënērunt.

B. 1. Do not come to us by night (R. 14). 2. To-morrow we shall arrive in¹ Italy. 3. After the fight our [men] bound the captives with chains. 4. They had bound the hostages in the sight of all. 5. The allies were burying the slain in the wood. 6. If he comes to Cæsar, let him come immediately. 7. I was working that I might nourish my body. 8. We are guarding the hostages well that the leader may not punish us. 9. Before the fight the leader said many [things] to our men. 10. Train your mind; nourish your bodies.

THE INFINITIVE.

64.—The Latin infinitive is used (a) as **subject** or (b) as **object** of a verb.

(a) **To praise** is pleasanter than **Laudare** quam **culpæ** jucundius est
to blame

(b) The soldier prepares to **Miles pugnare** parat
fight

If the infinitive is a transitive verb it can have an object.
He prepares **to plough** the field **Agrum arare** parat

EXERCISE 60.

On the Infinitives of the four Conjugations.

Rule 44.—*To walk is pleasant* means *To walk is a pleasant (thing)*. An adjective thus used with an infinitive is always **neuter**.

Viva voce. Say with English the infinitive, present and perfect, of the following verbs :—

regno	vasto	doceo	rego	vinco	audio
intro	praebeo	moveo	mitto	custodio	sepelio

¹ This means motion towards (R. 7, footnote).

A. 1. Pugnare pro (= *for*) patriā, est pulchrum. 2. Rex exercitum ducere in Italiam statuit. 3. Post pugnam dux corpora sepelire parabat. 4. Militibus est turpe captivos male custodivisse. 5. Erat difficillimum Gallos superare. 6. Galli multos carros emere statuerant. 7. Socii statuunt auxilium ad Romanos mittere. 8. Exemplum bonum praebere est difficile. 9. Ambulare in silvis iucundissimum est. 10. Voces puellarum audire est dulce.

B. 1. It is not easy to rule well. 2. To walk in summer delights boys. 3. To plough the land is useful. 4. It is difficult to write well. 5. The leader decides to send hostages. 6. The soldier prepares to set free the captives. 7. It is disgraceful not to have obeyed [one's] parents. 8. Soldiers like (= love) to fight vigorously. 9. To have gold is very pleasant. 10. To have said wise words is always useful.

65. The infinitive continued.

Rule 45.—After verbs of asking, commanding, advising and striving the English infinitive is translated by *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive.

I ask the boy to read	Puerum rōgo ut legat
He asked the boy not to hasten	Puerum rōgavit ne festinaret

The reason for this is that in such cases the English infinitive expresses purpose. I ask you **to come** means I ask you **so that you may come**. The Latin infinitive never expresses purpose.

The following rhyme is useful:—

With **ask, command, advise and strive**
By *ut* translate infinitive.

65 (a). The tense (see § 59 and R. 35-36), number and person of the subjunctive used can always be ascertained by turning the phrase in English before translating. Thus:—

I ask him to come	= I ask him that he may come
He asked me to come	= He asked me that I might come
He asked us to come	= He asked us that we might come

66. The commonest verbs which take **ut** and subjunctive are:—

cūrāre to take care	impērāre to give orders
rōgāre to ask	mōnēre to advise
orare to beg	persuādēre to persuade ¹

With *impero* and *persuadeo* the person is put in the **dative**.
The other verbs of this list govern an accusative.

ut ~~perfect~~ EXERCISE 61.

Viva voce. Turn as in § 65 (b), and translate:—

he asks me to hasten	I beg the boy not to weep
he asked me to hasten	I begged the boy not to weep
he asks them to hasten	they beg us not to weep
he asked them to hasten	they begged us not to weep
he asks us to hasten	they beg you not to weep
he asked us to hasten	they begged you not to weep

A. 1. Rex militem monet ut captivos bene custodiat.² 2. Miles medicum orabat ut vulnus sanaret. 3. Nos monebit ne nocte urbem intremus. 4. Sociis dux imperavit ut auxilium mitterent. 5. Me orat ut seni pecuniam dem. 6. Curate, milites, ut castra muniatis. 7. Pueri curabant ut vitia vitarent. 8. Nobis persuadet ne aciem instruamus. 9. Quis me monet ne urbem defendam? 10. Ora puerum ne matri displiceat.

B. 1. He gives orders to the allies to hold the island. 2. The children beg the doctor to heal [their] mother. 3. My mother was asking me not to write badly. 4. The citizens are begging the general not to destroy the town. 5. They advise us to fight vigorously. 6. I beg you not to blame me. 7. Advise the soldiers to obey the leader. 8. He orders the

¹ In the sense of persuading a person to do a thing.

² This and similar sentences should first be translated literally and then be turned into a phrase with an infinitive, as in 65 (b).

soldiers to bury the dead. 9. We advise you to read good books. 10. Let us beg the father to train the boy with very great care.

PRESENT AND FUTURE PARTICIPLES.

67. The English present participle ends in *-ing*; *working, walking*. It is frequently used with the verb *to be* to form the continuous tenses, R. 29, e.g., *he is ploughing*. This is **never so in Latin**, and the student must be careful to translate *he is ploughing* by *he ploughs, arat*.

Rule 46.—The **Latin present participle** is obtained from the 1st person of the present indicative by the changes shown in the following table:—

1st	ām-o	ām-ans, -antis	loving
2nd	mōn-eo	mōn-ens, -entis	advising
3rd	rēg-o	rēg-ens, -entis	ruling
4th	aud-io	aud-iens, -entis	hearing

Rule 47.—The **Latin present participle** is an **adjective** declined¹ like *prudens*, § 33, i.e., ablative *-i*, genitive plural *-ium*, neuter plural *-ia*. It must agree with the word referred to in number, gender and case.

Who did not hear the shouts of the Gauls fighting bravely? Quis clamores Gallorum, fortissime pugnantium, non audivit?

Rule 48.—The **Latin future participle** is obtained from the supine, § 54, by changing the *-m* into *-rus*. It is an adjective of three terminations, declined like *bonus*. It agrees in number, gender and case with the word referred to.

1st	āmo	amatu-m	āmātū-rus	about to love
2nd	mōneo	mōnitu-m	mōnītū-rus	about to advise
3rd	rēgo	rectu-m	rectū-rus	about to rule
4th	audio	auditu-m	audītū-rus	about to hear

¹With one exception. When the present participle is used in the ablative absolute (to be explained later) the ablative ends in *-e*.

To the slave **about to fight** the leader gives a sword Servo **pugnatus** dux gladium dat
 They **are about to carry** the gold into the temple Aurum in templum **portaturi sunt**

Rule 49.—Unlike the present participle, the **future participle** is often used with the verb *to be* to form a tense referring to the immediate future. The girl is **about to give** a flower to her sister. Puella sorori florem **datura** est

EXERCISE 62.

(1) Say with English the *nominative singular* and *plural* and the *genitive singular* and *plural* of the present participle of:—

ambulo	praebeo	dico	custodio
vasto	deleo	tego	munio
vulnero	fleo	mitto	sepelio
intro	doceo	lego	vincio

(2) Say the supine and then the future participle of the following verbs:—

monstro	praebeo	duco	finio
culpo	deleo	scribo	venio
aro	moveo	mitto	sepelio
do	doceo	gero	nutrio

(3) Say what words the italicised participles agree with, state the number, gender and case and then translate the *participles*.

1. The boy, *hearing* the noise, runs into the wood.
2. The boys, *hearing* the noise, run into the wood.
3. To the boys, *hearing* the noise, their companion shows the way.
4. He praises the woman *showing* the way.
5. He praises the women *showing* the way.
6. The soldiers, *about-to-enter* the city, prepare arms.
7. The girl, *about-to-walk* in the garden, has a cloak.
8. Who does not see the girl *about-to-walk* in the garden?
9. Who does not see the girls *about-to-walk* in the garden?
10. They are terrified by the soldiers *about-to-ravage* the land.

EXERCISE 63.

Rule 50.—Present and future participles are often used to translate an English clause or sentence.

The consul hears the soldiers [who *Milites, victoriam nuntiantes*, consul audit. are] **announcing** the victory

*** Before translating, pick out the participles and find, by the ending, what words they agree with.*

A. 1. Nemo pugnantium (R. 15) ducem culpat. 2. Scipio, Carthaginem deleturus, in Africam festinabat. 3. Militi, victoriam nuntianti, laudem magnam rex dedit. 4. Puellae rosas paraturae sunt. 5. Gallos, strenue pugnantes, Romani vicerunt. 6. Videt hostes, patriam vastantes. 7. Clamores militum, captivos vincientium, in aures nostras veniunt. 8. Regi, auxilium Romanis praebituro, agricolae frumentum dant. 9. Magnus est dolor militum, comites sepelientium. 10. Sociis, bellum gesturis, rex auxilium praebet.

*** Before translating pick out each participle and say what word it agrees with (R. 47-48).*

Imitate the order of words in Rule 47.

B. 1. The Greeks left a wooden horse standing on (= in) the shore. 2. Soldiers always praise a leader fighting bravely. 3. The allies, about-to-send help, prepare corn. 4. The leader, [while] drawing up the line of battle, relates the deeds of brave [men]. 5. The Gauls are about to ravage our lands. 6. To the consul, about to wage war, the Romans give great forces. 7. We have heard the names of the soldiers [who are] conquering the Gauls. 8. To the girl obeying her mother (R. 41) we give a reward. 9. The leader was about-to-bind the captives. 10. Take-care-of (*curate*¹) the children of [those] defending the city.

¹ *Curare*, to take care of, to mind, governs the accusative.

The verb sum, I am.

sum, esse, fū-i, fūtūrū, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

sum, I am
ēs, thou art
est, he is
sūmūs, we are
estīs, you are
sunt, they are

PERFECT.

fū-i, I have been or I was
fū-istī, thou hast been or wast
fū-it, he has been or was
fū-imūs, we have been or were
fū-istīs, you have been or were
fū-erunt or
fūerē } they have been or were

IMPERFECT.

eram, I was
erās, thou wast
erāt, he was
erāmūs, we were
erātīs, you were
erant, they were

PLUPERFECT.

fu-eram, I had been
fu-erās, thou hadst been
fu-erāt, he had been
fu-erāmūs, we had been
fu-erātīs, you had been
fu-erant, they had been

FUTURE.

erō, I shall be
erīs, thou wilt be
erit, he will be
erimūs, we shall be
erītīs, you will be
erunt, they will be

FUTURE PERFECT.

fu-ero, I shall have been
fu-erīs, thou wilt have been
fu-erit, he will have been
fu-erimūs, we shall have been
fu-erītīs, you will have been
fu-erint, they will have been

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

sim, I may be
sīs, thou mayst be
sīt, he may be
sīmūs, we may be
sītīs, you may be
sint, they may be

PERFECT.

fū-ērim, I may have been
fū-ērīs, thou mayst have been
fū-ērīt, he may have been
fū-ērīmūs, we may have been
fū-ērītīs, you may have been
fū-ērint, they may have been

IMPERFECT.

essem or *fōrem*, I might * be
essēs or *fōrēs*, thou mightest be
essēt or *fōrēt*, he might be
essēmūs or *fōrēmūs*, we might be
essētīs or *fōrētīs*, you might be
essent or *fōrent*, they might be

PLUPERFECT.

fu-issem, I should have been
fu-issēs, thou wouldst have been
fu-issēt, he would have been
fu-issēmūs, we should have been
fu-issētīs, you would have been
fu-issent, they would have been

* Or should.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

ēs, be thou
estē, be ye

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

estō, thou shalt or must be
estō, he shall or must be
estōtē, ye shall or must be
suntō, they shall or must be

INFINITIVE MOOD AND PARTICIPLES.

Infinitive Present. *essē*, to be

„ Perfect. *fū-issē*, to have been

„ Future. *fūtūrūs essē* or *fōrē*, to be about to be

Participle Future. *fūtūrūs*, -a, -um, about to be

EXERCISE 64.

On the Indicative of sum.

Rule 51.—The verb **to be** takes the same case after it as before it when the same thing is meant (see § 20 (*c*), p. 15).

The men are sailors **Viri sunt nautae**

A. 1. *Senum cantus*: Nos fuimus olim iuvenes, fortes et audaces. 2. *Cantus juvenum*: Nos sumus hodie iuvenes et fortes, nos pro (*for*) patriā pugnabimus. 3. *Cantus puerorum*: Teneri sumus; mox fortes erimus et pugnabimus sicut (*like*) patres nostri. 4. Fuerat dux equitum. 5. Eo tempore in Italia eramus. 6. Tua consilia rei publicae utilia erunt. 7. Si fortes eritis, victores eritis. 8. Semper felices, amici, fuistis. 9. Incolae insulae fuerant nautae. 10. Nostra erit victoria si fuerimus fortes.

B. 1. The father was a sailor. 2. In that year the consuls were Claudius and his brother. 3. We shall be happy if you are happy. 4. The boy has always been bold. 5. We had been in Italy many years (R. 14 (*b*)). 6. If the boys are happy the mothers will be glad. 7. Soon we shall be in Italy. 8. You, [when] boys, had been strong and bold. 9. Never had my soldiers been timid. 10. We were the guardians of the gold.

Rule 52.¹—When the subject consists of two nouns, or two pronouns, or a noun and a pronoun joined by *and*, the **verb is plural**.

The dog and the horse are
useful to men

Canis et equus hominibus
sunt utiles

Rule 53.¹—When two subjects joined by **et** are not of the same

¹ These two rules are just the same in English. We say He and I are (*i.e.*, we are) in the garden.

person, the verb is plural and agrees in person with the 1st person rather than with the 2nd and with the 2nd person rather than with the 3rd.

You and I (*we*) **are** glad Ego et tu laeti **sumus**

Rule 54. Order of Words.—In Latin the 1st person stands before the 2nd or 3rd; the 2nd stands before the 3rd, *i.e.*, pronouns and nouns stand in the order of their person.¹

You and I **Ego et tu**
My king and I **Ego et rex meus**

EXERCISE 65.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of sum.

A. 1. Tu et frater tuus estis in horto; ego et soror mea sumus in templo. 2. O pueri, este semper fideles. 3. Es fortis ut victor sis. 4. Vir et ejus filius fuerant utilissimi civitati. 5. Ne fueris (R. 37 (c)) iracundus, O dux. 6. Consul's consilia erant sapientia ut utilia civitati essent. 7. Ego contentus sum ut laetus sim. 8. Pugnate strenue ne bellum longum sit. 9. Leges sunt justae. 10. Este testes meae constantiae.

B. 1. Let (R. 37 (d)) the weapons be sharp. 2. My father and I were always faithful to our friends. 3. Be diligent that your parents may be glad. 4. You and I shall be unhappy if our friends are in danger. 5. Be contented with few things (*res*) that you may be happy. 6. Do not be foolish, boys. 7. The old man had always been faithful that his memory might be pleasant to the citizens. 8. Citizens must be faithful. 9. Do not be unhappy, friends; be glad. 10. My friend and I had been in Italy.

¹ English, out of politeness, makes the speaker put himself last.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

ămōr, ămārī, ămātūs sum, I am loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

am-ōr, I am loved
 am-ārīs or am-ārē, thou art loved
 am-ātūr, he is loved
 am-āmūr, we are loved
 am-āmīnī, you are loved
 am-antūr, they are loved

IMPERFECT.

am-ābār, I was being loved
 am-ābārīs or am-ābārē, thou wast being loved
 am-ābātūr, he was being loved
 am-ābāmūr, we were being loved
 am-ābāmīnī, you were being loved
 am-ābantūr, they were being loved

FUTURE.

am-ābōr, I shall be loved
 am-ābērīs or am-ābērē, thou wilt be loved
 am-ābītūr, he will be loved
 am-ābīmūr, we shall be loved
 am-ābīmīnī, you will be loved
 am-ābuntūr, they will be loved

PERFECT

amātūs sum, I have been loved or I was loved
 amātūs ēs, thou hast been loved or wast loved
 amātūs est, he has been loved or was loved
 amātī sūmūs, we have been loved or we were loved
 amātī estīs, you have been loved or you were loved
 amātī sunt, they have been loved or were loved

PLUPERFECT.

amātūs ēram, I had been loved
 amātūs ēras, thou hadst been loved
 amātūs ērāt, he had been loved
 amātī ērāmūs, we had been loved
 amātī ērātīs, you had been loved
 amātī ērant, they had been loved

FUTURE PERFECT.

amātūs ērō, I shall have been loved
 amātūs ērīs, thou wilt have been loved
 amātūs ērīt, he will have been loved
 amātī ērimūs, we shall have been loved
 amātī ērītīs, you will have been loved
 amātī ērunt, they will have been loved

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

am-ār. *I may be loved*
 am-ārīs or am-ārē, *thou mayst be loved*
 am-ētūr, *he may be loved*
 am-ēmūr, *we may be loved*
 am-ēmīnī, *you may be loved*
 am-entūr, *they may be loved*

IMPERFECT.

am-ārēr, *I might be loved*
 am-ārērīs or am-ārērē, *thou mightest be loved*
 am-ārētūr, *he might be loved*
 am-ārēmūr, *we might be loved*
 am-ārēmīnī, *you might be loved*
 am-ārentūr, *they might be loved*

PERFECT.

amātūs sim, *I may have been loved*
 amātūs sis, *thou mayst have been loved*
 amātūs sit, *he may have been loved*
 amātī simūs, *we may have been loved*
 amātī sitīs, *you may have been loved*
 amātī sint, *they may have been loved*

amātūs essēm, I should have been loved
amātūs essēs, thou wouldst have been loved
amātūs essēt, he would have been loved
amātī essēmūs, we should have been loved
amātī essētīs, you would have been loved
amātī essent, they would have been loved

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

am-ārē, *be thou loved*
 am-amīnī, *be ye loved*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

am-ātōr, *thou must be loved*
 am-ātōr, *he must be loved*
 am-antōr, *they must be loved*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. am-ārī, *to be loved*
 Perf. amātūs esse or fuisse, *to have been loved*
 Fut. amātum irī, *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. amātūs, -a, -um, *loved or having been loved*
 Gerundive. amandūs, -a, -um, *requiring to be loved*

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

mōnēor, mōnērī, mōnītus sum, to be advised.

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.

mōn-eor, I am advised
 mōn-erīs, thou art advised
 mōn-ētūr, he is advised
 mōn-ēmūr, we are advised
 mōn-ēmīni, you are advised
 mōn-entūr, they are advised

PERFECT.

mōnītūs sum, I have been advised or was advised
 mōnītūs es, thou hast been advised or wast advised
 mōnītūs est, he has been advised or was advised
 mōnītūs sumus, we have been advised or were advised
 mōnītī esūs, you have been advised or were advised
 mōnītī sunt, they have been advised or were advised

IMPERFECT.

mōn-ēbā, I was being advised
 mōn-ēbāris or mōn-ēbāre, thou wast being advised
 mōn-ēbātūr, he was being advised
 mōn-ēbāmūr, we were being advised
 mōn-ēbāmīni, you were being advised
 mōn-ēbantūr, they were being advised

PLUPERFECT.

mōnītūs ēram, I had been advised
 mōnītūs erās, thou hadst been advised
 mōnītūs erāt, he had been advised
 mōnītī ēramus, we had been advised
 mōnītī erātis, you had been advised
 mōnītī erant, they had been advised

FUTURE.

mōn-ēbōr, I shall be advised
 mōn-ēbāris or mōn-ēbāre, thou wilt be advised
 mōn-ēbītūr, he will be advised
 mōn-ēbīmūr, we shall be advised
 mōn-ēbīmīni, you will be advised
 mōn-ēbuntūr, they will be advised

FUTURE PERFECT.

mōnītūs ēro, I shall have been advised
 mōnītūs eris, thou wilt have been advised
 mōnītūs erit, he will have been advised
 mōnītī ērimus, we shall have been advised
 mōnītī eritis, you will have been advised
 mōnītī erunt, they will have been advised

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

mōnītus sim, *I may have been advised*
 mōnītus sis, *thou mayst have been advised*
 mōnītus sit, *he may have been advised*
 mōnītī simūs, *we may have been advised*
 mōnītī sitīs, *you may have been advised*
 mōnītī sint, *they may have been advised*

PLUPERFECT.

mōnītus essem, *I might have been advised*
 mōnītus essēs, *thou mightest have been advised*
 mōnītus essēt, *he might have been advised*
 mōnītī essemūs, *we might have been advised*
 mōnītī essētīs, *you might have been advised*
 mōnītī essent, *they might have been advised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

mōnētōr, *thou must be advised*
 mōnētōr, *he must be advised*
 mōnentōr, *they must be advised*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. mōnītūs, -a, -um, *advised or having been advised*
 Gerundive. mōnendus, -a, -um, *requiring to be advised*

PRESENT.

mōn-eār, *I may be advised*
 mōn-eārīs or mōn-eārē, *thou mayst be advised*
 mōn-eātūr, *he may be advised*
 mōn-eāmūr, *we may be advised*
 mōn-eāmīni, *you may be advised*
 mōn-eantūr, *they may be advised*

IMPERFECT.

mōnērēr, *I might (or should) be advised*
 mōnērērīs or mōnērērē, *thou mightest be advised*
 mōnērētūr, *he might be advised*
 mōnērēmūr, *we might be advised*
 mōnērēmīni, *you might be advised*
 mōnērentūr, *they might be advised*

PRESENT.

mōnērē, *be thou advised*
 mōnēmīni, *be you advised*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. mōnērī, *to be advised*
 Perf. mōnītūs essē or fuissē, *to have been advised*
 Fut. mōnītum irī, *to be about to be advised*

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

rēgōr, rēgī, rectūs sum, to be ruled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

rectus sum, I have been ruled or was ruled
 rectus es, thou hast been ruled or wast ruled
 rectus est, he has been ruled or was ruled
 recti sumūs, we have been ruled or were ruled
 recti estis, you have been ruled or were ruled
 recti sunt, they have been ruled or were ruled

PLUPERFECT.

rectūs ērām, I had been ruled
 rectūs ērās, thou hadst been ruled
 rectūs ērāt, he had been ruled
 rectī ērāmūs, we had been ruled
 rectī ērātīs, you had been ruled
 rectī ērant, they had been ruled

FUTURE PERFECT.

rectūs ēro, I shall have been ruled
 rectūs ēris, thou wilt have been ruled
 rectūs ērit, he will have been ruled
 rectī ērimūs, we shall have been ruled
 rectī ēritīs, you will have been ruled
 rectī ērint, they will have been ruled

PRESENT.

rēg-or, I am ruled
 rēg-eris, thou art ruled
 rēg-itur, he is ruled
 rēg-imur, we are ruled
 rēg-imini, you are ruled
 rēg-untur, they are ruled

IMPERFECT

rēg-ēbār, I was being ruled
 rēg-ēbāris or rēg-ēbarē, thou wast being ruled
 rēg-ēbātūr, he was being ruled
 rēg-ēbāmūr, we were being ruled
 rēg-ēbāminī, you were being ruled
 rēg-ēbantūr, they were being ruled

FUTURE.

rēg-ār, I shall be ruled
 rēg-eris or rēg-ere, thou wilt be ruled
 rēg-ētūr, he will be ruled
 rēg-emur, we shall be ruled
 rēg-emini, you will be ruled
 rēg-entūr, they will be ruled

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

rēg-ār, *I may be ruled*
 rēg-āris or rēg-ārē, *thou mayst be ruled*
 rēg-ātūr, *he may be ruled*
 rēg-āmūr, *we may be ruled*
 rēg-āminī, *you may be ruled*
 rēg-antūr, *they may be ruled*

IMPERFECT.

rēg-ēr, *I might be ruled*
 rēg-ērīs or rēg-ērē, *thou mightest be ruled*
 rēg-ētūr, *he might be ruled*
 rēg-ēmūr, *we might be ruled*
 rēg-ēminī, *you might be ruled*
 rēg-entūr, *they might be ruled*

PRESENT.

rēg-ērē, *be thou ruled*
 rēg-iminī, *be ye ruled*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. rēg-ī, *to be ruled*
 Perf. rectūs esse or fuisse, *to have been ruled*
 Fut. rectum irī, *to be about to be ruled*

PERFECT.

rectūs sīm, *I may have been ruled*
 rectūs sis, *thou mayst have been ruled*
 rectūs sit, *he may have been ruled*
 rectī simūs, *we may have been ruled*
 rectī sitīs, *you may have been ruled*
 rectī sint, *they may have been ruled*

PLUPERFECT.

rectūs essēm, *I should (or might) have been ruled*
 rectūs essēs, *thou wouldst have been ruled*
 rectūs essēt, *he would have been ruled*
 rectī essēmūs, *we should have been ruled*
 rectī essētīs, *you would have been ruled*
 rectī essent, *they would have been ruled*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE.

rēg-ītōr, *thou must be ruled*
 rēg-ītōr, *he must be ruled*
 rēg-antōr, *they must be ruled*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. rectus, -a, -um, *ruled or having been ruled*
 Gerundive. rēgēndūs, -a, -um, *requiring to be ruled*

FOURTH CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

audiōr, audiri, auditus sum, to be heard.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

aud-iōr, I am heard
 aud-iris, thou art heard
 aud-itur, he is heard
 aud-imur, we are heard
 aud-imini, you are heard
 aud-iuntur, they are heard

IMPERFECT.

aud-iēbār, I was being heard
 aud-iēbāris or aud-iēbarē, thou wast being heard
 aud-iēbātūr, he was being heard
 aud-iēbāmūr, we were being heard
 aud-iēbāmini, you were being heard
 aud-iēbantūr, they were being heard

FUTURE.

aud-iār, I shall be heard
 aud-iēris or aud-iere, thou wilt be heard
 aud-iētur, he will be heard
 aud-iēmur, we shall be heard
 aud-iēmini, you will be heard
 aud-iēntur, they will be heard

PERFECT.

aud-iitūs sum, I have been heard or was heard
 aud-iitūs es, thou hast been heard or wast heard
 aud-iitūs est, he has been heard or was heard
 aud-iitī sumūs, we have been heard or were heard
 aud-iitī estis, you have been heard or were heard
 aud-iitī sunt, they have been heard or were heard

PLUPERFECT.

aud-iitūs ērām, I had been heard
 aud-iitūs ērās, thou hadst been heard
 aud-iitūs ērāt, he had been heard
 aud-iitī ērāmūs, we had been heard
 aud-iitī ērātis, you had been heard
 aud-iitī ērant, they had been heard

FUTURE PERFECT.

aud-iitūs ēro, I shall have been heard
 aud-iitūs ēris, thou wilt have been heard
 aud-iitūs ērit, he will have been heard
 aud-iitī ērimūs, we shall have been heard
 aud-iitī ēritis, you will have been heard
 aud-iitī ērunt, they will have been heard

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

audītūs sim, *I may have been heard*
 audītūs sīs, *thou mayst have been heard*
 audītūs sīt, *he may have been heard*
 audītī simūs, *we may have been heard*
 audītī sītīs, *you may have been heard*
 audītī sint, *they may have been heard*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

audītūs essem, *I should (or might) have been heard*
 audītūs essēs, *thou wouldst have been heard*
 audītūs essēt, *he would have been heard*
 audītī essemūs, *we should have been heard*
 audītī essētīs, *you would have been heard*
 audītī essent, *they would have been heard*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

audītōr, *thou must be heard*
 audītōr, *he must be heard*
 audīuntōr, *they must be heard*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. audītus, -a, -um, *heard or having been heard*
 Gerundive. audiendus, -a, -um, *requiring to be heard*

PRESENT.

aud-iār, *I may be heard*
 aud-iārīs or aud-iārē, *thou mayst be heard*
 aud-iātūr, *he may be heard*
 aud-iāmūr, *we may be heard*
 aud-iāminī, *you may be heard*
 aud-iantūr, *they may be heard*

IMPERFECT.

audirēr, *I might be heard*
 audirērīs or audirērē, *thou mightest be heard*
 audirētūr, *he might be heard*
 audirēmūr, *we might be heard*
 audirēmīnī, *you might be heard*
 audirentūr, *they might be heard*

PRESENT.

aud-irē, *be thou heard*
 aud-imīnī, *be ye heard*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. audirī, *to be heard*
 Perf. audītus, -a, -um, essē or fuissē, *to have been heard*
 Fut. audītum irī, *to be about to be heard*

68. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE.¹(a) **Active.** The farmer **ploughs** the land.(b) **Passive.** The land **is ploughed** by the farmer.

When the verb shows that the subject of the sentence denotes the **doer** of the action the verb is said to be in the **active** voice.

When the verb shows that the subject of the sentence denotes the receiver or sufferer of the action the verb is said to be in the **passive**² voice.

Rule 55.—The Latin present tense of the passive means that the action is still going on, not completed. Thus—

Puer laudatur = *the boy is being praised*.

Similarly the imperfect *laudabatur* means that the action was going on, not completed, at a given past time, *i.e.*, *he was being praised*.

69. In translating into Latin care must be taken to ascertain the exact meaning. *The letter is written* means *the letter has been written*, and it must be translated by the Latin perfect (R. 57 note).

EXERCISE 66.

On the Present, Imperfect and Future of amor.

Viva voce :—

we are being praised	they are being shown
they will be praised	you will be carried
he was being blamed	they are being ploughed
you are being blamed	they will be ploughed
it is being given	we were being overcome
it will be given	thou art being overcome
thou wilt be adorned	you will be delighted
thou art being adorned	you are being delighted

A. 1. Consilia parantur; milites convocantur. 2. Vos, O filiae, a matribus ornabimini. 3. Dum regis agri arabantur, agricolae terra vastabatur. 4. Si bellum erit cives ad arma vocabuntur. 5. Tu, fili, cottidie a magistris culparis. 6. Mul-

¹ Some grammarians only apply the term *active* to transitive verbs. They then speak of intransitive verbs as being *neuter*.

² Passive means suffering, from the Latin *passus* = suffered.

tum frumenti (R. 22) civibus dabitur. 7. Viri periculis magnis sapientiâ liberantur. 8. Obsides a Gallis Cæsari dabuntur. 9. Nos floribus delectabamur, vos ab equis delectabamini. 10. Nos superabimur quod via hostibus monstratur.

B. 1. Soon the victory will be announced to the Romans. 2. The flowers were being carried into the temple. 3. Why are you not being called together, citizens? 4. While you were praised I was blamed. 5. The Gauls will be overcome; their lands will be ravaged. 6. Great forces are being given to the consul. 7. The fields of good husbandmen are ploughed in winter. 8. You, Claudius, were blamed because our plans were being announced to the enemy. 9. Swords are being given to the slaves. 10. You, O Gauls, will be overcome by (R. 13) the Romans, your towns will be given to the victors.

Rule 56.—The Latin **perfect participle** is obtained by changing the **-m** of the supine¹ into **-s**.

PRES. TENSE. SUPINE. PERF. PART.

am-o	am-â-tum	am-âtûs	<i>having been loved</i>
culp-o	culp-â-tum	culp-âtûs	<i>having been blamed</i>

Verbs for practice:—Give the supine and perfect participle (with meaning) of laudo, vulnero, vasto, aro, delecto, orno, monstro, supero, porto, convoco, pâro, nuntio.

Rule 57.—The **perfect tenses** of the passive voice are made up of the **perfect participle** and the verb **sum**.²

¹ § 54, p. 60. The supine of first conjugation verbs is obtained by changing the **-o** of the 1st person into **-â-tum**; **am-o**, **am-â-tum**; **culp-o**, **culp-â-tum**.

² The **perfect tenses** of the verb **sum** are sometimes used to form the perfect tenses of the passive voice. Thus:—

perf. indic	amatus sum	or amatus fui , etc.
plupf. „	amatus eram	or amatus fueram , etc.
fut. pf. „	amatus ero	or amatus fuero , etc.
perf. subjunct.	amatus sim	or amatus fuerim , etc.
plupf. „	amatus essem	or amatus fuisset , etc.

70. The perfect participle is an adjective like *bonus*, and it must always agree in gender, number and case with the word it refers to. ^f

SINGULAR

Puer **amatus** estPuella **amata** estConsilium **laudatum** est

PLURAL

Pueri **amati** suntPuellae **amatae** suntConsilia **laudata** sunt.

NOTE.—*The letter has been written* means that the writing is completed. If we say the letter *is written* it means the letter *has been written*; and just as the active perfect scripsit means he *has written* or he *wrote*, so the passive perfect means *has been* or *was written*.

Epistola scripta est¹The letter **has been written** or **was written**

EXERCISE 67.

*On the Perfect Tenses of amor.**Viva voce:—*

the woman has been praised

the women have been praised

the boy had been praised

the boys had been praised

the word has been praised

the words have been praised

the lands will have been ravaged

the girl had been adorned

I shall have been delighted

we shall have been set free

it had been avoided

they (neut.) had been avoided

we have been called

he was blamed

we were overcome

it was announced

A. 1. Statuae a puellis ornatae erant. 2. Si superati erimus, socii nostri superabuntur. 3. Multa mala regis sapientiā vitata erant. 4. Nostri agri vastati sunt; nostri socii superati (sunt). 5. Iter hostibus a servo monstratum erat. 6. Oppida aedificata sunt; agri arati (sunt). 7. Exercitus superabatur quod ejus dux vulneratus erat. 8. Mox aurum in urbem portatum erit. 9. Magnae copiae consuli datae sunt. 10. Tu, O fili, a magistro laudatus es.

B. 1. Corn had been given to the allies by the consul. 2. In winter the land was ploughed, in summer the corn was carried into the city. 3. If the soldiers are called together

¹ Sometimes the perfect participle passive is used, with or without the verb to *be*, purely as an adjective, e.g., *occisus*. Ex. 59, A. 3.

(R. 40) we shall not be overcome. 4. In that battle the consuls had been wounded. 5. The temple was adorned with many flowers. 6. The matter (= *res*) has been announced to the consuls. 7. We have been called together, friends, because the state is in great danger. 8. Why were you blamed, foolish boys. 9. They were carried into the house by the sailors. 10. The dangers had been avoided by wise plans.

Rule 58.—The perfect participle is often used, without the verb *sum*, to describe or distinguish a noun with which it must agree in *number*, *gender* and *case*.

Girls, adorned with flowers,	Puellae, floribus ornatae,
were carrying the statue into	statuam in templum porta-
the temple	bant

NOTE.—**Order of words.**—In phrases like *adorned with flowers* place the participle at the end of the phrase, and place the whole phrase immediately after the word it qualifies.

Rule 59.—A participle used in this way very often corresponds to a complete clause or sentence in English.

The citizens of the city which-	Cives urbis expugnatae in
had-been-stormed were in	magno periculo erant
great danger	

Here *which-had-been-stormed* is equivalent to *stormed*.

EXERCISE 68.

A. State what nouns the following participles refer to, giving number, gender and case:—

1. The soldiers, *wounded* by the spears of the enemy, were carried into the camp. 2. To the soldiers *wounded* in that battle Cæsar gave money. 3. The names of the soldiers *wounded* in that battle are known to us. 4. The corn, *prepared* by the farmer, was given to the soldier.

Turn the clauses in italics into participles:—

5. All praise the girls *who-are-adorned* with flowers. 6. They

give rewards to the soldiers *who-have-been-called-together*. 7. The enemy destroyed the city *when-it-had-been-stormed*. 8. To the slaves *who-had-been-set-free* the masters gave horses. 9. The memory of dangers *which-have-been-avoided* is pleasant. 10. He praises the house *which-has-been-built* by the slaves.

B. Translate the above into Latin.

EXERCISE 69.

On the whole of amor.

A. 1. Galli, a Romanis superati, obsides Caesari dant. 2. Date frumentum ne vestri agri vastentur. 3. Lauda alios (*others*) ut ipse (*you, yourself*) laudēris. 4. Dux curabat ut frumentum militibus daretur. 5. Arma parabamus ne superaremur. 6. Frumentum, ab agricola paratum, duci monstratum est. 7. Vos, O feminae, timebatis ne vulneraremini. 8. Festinabam ne culparer. 9. Hastae militum, in ea pugna vulneratorum, liberis datae sunt. 10. Dominus fabros laudavit ut domus bene aedificetur (R. 36).

B. 1. Let us prepare flowers that the temple may be adorned. 2. The leaders, called * together by the king, were hastening into the city. 3. The leader calls together the slaves *who-had-been-set-free*. 4. They prepared gold that it might be given to the consul. 5. The land, ploughed * in winter, will give (= offer) corn in summer. 6. The spear, pointed * out by the soldier, had wounded many [men]. 7. Do not be foolish that you may not be blamed. 8. I took care that the dangers might be avoided. 9. Boys, praised * by masters, will learn many things.

71. * * A very common error is to mistake a perfect participle for a finite¹ verb. A perfect participle can always have *having been* prefixed to it. Thus, called means *having been called*.

¹ A finite verb is a verb with a subject expressed or understood. Thus participles, infinitives, supines, and gerunds, etc., are not finite verbs

EXERCISE 70.

Second conjugation passive voice. Vocs. 51-4.

Viva voce. (1) Simple tenses :—

he is feared	we are being taught	they will be taught
we shall be feared	they will be taught	they will be destroyed
they were being feared	thou art taught	they will be terrified
I shall be feared	you are taught	they will be moved
thou art feared	you may be taught	he may be moved
they are feared	I might be taught	he may be restrained

(2) Perfect tenses. Give the perfect participles¹ (R. 56) of :—

placeo*	deleo	noceo*	doceo
displiceo*	moveo	fleo*	teneo
pareo*	compleo	praebeo	coerceo

- (3) the boys have been advised the camp had been moved
 the girls have been advised the camp will have been moved
 I had been taught the city has been destroyed
 we had been taught the town has been destroyed
 the ditch has been filled we shall have been frightened
 the ditches have been filled he may have been frightened

EXERCISE 71.

A. 1. Nocte pueri saepe terrentur. 2. Cur non meis lacrimis movebaris, O crudelissime? 3. Exercitus exercetur; mox pugnabit. 4. Si crudeles eritis, ab omnibus timebimini. 5. Equus ligneus armatis viris completus est. 6. Cato Romanos admonebat ut Carthago deleretur. 7. Monet ut pueri in armis exercentur. 8. Naves in portu tempestate tentae erant. 9. Fossae aquâ compleantur (R. 37 (d)). 10. Duci, a Romanis superato, auxilium praebitum est.

¹The supine must first be found from the parts of the verbs shown in Vocs. 51-54; give *neut.* only of those marked *.

B. 1. The foot-soldiers were terrified by the sudden attack of the horsemen. 2. Why are you terrified by the fear of death? 3. In Britain the bodies of boys are exercised daily. 4. The ditch has been filled with stones. 5. The queen had been moved by the tears of the old man. 6. The wooden horse, filled with soldiers, was the cause of destruction to the Trojans. 7. The wise will advise that the bodies of boys be exercised daily. 8. The slaves, terrified by the cruelty of the master, were hastening into the wood. 9. Towns have been destroyed, fields have been ravaged. 10. Help had been offered to the Gauls by their allies.

Rule 60.—Verbs which govern the **dative** (R. 41) can only be used **impersonally in the passive**.

The masters are obeyed by the boy must be turned *It is obeyed to the masters by the boy*.

The masters **are obeyed** by the Magistris a puero **parētur**
boy

The tree has been injured Arbori **nocitum est**

NOTE.—An **impersonal** verb is only used in the 3rd person singular. Its subject is always *it*¹ standing for no definite thing. An **impersonal verb** is therefore always **singular**, and the **participle**, if the verb is perfect passive, is always **neuter**.

EXERCISE 72.

Viva voce :—

I am obeyed	we are pleased
we are obeyed	the mothers had been pleased
the mother will be obeyed	we were being pleased
the tree will be injured	the leader will be displeased
the trees have been injured	I had not been obeyed
the flowers were injured	they had been injured

A. 1. Mulieres flebant quod urbs militibus completa est. 2.

¹ When *it* stands for a definite thing the verb is no longer impersonal, e.g., The lord has bought a field; *it* is fertile.

Classis romana tempestate in portu tenebatur. 3. Omnes vici Gallorum deleti erant. 4. Tempestate fructibus nocitum erat. 5. Nostri, mortis metu moti, frumentum hostibus praebebant. 6. Servi, minis territi, arma parant. 7. Si magistro paritum erit, pueri laudabuntur. 8. Admone milites ut fossa lapidibus compleatur. 9. A Romanis Hannibal timebatur; ab eo Italia vastabatur. 10. Naves nostrae ab hostibus visae sunt.

B. 1. Let the treaties be kept by the allies. 2. Do not be terrified (R. 37 (c)) by angry words. 3. The wooden horse was seen on (= in) the beach. 4. The Trojans will not be terrified by the wooden horse filled¹ with soldiers. 5. The good mother will be obeyed by her children. 6. Who will rebuild (= build) the city destroyed by the Romans? 7. The tree had been injured by the great tempest. 8. I advise that corn be offered to our allies. 9. He warned the Gauls that the camp might not be moved across the river. 10. If I am obeyed by you I shall be kind to you.

EXERCISE 73.

On **regor** (Vocab. 55-7).

Viva voce :—

(1) he is being sent	he is being covered
it is being written	we may be covered
they were being written	it will be defended
you are being led	we shall be defended
you will be led	we may be defended
they will be led	they might be shut
thou art being conquered	
thou wilt be conquered	
you will be conquered	
you were being sent	
they might be sent	
he is being covered	

¹ What word does *filled* agree with? (§ 74.)

(2) Say the supine and then the perfect participle of the following verbs (R. 56):—

lego, emo, gero, claudio, scribo, pono
duco, instruo, vinco, tego, defendo, dico

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| (3) we have been led | you may have been defended |
| we have been conquered | they might have been led |
| they have been shut | it had been drawn up |
| thou hast been led | it had been waged |
| you had been covered | thou hadst been defended |
| I shall have been defended | they will have been shut |
| (4) the city had been defended | war will have been waged |
| the cities had been defended | wars have been waged |
| corn has been bought | the gates have been shut |
| the letter has been written | laws had been read |
| the letters have been read | men had been sent |
| war had been waged | a letter had been sent |

Rule 61.—**Cum** (written also **quum**), *when*, takes the **subjunctive** whenever it implies **cause** as well as **time**, especially with the **imperfect** and **pluperfect**.

When the Gauls had been conquered, Cæsar returned to Italy Cæsar, **cum** Galli **victi** **essent**, in Italiam rediit

In this case the clause *when the Gauls had been conquered* not only tells when Cæsar returned to Italy, but also states the cause.

NOTE.—If *when* denotes time merely, **cum** takes the **indicative**.

When I was in the city, my brother was at home **Cum** in urbe **eram**, frater meus domi erat

EXERCISE 74.

- A. 1. Epistola a puero scribitur; mox ad matrem mittetur.
2. Multos annos bella a Romanis gerebantur. 3. Puero pallium datum est ut corpus tegatur. 4. Carri empti sunt; frumentum

in urbem portatum est. 5. Si urbs defensa erit non vincemur. 6. Cæsar, cum castra posita essent, duces convocavit. 7. Galli, cum auxilium missum esset, facile Romanos vicerunt. 8. Portae claudantur (R. 37 (d)) ne opprimamur. 9. Stulta verba dicta sunt. 10. Eo proelio feminae a pueris defensae erant.

B. 1. Guards are being placed; the gates are being closed. 2. Hostages will be sent to Cæsar. 3. When¹ the hostages had been sent Cæsar decided to hasten into Italy. 4. The forces of the Romans were conquered by Hannibal. 5. Wine had been sent to the soldiers by the inhabitants. 6. Our [men], led by Cæsar, will not easily be conquered. 7. When the general had arrived in the plain, the gates of the city were shut. 8. Let us prepare arms that the enemy may be conquered. 9. If guards are placed at (= *ad* with accus.) the gates, our city will be defended. 10. We advised the citizens that the gates should be shut.

EXERCISE 75.

On **audior** (Vocab. 53-9).

Viva voce :—

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) they are being fortified | I may be punished |
| they will be fortified | he might be punished |
| they may be fortified | they might be punished |
| they were being fortified | thou wilt be bound |
| we shall be punished | thou mayst be bound |
| you were being punished | he might be bound |
- (2) Give the perfect participle (R. 56) of :—
- | | | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------|---------|
| erudio, | finio, | custodio, | munio, | sepelio |
| punio, | nutrio; | erudio, | vincio, | impedio |

¹ Imitate the order of Rule 61.

- (3) the boy has been trained they might have been fortified
the girls have been trained the slave has been bound
we had been nourished the slaves had been guarded
you will have been nourished the slaves will have been guarded
the bodies have been buried he may have been punished
the town has been fortified they may have been punished

EXERCISE 76.

A. 1. Multi occisi sunt; corpora eorum sepeliuntur. 2. Urbs munitur fossa et vallo. 3. Socii convenerant ut Roma munitur. 4. O senex, tua verba audiantur! Puellae magna cura a patre eruditae erant. 5. Cives monet ut urbs muris altis muniatur. 6. Hostes, armis gravibus impediti, aegre in castra pervenerunt. 7. Galli, cum corpora occisorum sepulta essent, in suos vicos contenderunt. 8. Si captivi vincti erunt quis eos liberabit? 9. Decimo anno Troia, muris magnis munita, a Graecis capta est. 10. Scelera semper puniuntur.

B. 1. The war is ended (§ 69); let the soldiers hasten into their native land. 2. The soldiers will be punished if they guard the captives badly. 3. Let us take care that the city is fortified. 4. The bodies have been well nourished; the minds have been well trained. 5. The captives, bound with chains, were being led into the camp. 6. After the battle the bodies of the slain were buried with great honour. 7. All labours will be finished by death. 8. Take care that the laws are obeyed. 9. Let the bodies be buried in the wood. 10. When the war had been ended the leader hastened into Italy.

QUESTIONS.

72. In English a question can be indicated by the order of the words. Thus, *He has read the book* becomes a question when we say *Has he read the book?* This is never the case in Latin, because Latin words show their use by their **endings** and not by their position. As a rule, therefore, something must be done in Latin to show that a question is meant.

RULES FOR QUESTIONS.

73. If the question begins with an **interrogative word** it can be asked just as in English.

Who praises the man? **Quis** virum laudat?

The interrogative word *who* shows sufficiently that a question is meant

74. The commonest **interrogative words** are:—

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------|--------|
| (a) Adverbs | cūr | why? | ūbi | where? |
| | quandō | when? | quōmōdō | how? |
| (b) Pronoun | quis, neuter quid | who, (which), what? | | |

75. When there is **no interrogative word** a question is indicated by appending the particle¹ **-nē** to the **emphatic word** of the sentence. The word to which **-nē** is attached **must** always **stand first**.

Do you praise the man? **Tūnē** virum laudas?

Do you **praise** the man? **Laudasnē** virum?

Do you praise the **man**? **Virumnē** laudas?

76. If the sentence contains the word **not** and there is *no interrogative word*, **-nē** must be attached to **nōn** (*i.e.*, **nōnnē**), which **must stand first**.

¹ A syllable thus used is called an enclitic. (See § 10, p. 310.)

Do you **not** praise the man? **Nōnnē** virum laudas?
 But—**Why** do you **not** praise the man? **Cūr nōn** virum laudas?

77. A sentence like *Does a slave praise a cruel master?* is scarcely a question at all. It is really a very emphatic way of saying *Of course a slave does not praise a cruel master*, and the answer would be *Of course not!* Such a question is called a rhetorical question.

78. When a question does not expect an answer, but is merely an emphatic way of making a statement, **num** is placed at the beginning of the sentence instead of using **-nē**.

Does a slave praise a cruel master? **Num** servus dominum crudelem laudat?

CAUTION.—**Num**, **-nē**, and **nonnē** are never used if the sentence contains an interrogative word.

79. The following is a very common way of stating the meaning of **num**, **-nē** and **nonnē**:—

(a) **-nē** merely asks for information. The answer may be *yes* or *no*.

(b) **nonnē** expects the answer *yes*.

(c) **num** expects the answer *no*.

80. ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS.—In answer to questions *yes* = **etiam**; *no* = **nōn**, but as a rule the reply is given by repeating the phrase.

Is your father ill?	Aegrotatnē pater?
No.	Non, or non aegrotat.

EXERCISE 77.

(1) Turn into Latin:—

My brother is in the garden.	The horse is useful to men.
Is my brother in the garden?	Is not the horse useful to men?
Why is my brother in the garden?	When is the horse useful to men?
The slave fears his master.	Who sets the best example?
Does the slave fear his master?	Does he set a good example?
Does not the slave fear his master?	Why does he not set a good example?

A. 1. Amice, esne in horto? 2. Quando dux veniet? 3. Cur non frumentum pauperibus dant? 4. Contemnīsne leges Lycurgi? 5. Unde exercitus nomen habet? Nonne (est) *de exercendo* (from exercising)? 6. Quis fortior fuit quam Hannibal? Nonne Romanos multis proeliis superavit? 7. Num asinus equo celerior est? 8. Ubi est frater meus? 9. Audivistine militum clamores? 10. Quid patriae utilius est quam vir sapiens?

81. * * * CAUTION.—In English questions the verb often consists of two words and the subject stands between them. Care must be taken to find the subject by asking the question who or what before the verb, *e.g.*, Has the boy lost his books?

B. 1. Is it easy to labour in summer? 2. Who does not fear the anger of a cruel man? 3. Friends, why does our leader always despise our plans? 4. When does the farmer plough [his] fields? 5. Where did the Gauls dwell? 6. What do you see, my son (§ 16)? 7. Do not all boys love apples? 8. Did not Caesar overcome the Gauls? 9. Who has related the story of the war? 10. Is not the stag very swift?

EXERCISE 78.

Taurus gravis et cervus celer in uno campo cibum quaerebant. Subito leo venit.

'Cerve,' inquit taurus, "videsne leonem? **Quōmōdō** nos in tanto periculo servabimus? **Nōnne** impetum eius unā sustinebimus?"

Cervus autem respondit: "Hoc mihi non placet. **Cur** proelium non aequum cum leone committam? **Num** te primum leo *aggrēdiētur* (will attack)? Ego cursu me servabo."

82. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1st Person.

2nd Person.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	ĕgŏ	I	tŭ	thou
Acc.	mē	me	tē	thee
Gen.	mēī	of me	tŭī	of thee
Dat.	mīhī	to me	tībī	to thee
Abl.	mē	by me	tē	by thee

PLURAL.

Nom.	nōs	we	vōs	you
Acc.	nōs	us	vōs	you
Gen.	nostrī or nostrum ¹	of us	vestrī or vestrum ¹	of you
Dat.	nōbīs	to us	vōbīs	to you
Abl.	nōbīs	by us	vōbīs	by you

3rd Person.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	īs	he	ēā	she	īd	it
Acc.	ēum	him	ēam	her	īd	it
Gen.	ēiūs	of him	ēiūs	of her	ēiūs	of it
Dat.	ēī	to him	ēī	to her	ēī	to it
Abl.	ēō	by him	ēā	by her	ēō	by it

PLURAL.

Nom.	ēī (or ii)	they	ēae	they	ēā	they
Acc.	ēōs	them	ēās	them	ēā	them
Gen.	ēōrum	of them	ēārum	of them	ēōrum	of them
Dat.	ēīs (iis)	to them	ēīs (iis)	to them	ēīs (iis)	to them
Abl.	ēīs (iis)	by them	ēīs (iis)	by them	ēīs (iis)	by them

83. The reflexive pronoun has no nominative. Its declension is the same for all genders and for singular and plural.

{	Acc.	sē	himself, herself, itself, themselves.			
	Gen.	sŭī	of	"	"	"
	Dat.	sībi	to	"	"	"
	Abl.	sē	by	"	"	"

¹ See R. 24.

NOTES.—(1) The double form *sēsē* is used emphatically for *se* (accusative and ablative).

(2) The nominative is supplied by the adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, p. 122.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

84. Demonstrative pronouns, like almost all pronouns, have the gen. sing. in *-ius* and dat. sing. in *-i* for all genders.

1. *Hic, haec, hōc, this* (near me); plural, *these*.
2. *Is, eā, id, that* (just mentioned); plural, *those*.
3. *Illē, illā, illū, that* (yonder); plural, *those*.
4. *Istē, istā, istū, that* (near you); plural, *those*.

85. *Hic, this* (near me); plural, *these*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
Acc.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
Gen.	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
Abl.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

86. *Illē, that* (yonder); plural, *those*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>illē</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illū</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illā</i>
Acc.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illū</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illā</i>
Gen.	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
Abl.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

Istē, istā, istū, that (near you, or of yours), is declined like *illē*.

87. *Is, ea, id* is shown on p. 120.

Idem, eādem, idem, the same, is the word *is, eā, id* with the particle *-dem* affixed with certain contractions and modifications, e.g., *is-dem* is contracted to *īdem*, *id-dem* to *īdem*, and the cases of *is* ending in *-m* change *-m* to *-n*.

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	īdem	ēādem	īdem
Acc.	ēūndem	ēandem	īdem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
Dat.	ēīdem	ēīdem	ēīdem
Abl.	ēōdem	ēādem	ēōdem

PLURAL.			
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	īidem	ēādem	ēādem
Acc.	ēōsdem	ēasdem	ēādem
Gen.	ēōrundem	ēārundem	ēōrundem
Dat.	ēīsdem	ēīsdem	ēīsdem
Abl.	ēīsdem	ēīsdem	ēīsdem

88. Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, -self, plural -selves.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ipsē	ipsā	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
Gen.	ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

89. Quī, quae, quod, who, which, that.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quōd	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	cūiūs	cūiūs	cūiūs	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cūī	cūī	cūī	quībūs	quībūs	quībūs
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quībūs	quībūs	quībūs

NOTE.—The dative and ablative plural is sometimes contracted to **quīs**.

90. The interrogative pronoun *quīs? quīd? who? which? what?* only differs from the relative in the masculine and feminine nominative and the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	quīs	quīs	quīd	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quīd	quōs	quās	quae
Gen	cūiūs	cūiūs	cūiūs	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cūī	cūī	cūī	quībūs	quībūs	quībūs
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quībūs	quībūs	quībūs

For the interrogative adjective see R. 69, p. 129.

EXERCISE 79.

Learn, *hic, is, ille, iste*, pp. 120-1.

Viva voce—

1. Give nominative and accusative of the following:—

this stag	this tree	that plan
these stags	these trees	those plans
this battle	that bull	that tree
these battles	those bulls	those trees

Put into Latin:—

in that field	in those times	these gifts
of this king	by these plans	those gifts
to yonder boy	of these plans	these boys
of that region	this cause (acc.)	those girls

Rule 62.—*Iipse, ipsa, ipsum*, meaning *-self*, plural *-selves*, is an adjective, and it cannot¹ be used without some noun or pronoun to agree with.

91. The chief use of *ipse* is to translate the words *himself, herself, themselves* when these words are not pronouns, but adjectives used with

¹ An apparent exception to this is when *ipse* agrees with the unexpressed subject of a verb, e.g., *Ipse in Italiam festinabat*, where *ipse* agrees with *is*, the subject of *festinabat*.

nouns. Thus (a) *The king himself leads the army*: **himself**, merely emphasising *king*, is used with *king* as a kind of adjective. But in (b) *The king blames himself*, **himself** is now a pronoun translated by *se* (§ 83).

(a) The king **himself** leads the army. Rex **ipse** exercitum ducit.

(b) The king blames **himself**. Rex **se** culpatur.

91 (a). Another use of **ipse** is to translate words like *myself*, *ourselves*, etc., thus:—

I praise **myself** (= *me self*). Me **ipsum** laudo.
I give the best things to **myself** (= *to me self*). Mihi **ipsi** optima dō.

EXERCISE 80.

Learn *idem* and *ipse*.

Viva voce:—

- | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) the king himself | to the boy himself | you yourselves (nom.) |
| the queen herself | of the boy himself | you yourselves (acc.) |
| we ourselves | to you yourself | to yourselves |
| to ourselves | yourself (acc.) | to myself |

Put into Latin:—

- (2) the same leaders (acc.) in the same island to the same man
of the same town of the same island to the same woman
the same [things] the same danger to the same women
of the same [things] of the same danger of the same war

Put into Latin:—

- (3) 1. The boys *themselves*¹ give corn to the poor. 2. The men blame *themselves*²; the judge *himself*¹ accuses them. 3. Men do not give the same [things] to boys and to girls. 4. To these soldiers the king will say a few words. 5. On that day Cæsar gave corn to the soldiers.

Rule 63.—(a) The usual word for the demonstrative *that* is **is, ea, id**.

¹ What part of speech is this word? What does it agree with?

² What part of speech?

(b) *Ille, illa, illud* is much more emphatic than *is*, and means *that yonder*.

(c) *Iste, ista, istud* means *that near you*, and it is often used contemptuously.

(d) *Hic* means *this near me*, and it is contrasted with *ille*, meaning *that yonder*.

EXERCISE 81.

Rule 64.—When *ille* and *hic* are used correlatively *ille* means *that furthest away, i.e., the former*; *hic* means *that which is nearest, i.e., the latter* (see Ex. A, No. 3).

Viva voce :—

he will advise	we are defending	do not avoid
he was advising	we shall defend	had he avoided?
they may lead	he has remained	will he please?
he might lead	he had remained	he remained

A. 1. Claudius imperator clarissimus fuit; hunc rex mon-
ebat ut exercitum in Italiam duceret. 2. Haec utilia sunt
omnibus. 3. Romani cum Gallis strenue pugnabant; illi *pro*
(*for*) gloriā, hi *pro* salute. 4. In ea parte Galliae est flumen,
nomine Rhodanus. 5. Memores pristinae virtutis, nos ipsos *ab*
(*from*) avaritiā Romanorum defendimus. 6. In eisdem castris
multos dies manserat. 7. Eius pater mortuus erat; ipse mortem
fugā vitaverat. 8. Haec omnia oppida vobis nota sunt. 9. Non
sunt in eiusdem (R. 15) potestate initium et finis belli. 10.
Eodem tempore et in Italia et in Gallia Romani pugnabant.

B. 1. These seas are known to our sailors. 2. In that region
all [things] are pleasant to the minds of men. 3. The plan of
this [man] pleased the allies. 4. We do not all like the same
[things]. 5. To this general all [men] give praise. 6. After
this battle he sent the legions into the city; [he] himself re-
mained in the plain. 7. The wise never praise themselves.
8. The same cities are not pleasant in summer and in winter.

9. Allies, have we not the same cause of war? 10. Do not praise yourself, my son.

THE RELATIVE¹ PRONOUN AND THE RELATIVE CLAUSE.

92. The chief use of a **relative clause**, *i.e.*, a clause beginning with a relative pronoun, is to qualify some noun or pronoun in another clause.

Thus, *To the men who did this deed the king will give rewards* may be analysed thus:—

Principal clause. To the men the king will give rewards.

Relative clause. Who did this deed.

In this case the relative clause tells which men are referred to, and it is often called an **adjective clause**, because it does the work of an adjective (§ 332, p. 255).

93. The **relative pronoun**, like all other pronouns, always stands for some noun or pronoun called the **antecedent**.

In the sentence above *who* is the relative pronoun; *men* is the antecedent.

93 (a). The **relative pronoun**, like all other pronouns, **agrees** with the word it stands for in **gender, number and person**, *but it gets its case from its own clause*.

94. Every clause has its own verb, the subject and object of which are in that clause. Thus every relative pronoun will be either subject or object of the verb of the relative clause, or will be governed by a preposition in the relative clause, or will be genitive case.

This rule applies to all dependent clauses. **Every noun or pronoun in a dependent clause gets its case from its relation to some word in the same clause.**

95. The chief difficulty with regard to **case** is when the relative pronoun is the object of a verb.

The fire *which the soldier prepares* delights the leader. The verb of the relative clause is *prepares*: *who prepares?* answer, *the soldier*, which is clearly **nominative case**.

¹ Relative pronouns are sometimes called conjunctive pronouns (see § 342, p. 243, and § 432, p. 268).

When we say *prepares what?* the answer is *which*, standing for *fire*.¹ *Which* therefore is *masculine singular* because it stands for *fire*, and *accusative case* because it is the *object* of *prepares*. It is therefore translated by *quem*.

Rule 65.—The **Relative pronoun** always stands at the beginning² of its clause; the relative clause is frequently placed close to its antecedent (see, however, § 340, p. 243).

The fire **which** the soldier prepares delights the leader.

Ignis, quem miles parat, ducem delectat.

Rule 66.—To or for whom is dative case; of whom or whose is genitive case.

EXERCISE 82.

Viva voce:—

- (a) Pick out the relative pronoun and then the relative clause.
- (b) Find the antecedent and then say what is the number and gender of the relative pronoun.
- (c) Find the case of the relative pronoun and then say the relative pronoun for each sentence.

A. 1. The fires which the soldiers prepare delight the leader. 2. The soldiers prepare a fire which delights the leader. 3. The soldiers prepare fires which delight the leader. 4. The slave to whom he gives a sword fights bravely. 5. The slaves to whom he gives swords fight bravely. 6. He praises the slave by (R. 13) whom his life has been preserved. 7. He praises the slaves by whom his life has been preserved. 8. The soldiers prepare a fire the light of which³ shows the camp to the enemy. 9. The soldiers prepare fires the light of which shows the camp to the enemy. 10. To the girl whose father fights bravely the state

¹ It must be remembered that the object of a verb must be in the same clause as the verb.

² If governed by a preposition it will usually be preceded by the preposition (see Ex. 83 A, 4).

³ Remember that the relative pronoun must stand at the head of its clause (R. 65).

gives food. 11. The man has many daughters whose names are known to us. 12. The girls whom you praise delight the queen by [their] voice.

B. Translate the above into Latin.

EXERCISE 83.

Rule 67.—When *that*, plural *those*, is the antecedent of a relative pronoun use **is, ea, id**, not *ille* (R. 63, p. 124).

Rule 68.—In translating a Latin sentence containing a relative clause always begin with the principal clause (§ 92).

A. 1. Civitates, quas vicerat, hic consul Romanis adiunxit. 2. Civitatem, quae bellum gerebat, Caesar vicit. 3. Consul cui exercitus datus est, in Gallia mansit. 4. Domos in quibus nos habitamus, servi aedificaverunt. 5. Flores qui vos delectant, mihi non placent. 6. Tres erant sorores quarum pater erat pastor. 7. Aurum quod eis rex dederat in templum portatum erat. 8. Eos qui semper legibus parent omnes laudant. 9. Roma habet nomen *a* (*from*) Romulo qui deae filius erat. 10. Omnia, quae hostes ceperant, in castra portabantur.

B. 1. The soldier whom the leader praises will fight well. 2. He built a city which he called Rome.¹ 3. The city whose name is Rome is situated *on* (*in*) seven hills. 4. The winds which held our ships in the harbour destroyed the fleet of the enemy. 5. Troy, which the Greeks destroyed, was a city of Asia. 6. The women to whom you gave garments are very poor. 7. The Gauls fear the camp which Caesar has fortified. 8. Those whom you praise will praise you. 9. They destroyed the cottage in which he used-to-dwell (R. 31). 10. The flowers whose odour delights you will please (R. 41) your mother.

96. Interrogative pronouns are used to ask questions

Who has done these things? **Quis** haec fecit?

¹ Rome is clearly in *apposition* (§ 266, p. 224) to *which*, and it will therefore be in the same case.

Rule 69.—The words *which* and *what* can be used as **pronouns** or as **adjectives** with nouns. The **interrogative pronoun** is **quis, quae, quid** (§ 90).

The **interrogative adjective** is **qui, quae, quod**, and it is declined exactly like the relative pronoun.

What (*pronoun*) has he done? **Quid** fecit?

What (*adjective*) danger terrifies you? **Quod** periculum vos terret?

Similarly **what** king? = **qui** rex.

97. The word **what** can be used as an **interrogative pronoun**, *e.g.*, **what** do you say? or an **interrogative adjective**, *e.g.*, **what** noise did you hear? It can also be used as a **relative pronoun**, when it can be changed into *that which*.

Give me **what** (=that which) you have found. Mihi da id quod repperisti.

Rule 70.—When *what* = *that which* it is translated by *id quod*.¹

Note that, when *id* and *quod* are both the same case, *id* is commonly omitted in Latin.

EXERCISE 84.

Learn §§ 90, 96, 97, and Rules 69, 70.

Viva voce :—

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| (1) who ploughs? | what does he say? |
| what farmer ploughs? | what words does he say? |
| who reigns? | what state has he conquered? |
| what queen reigns? | what gift? |
| what reward? | |
| what delights you? | |
| to whom does he give money? | |
| whose son is he? | |

¹ Sometimes by the plural, *those things which* = *ea quae*. It should be noticed that in *id quod* and *ea quae*, *quod* and *quae* are relatives.

(2) 1. He does not fear what terrifies you. 2. What pleases me delights my brother. 3. Prepare what he desires. 4. Who does not praise what he has thought? 5. What he gives to you will not please me. 6. What he announces frightens the consuls.

A. 1. Quis Gallos vicit? 2. Qui iudex bonos castigat? 3. Quem hi flores non delectant? 4. Cuius filius erat Romulus? 5. Quod bellum vestros fines vastavit? 6. Quae castra Cæsar munivit? 7. Haec omnia, quid significant? 8. Quae * bella Caesar gessit, ea narrabo. 9. Beneficia quae parentibus debetis maxima sunt. 10. Ducem, qui eos nimis coercet, milites non amant.

98. * * NOTE.—The relative pronoun is sometimes joined to a noun or the principal clause like an adjective. It then stands first, as in sentence 8. In translating sentences like this remember R. 68.

B. 1. To whom shall we give rewards? 2. What do you say, friends? 3. What deeds shall I narrate? 4. What traitor has shown the camp to the enemy? 5. I will give you what pleases you. 6. The slave was ploughing the fields which the soldiers had laid waste. 7. Whom shall we obey (R. 41) in these dangers? 8. They are giving to the leader the booty which the soldiers have taken. 9. What the slave relates frightens the consul. 10. The consul was sent *against* (*adversus*) the Gauls who had come into Italy.

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -IUS.

99. A certain number of adjectives—most of which can be used as pronouns—have the genitive singular in -ius and the dative singular in -i for all genders. In other cases they follow the usual declension of adjectives, being like *bonus* or *niger* or *tener*. The chief words of this class are :—

ūnūs, ūnā, ūnum	one
nullūs, nullā, nullum	no, none
sōlūs, sōlā, sōlum	alone
tōtūs, tōtā, tōtum	whole
ullūs, ullā, ullum	any
ūtēr, utrā, utrum	each (of two)?
neutēr, neutrā, neutrum	neither
altēr, altērā, altērū	the one (of two), the other
āliūs, āliā, āliud	other (§ 106, p. 133)

100. Ūnūs, one.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ūn-ūs	ūn-ā	ūn-um	ūn-ī	ūn-ae	ūn-ā
Acc.	ūn-um	ūn-am	ūn-um	ūn-ōs	ūn-ās	ūn-ā
Gen.	ūn-īūs	ūn-īūs	ūn-īūs	ūn-ōrum	ūn-ārum	ūn-ōrum
Dat.	ūn-ī	ūn-ī	ūn-ī	ūn-īs	ūn-īs	ūn-īs
Abl.	ūn-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō	ūn-īs	ūn-īs	ūn-īs

101. Neutēr, neither.

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	neuter	neutr-ă	neutr-um
Acc.	neutr-um	neutr-am	neutr-um
Gen.	neutr-ius	neutr-ius	neutr-ius
Dat.	neutr-ī	neutr-ī	neutr-ī
Abl.	neutr-ō	neutr-ă	neutr-ō

Alter is like neuter, but it keeps the *e*; Gen. altēr-īus, Dat. altēr-ī.

¹ Nullus is an adjective; the pronoun *no one* is nēmo, which is thus declined:—

Nom. Nēmo, Acc. nēmīnem, Gen. nullīus, Dat. nēmīnī, Abl. nullō.

This is sometimes put in a rhyme:—

From nēmo let me never say
Nēmīnis and nēmīnē.

102. *Ālīūs, ālīā, ālīud, other.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ali-ūs	ali-ā	ali-ud	ali-ī	ali-ae	ali-ā
Acc.	ali-um	ali-am	ali-ud	ali-ōs	ali-ās	ali-ā
Gen.	ālīus ¹	ālīus	ālīūs	ali-ōrum	ali-ārum	ali-ōrum
Dat.	ali-ī	ali-ī	ali-ī	ali-īs	ali-īs	ali-īs
Abl.	ali-ō	ali-ā	ali-ō	ali-īs	ali-īs	ali-īs

103. NOTES.—1. **Unus**, besides meaning *one*, also means *alone*.

To Claudius **alone** Claudio **uni**
The Gauls **alone** Galli **uni**

2. **Unus** can be used in the plural when it means *alone*, and also when it is used with nouns which have a special meaning in the plural.

One camp² **Una castra**

3. **Ullus** can only be used in negative sentences and in comparative sentences.

104. Certain words in Latin can only be used when **two** things are referred to. Such are *alter* and *uter*. Thus, **which of his eyes** = *uter oculorum*, because a man has only two eyes. Similarly **one of the consuls** = *alter consul*, because there were only two consuls at the same time.

105. Correlative words are used in pairs, *e.g.*, the **one . . . the other**, **some . . . others**. In Latin as a rule the same word is used to translate both words of the English pair. Thus, the **one . . . the other**, *alter . . . alter*.

Thus **alter** means both *the one* and *the other*.

¹ The *ī* of the genitive singular is long because it is a contraction (see § 1 (e), p. 308).

² The singular *castrum* means a *fort*; thus *castrum* changes its meaning in the plural.

106. *Altēr* and *ālūs* used correlatively. When only two persons or things are referred to (§ 104) use *alter*, not *ālūs*. When more than two are referred to use *ālūs*.

The man has two sons; to *one* he gives money, to the *other* land. *Duos filios vir habet; alteri pecuniam, alteri agrum dat.*
To *one* he gives a sword, to *another* a spear, to *another* a shield. *Alii gladium, ālii hastam, ālii scutum dat.*

Some . . . others is translated by the plural of *alius*. *ālī . . . ālī*, etc.

The leader praises *some* of the soldiers, he blames *others*. *Alios militum dux laudat, alios culpat.*

107. Another use of *alius* should be noticed. When the word *ālūs* occurs twice, not in the same case, each word of the sentence is translated twice. Thus:—

Alii alia dicunt. Some men say some things, others say other things.

Rule 71.—When *one* means merely one in number and does not refer to one of a pair or of a set it is translated by *ūnus*.

EXERCISE 85.

Viva voce:—

he was conquering	will he not relate?	he created
they conquered	I shall relate	they might restrain
he has drawn up	we have read	he might restrain
they have drawn up	you will read	having (partic.)

A. 1. *Unam filiam vir habet.* 2. *Unius viri prudentiā Graecia liberata est.* 3. *Nulli mors turpis est iucunda.* 4. *Omnium sororum Claudia sola patrem laudat.* 5. *Roma maior erat quam ulla urbs Graeciae.* 6. *Exercitus neutrius ducis magnus erat.* 7. *Utri consulum Romani exercitum dābunt?* 8. *Non omnes labores Herculis narrabo; alios lēgistis, alios*

mox lēgētis. 9. Neutri fratrum est causa belli nota. 10. Eis temporibus nulla civitas potentior erat. 11. A nullo hic miles laudatur. 12. Caesar Galliam et alias civitates vicit. 13. Ad alteram¹ ripam² fluminis hostes copias instruxerunt. 14. Viri *super (over)* alium alius *praecipitantur (throw themselves)*. 15. Romani duos consules creaverunt *ut, si unus malus esset, alter eum, habens potestatem similem, coerceret.*

* * NOTES ON SENTENCE 15. 1.—The clause in italics is a clause denoting purpose (§ 385, p. 255).

2. The clause *si . . . esset* is a clause of condition. *Si* sometimes takes the subjunctive (see § 412, p. 263).

3. What part of the verb is *habens*? What word does it agree with? (R. 47.)

B. 1. He sent one legion to the other bank of the river. 2. Some of the states he terrifies, others he advises. 3. Gaul was more powerful than any state in (say of) Britain. 4. Some boys like books, others [like] games. 5. Which of his [two] daughters do you blame? 6. To which of the [two] leaders do you give the greatest praise? 7. Is [there] not another cause of this war? 8. Hercules was more famous than any of the ancients. 9. The man has many shields; some are silver, others are golden. 10. The Gauls had now no hope of safety. 11. We are the slaves of no man, [we are] subject to no-one.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

108. Cardinal numerals tell **how many**, e.g., *one, three, a hundred*. **Ordinal** numerals tell **in what order**, as *first, third, hundredth*.

¹ Why *alteram* (§ 106)? How many banks has a river?

² This is accusative because motion towards is implied. They marched there first, etc.

1	ūnūs, -a, -um	11	un-dēcim
2	dūō, -ae, -o	12	dūō-dēcim
3	trēs, triā	13	trē-dēcim
4	quattuōr	14	quattuōr-dēcim
5	quinqūē	15	quin-dēcim
6	sex	16	sē-dēcim
7	septem	17	septem-dēcim
8	octō	18	duō-dē-vigintī
9	nōvem	19	un-dē-vigintī
10	dēcem	20	vīgintī

20	vīgintī	200	dū-centī, -ae, -ā
30	tri-gintā	300	trē-centī, -ae, -ā
40	quadrā-gintā	400	quadrin-gentī, -ae, -ā
50	quinqūā-gintā	500	quin-gentī, -ae, -ā
60	sexā-gintā	600	ses-centī, -ae, -ā
70	septuā-gintā	700	septin-gentī, -ae, -ā
80	octō-gintā	800	octin-gentī, -ae, -ā
90	nōnā-gintā	900	nōn-gentī, -ae, -ā
100	centum	1000	millē (plural milia)

109. Declension of cardinal numerals. *Unus, duo* and *trēs* are declined; also the hundreds *dūcenti, trēcenti*, etc., and the plural *milia* (thousands). All others are indeclinable. Thus seven men, **septem viri**, *acc.*, **septem viros**.

(1) The declension of **unus** is given on p. 131.

(2) **Duo** and **tres** are thus declined:—

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
Nom.	dū-ō	dū-ae	dū-ō	trēs	triā
Acc.	dū-ōs	dū-ās	dū-ō	trēs	triā
Gen.	dū-ōrum	dū-ārum	dū-ōrum	triūm	triūm
Dat.	dū-ōbūs	dū-ābūs	dū-ōbūs	tribūs	tribūs
Abl.	dū-ōbūs	dū-ābūs	dū-ōbūs	tribūs	tribūs

Ambo, ambae, ambo, *both*, is declined like **duo**.

(3) The *hundreds, ducenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bōnus, -a, -um*.

two hundred women *ducentae feminae*; *acc.*, **ducentas feminas**

(4) **Mille** in the singular is an indeclinable **adjective**. Thus **mille viri, mille viros, mille feminae**, etc.

The plural **mīliā**, *thousands*, is a **noun** declined like the plural **māriā**. Thus:—

Nom. and Acc. **mīliā**, Gen. **mīlium**, Dat. and Abl. **mīlibūs**.

110. Construction of **mīliā**. The plural **mīliā** governs the genitive case.

one thousand **Gauls** mille **Galli**
two thousand **Gauls** duo milia **Gallorum**

111. The formation of intermediate numbers. Instead of eighteen Latin says *two-from (= de)-twenty*, **dūōdēvigintī**. Similarly *nineteen* is *one-from-twenty*, **undēvigintī**. So also for each number in 8 and 9.

38 = **duodēquadrāgintā** 68 = **dūōdēseptūāgintā**

39 = **undēquadrāgintā** 69 = **undēseptūāgintā**

112. Other numbers are thus formed:—

21 **ūnūs et vigintī** or **vigintī ūnūs**¹

22 **dūō et vigintī** or **vigintī dūō**

33 **trēs et trigintā** or **trigintā trēs**, etc.

113. Examples of numbers above a hundred:—

101 **centum (et) ūnus**

102 **centum duo**

140 **centum quadrāgintā**

154 **centum quinquāgintā quattuor**

1001 **mille unus**

2000 **duo mīlia**

EXERCISE 86.

Viva voce. Give the Latin for:—

(1)	7	300	18	15	3	400
	9	70	16	40	600	10
	11	14	500	90	60	200
	20	12	19	13	8	50

¹ When an indeclinable numeral has with it *unus, duo* or *tres* (§ 109), the declinable word agrees in gender and case with the noun: thus *vigintī unūs viri; vigintī unam feminas*.

quinque milia captivorum vendiderunt. 8. Hannibal in Italiam duxit octoginta milia peditum, viginti milia equitum, septem et triginta elephantos. 9. Post hoc proelium Graeci classem septuaginta navium Miltiadi dederunt. 10. Victor triginta et unam naves cepit, quattuordecim *mersit* (*sank*), septem milia hostium cepit, tria milia occidit.

B. 1. In this sea are three islands. 2. The names of the two sons are known to you. 3. He sent the boy with (R. 72) [his] two sisters into Italy. 4. He was king [for] twelve years (R. 14 (b)). 5. They sent three hundred ships to the king of the island. 6. For twenty-eight days we remained in the ships. 7. In that battle he captured eight thousand foot-soldiers. 8. The victor had an army of eight hundred men. 9. The slaves had captured the Greek together-with three friends. 10. For twenty years they waged war with the same enemy (plural).

114. The **ordinals** are all declined like *bonus*. In compound numbers both parts are declined; *septimus dēcimus*, *septīma dēcima*, etc.

114 (a). *Alter* (§ 106) is used instead of *secundus* where only two things are spoken of. Similarly *prior* (§ 44) = *the former* is used instead of *primus*.

For distributives see p. 239.

115. The ordinals of the thousands are formed by prefixing to *millēsīmūs* the adverbs *bīs* (twice), *tēr* (three times), *quātēr* (four times), etc.; *dēciēs* (ten times), *centiēs* (a hundred times), etc. Thus the twentieth thousand = *viciēs millēsīmus*, where *viciēs* is an adverb and therefore undeclined.

EXERCISE 88.

Rule 73.—When a noun qualified by an adjective has a genitive depending on it, the **genitive** is frequently placed **between the noun and adjective**.

In the third year of his reign Anno regni tertio

Viva voce :—

the 10th month	the 21st book	the 9th ship (acc.)
of the 10th month	the 100th year	on the 9th day
the 12th legion (acc.)	of the 100th year	the 38th year of his reign
to the 12th legion	the 15th house	of the 6th legion

A. 1. Primus rex Rōmānōrum fuit Rōmūlus; septimū (fuit) Tarquinius. ✕ 2. Decimo mensis die exercitus in Siciliam per-
venit. ✕ 3. Duas filias habebat, quarum priorem Claudio, alteram
Balbo in matrimonium dedit. 4. In libro vicesimo primo scriptor
bellum Punicum secundum narrat. 5. Post diem alterum et
vicesimum in insulam venit. ✕ 6. Legionem sextam, quae in
Gallia conscripta erat, in Italiam Caesar misit. 7. Anno belli
undecimo duae civitates pacem desiderabant. 8. Pueri *usque*
ad (*up to*) quintum decimum aetatis annum in Italia *vixerunt*.
9 ✕ Magna pars undevicesimae legionis occisi sunt. 10. Tri-
gesimo octavo imperii anno hic rex occisus est.

B. 1. Priscus was the fifth king of Rome. 2. The leader
will give the eighth part of the booty to the soldiers. 3. In
(R. 14 (*b*)) the twentieth year of [his] reign he conquered the
Gauls. 4 ✕ Caesar will send the twelfth legion into Italy. 5. In
the ninth book the writer narrates the labours of Hercules. 6. In
the sixteenth legion were very brave leaders. 7. In the thirtieth
year of the war the enemy captured this island. ✕ 8. The leader
of the eleventh legion blames the soldiers of the fourth [legion].
9 ✕ Romulus built Rome in the 394th year *after* (*post* with acc.)
the *destruction* (*excidium*) of Troy. 10. In the fifth year of the
Punic war they fought on (= in) the sea.

EXERCISE 89.

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME.

1. Rōmūlus fuit Rōmae primus rex. Civitatem condidit quam
ex (*from*) nomine suo Romam vocavit. Centum ex senioribus
elegit quorum consilio omnia egit, quos senatores nominavit.

propter senectutem. Anno regni tricesimo septimo *mortuus est* (*he died*).

2. Postea Nūmā Pompilius rex creatus est qui bellum quidem nullum gessit sed non minus civitati *quam* (*than*) Rōmulus profuit. Morbo decessit quadragesimo tertio imperii anno.

3. Huic successit Tullius Hostilius. Hic Albānos vicit, qui *ab* (*from*) urbe Rōmā duodecimo miliario sunt.

4. Post hunc Ancus Martius, Nūmae nepos, imperium *suscepit* (*took up*). *Apud* (*at, near*) ostium Tibēris civitatem condidit. Vicesimo quarto anno imperii *periit* (*he perished*).

5. Deinde regnum Tarquinius Priscus accepit. Hic numerum senatorum duplicavit. Vicit idem (R. 15) etiam Sābinos. Tricesimo octavo imperii anno *per* (*through*) Anci filios occisus est.

6. Post hunc Servius Tullius imperium suscepit. Hic quoque Sābinos subegit; montes tres, Quirīnalem,¹ Vimīnalem,¹ Esquīlinum¹ urbi adiunxit. Occisus est quadragesimo quinto imperii anno, scelere generi Tarquīnii.²

7. Lūcius Tarquinius Sūperbus septimus atque ultimus regum fuit. Cum Tuscis pacem fecit et templum Iōvi in Cāpitōlio¹ aedificavit. Ille, homo improbissimus, cum annos viginti quinque imperavisset, cum uxore et liberis suis fugit.

8. Ita *Romae* (*at Rome*) regnatum est (§ 256) *per* (*by*) septem reges annis³ ducentis quadraginta tribus.³

¹ Names of hills, usually called in English the Quirinal, Viminal, Esquiline, Capitoline.

² This Tarquinius was the successor of Servius Tullius.

³ This denotes not merely *how long*, but the time within which something was done. It is ablative (§ 441).

THE VERB CĀPIO.

116. A few verbs of the 3rd conjugation differ from *rēgo* by inserting *i* after the stem consonant:—

- (a) In the 1st person singular and 3rd plural of the present indicative.
 (b) In all the persons of the imperfect and future indicative and the present subjunctive.
 (c) In the present participle and gerund and gerundive.

~~C~~āpio, cāpĕrĕ, cēpī, cāptum, to take, to capture.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.		
	INDIC.	SUBJUNC.	INDIC.	SUBJUNC.
Present.	căp-io	căp-iam	căp-ior	căp-iar
	căp-is	căp-iās	căp-eris	căp-iāris
	căp-ît	căp-iăt	căp-itur	căp-iātur
	căp-îmūs	căp-iāmūs	căp-īmur	căp-iāmur
	căp-îtis	căp-iătis	căp-îmini	căp-iāmini
	căp-iunt	căp-iant	căp-iuntur	căp-iantur
Imperfect.	căp-iēbam	căp-ērem	căp-iēbar	căp-ērer
	căp-iēbās	căp-ērēs	căp-iēbāris	căp-ērēris
	căp-iēbăt	căp-ērēt	căp-iēbātur	căp-ērētur
	căp-iēbāmūs	căp-ērēmūs	căp-iēbāmur	căp-ērēmur
	căp-iēbātis	căp-ērētis	căp-iēbāmini	căp-ērēmini
	căp-iēbant	căp-ērent	căp-iēbantur	căp-ērentur
Future.	căp-iam		căp-iar	
	căp-iēs		căp-iēris	
	căp-iēt		căp-iētur	
	căp-iēmūs		căp-iēmur	
	căp-iētis		căp-iēmini	
	căp-ient		căp-ientur	
Perf.	cēp-i, etc.	cēp-ērim	captus sum	captus sim
Pluperf.	cēp-eram, etc.	cēp-issem	captus eram	captus essem
Fut. Perf.	cēp-ero, etc.		captus ero	

IMPERATIVE.	
cāpĕ	cāpĕrĕ, cāpĭtor
cāpĭtĕ	cāpĭtor
cāpĭto	cāpĭmini
cāpĭtōte	cāpĭuntor
cāpĭunto	

INFINITIVE.	
cāpĕrĕ	cāpĭ
GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.
cāpiendi	cāpiendus
PRES. PART.	PASS. PART.
cāpiens	captus

EXERCISE 90.

Viva voce :—

(1) They make	he flees	do you desire?
he will make	he may flee	will they desire?
we may make	he might flee	desiring (partic.)
he has made	he had fled	I had desired
do not make	he will flee	he may have desired
you were making	to have fled	they will have desired

A. 1. Ego et tu eadem semper cupivimus. 2. Nonne historiam laborum Herculis audire cupis? 3. Tarquinius cum uxore et liberis suis fugiebat. 4. Faciamus impetum *in* (on) hostes. 5. Suos (R. 15) monebat ut castra in eo loco facerent. 6. Ligna paramus ut ignes faciamus. 7. Milites, ab hostibus superati, gladios in flumen iaciunt. 8. Capite ea quae cupitis. 9. Barbari, scuta *super* (over) capita quatientes, impetum fecerant. 10. Post id bellum Romani cum barbaris societatem fecerant.

B. 1. The slaves took [up] arms that they might defend their country (= native land). 2. Let us make an alliance with the Gauls. 3. If you flee (R. 40), citizens, who will defend your city? 4. At night the soldiers will make many fires. 5. He had thrown the spear *at* (*in* with acc.) the horse. 6. While you are fleeing we are taking [up] arms. 7. We have taken the camp, the enemy has fled. 8. Have I not (§ 76) given you what (R. 70) you desired? 9. Flee, allies, the enemy has captured our city. 10. Some (§ 106) desire wealth, others glory.

117. Latin is more particular than English in expressing the exact shade of meaning in the verb by prefixing prepositions; thus by prefixing the prepositions *dē*, *down*; *sub*, *under*; *sūper*, *over*, we get:—

iācio ¹	to throw
dē-īcio ¹	to throw down
sub-īcio	to throw under
sūper-īcio	to throw over

118. When a verb compounded with a preposition is used, the preposition is usually repeated before its noun *when the sense requires it*.

The women threw tiles **down-from** Feminae **de** tectis domorum
the roofs of the houses. imbrīces² **de**-iēcerunt.

119. NOTE.—In verbs compounded with prepositions a short *ā* is changed to *ē* or *ī*. The long *ē* of the perfect stem remains unchanged.

cāpio	cāpĕre	cēpi	captum.
ac-cāpio	ac-cāpĕre	ac-cēpi	ac-ceptum

EXERCISE 91.

Viva voce :—

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) he is being killed | they might be received |
| they will be killed | it may be plundered |
| thou wilt be killed | they are being hurled |
| it was being received | they are being plundered |

- (2) Give the past participle of :—

accipio	diripio	conicio
suscipio	deicio	interficio

- (3) the weapon has been hurled the children were killed
the weapons have been hurled the women were killed
the spear had been hurled the city has been plundered
the spears had been hurled the city will have been plundered

¹ When prepositions are prefixed to *iācio* (= *jācio*), the short *ā* is changed to *ī* (*de-īcio*) and very often the consonantal *i* (= *j*) is omitted.

² *Imbrex*, *-īcis* (fem.), a hollow tile, so called because it received and carried off the rain (*imber* = *shower*).

A. 1. Urbem captam (R. 58) milites diripiebant. 2. Captivi in templum Iovis se coniecerant. 3. Accepimus epistolam longam a (from) matre nostra. 4. Caesar bellum, quod susceperat, feliciter gessit. 5. Elephanti quattuor capti sunt; reliqui omnes, numero quadraginta, interfecti sunt. 6. Urbs capta est cum ingenti praeda. 7. Dum per (through) fines Gallorum iter faciebant, Caesar castra hostium diripere statuit. 8. Servus miserrimus in catenas conicietur. 9. Duobus locis castra facta erant. 10. Dux Helvetios monuit ut societatem cum Gallis facerent.

B. 1. The boy has received much (R. 22) money from (a) his father. 2. The city is being plundered; the citizens are being killed. 3. The king has undertaken the war that he may please (R. 41) his allies. 4. Daily the soldiers were receiving wounds. 5. Do not throw stones down-from the bridge into the river. 6. We shall all be killed if our leader is captured (R. 40). 7. The slaves, fleeing into the wood, were easily killed by the soldiers. 8. Let us flee, lest we be killed by the foot-soldiers. 9. When (R. 61) the town had been plundered the leader gave all the captured [things] to the soldiers. 10. Fires had not been made lest the enemy should see the camp.

THE GERUND OR VERBAL NOUN.

120. The English **verbal noun** or **gerund** is derived from a verb and ends in **-ing**, e.g., *writing*, *singing*. The English verbal noun is always used either as **subject** or **object** of a **verb** or **object** of a **preposition**. Thus:—

Singing is a useful exercise	<i>Subject</i> of a verb.
He likes singing	<i>Object</i> of a verb.
He spends his time in singing	<i>Object</i> of a preposition.

121. **CAUTION.**—The English present participle also ends in **-ing**. The **present participle**, however, is always an **adjective**, while the **gerund** is a **noun**.

- (a) The boy, **waiting** (pres. part.) at the door, easily amused himself.
- (b) The boy did not dislike **waiting** (gerund).

THE LATIN GERUND.

122. The gerund is obtained from the present stem of the verb. Thus:—

1. am-o,	genitive case of gerund	am-andi
2. mŭn-eo	" "	mŭn-endi
3. {rĕg-o } {cāpi-o }	" "	{rĕg-endi {cāpi-endi
4. audī-o	" "	audī-endi

123. The declension of the gerunds is shown on p. 71. It will be seen that there is no nominative case. When the English gerund is the **subject** or **object** of a **verb** it is translated by the Latin infinitive.

He likes reading (or to read). Lĕgĕre amat.

124. The accusative of the gerund is only used after prepositions, and mostly after **ad**.

He is prepared for fighting. Paratus est **ad pugnandum**.

125. This use of the preposition **ad** deserves notice. **Ad** means to or towards, implying **motion towards**. If we say *He has made preparations towards fighting*, we see that *towards fighting* or *for fighting* really denotes **purpose**. When *for* means *towards* in the sense of purpose—we say in English I am saving money *for* or *towards* a holiday—it is translated by the Latin **ad**.

EXERCISE 92.

Viva voce :—

(1) Give the genitive and ablative of the gerund of the following verbs:—

pugno	plāceo	mŭrio	vinco	exerceo
culpo	dīco	vĕnio	dirīpio	descendo
flec	lĕgo	curro	fŭgio	āro

A. 1. Hi pueri currando exercentur. 2. In respondendo multa sapienter dixit. 3. O cives, hostes signum invadendi dederunt; faciamus nullam moram pugnandi. 4. Militibus, pugnando fessis, quies data est. 5. Neptunus artem navigandi Graecos docuerat. 6. Dicendo sapienter rex queris facile persuasit ut voluptatē in discendo ponerent. 7. Id proelium

Claudio fuit causa festinandi ad Rhodanum. 8. Solum non est aptum ad arandum. 9. O pueri, colite artem bene dicendi. 10. Faciamus finem monendi. 11. In urbem contendebant diripiendi causâ.

* * Before translating parse all words ending in -ing.

B. 1. The art of ploughing is useful to men. 2. The farmer has prepared everything (= all things (R. 15)) for ploughing. 3. Does not the soldier place his pleasure in fighting? 4. By replying wisely you will please the judge. 5. What is more useful than the sense of hearing? 6. The ground is not suitable for fighting. 7. You will not conquer the enemy by fighting *at a distance* (*ēminus*¹). 8. We are prepared for conquering, not for yielding. 9. At the same time the two leaders gave the signal for (= of) running.

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

126. When a **statement**, e.g., *The boy is writing a letter*, is made the **object** of a verb, it is called a **reported statement** or **reported speech**.

Direct statement. **The boy is writing a letter.**

Reported statement. **He says that the boy is writing a letter.**

If we analysed the last sentence we should find that *He says* is the **principal clause**; *that the boy is writing a letter* is a **noun clause**, because it is the object of the verb *says*.

127. In English the commonest way of making a **reported statement** is to use a noun clause beginning with the conjunctive **that**.

128. In Latin the **verb** of a **reported statement** is always put in the **infinitive**, and the noun or pronoun which is the subject of the infinitive is put in the **accusative case**.

¹ Derived from *ex* and *mānus*, i.e., where the weapon has to be thrown out of the hand; the opposite in *comminus* = hand to hand (from *cum* and *mānus*).

Thus, before translating, we turn

He says that the boy is writing a letter
into *He says the boy to be writing*¹ a letter.
*Dicit puerum epistolam scribere.*¹

This construction is called the **accusative and infinitive**.

Rule 74.—After verbs meaning *say, tell, relate; hear, see, know, think, etc.*, a **reported statement** is translated by the **accusative and infinitive**.

He says **that the boy is writing** *Dicit puerum epistolam*
a letter. **scribere.**

129. **CARETION.**—Notice that the conjunction *that* (§ 136) in a reported statement is omitted in Latin; the verb is made infinitive and its subject becomes accusative.

130. **THE TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE.**—Properly speaking the infinitive has no tense-meaning. It gets its tense from the **principal verb**. This will be seen by turning two sentences in English:—

- (a) He **says** *that the boy is writing a letter.*
- (b) He **said** *that the boy was writing a letter.*

These become—

- (a) He **says** the boy **to be writing** a letter.
- (b) He **said** the boy **to be writing** a letter.

In Latin—

- (a) *Dicit puerum epistolam scribere.*
- (b) *Dixit puerum epistolam scribere.*

Similarly the **perfect infinitive** has two meanings depending on the **principal verb**:—

- (a) He **says** *that the boy wrote a letter yesterday.*
- (b) He **said** *that the boy had written a letter yesterday.*

These become—

- (a) He **says** the boy **to have written** a letter yesterday.
- (b) He **said** the boy **to have written** a letter yesterday.

In Latin—

- (a) *Dicit puerum epistolam heri scripsisse.*
- (b) *Dixit puerum epistolam heri scripsisse.*

¹ Just as *he writes* or *he is writing* are both translated by *scribit*, so the infinitive *scribere* means *to write* or *to be writing*.

EXERCISE 93. /

Rule 75.—The perfect infinitive is got from the perfect stem by adding -isse. Thus, amav-isse, monu-isse, etc.

Viva voce. Give the present and perfect infinitives of:—

(1) āro	sto	vēnio	dēfendō	accīpio
regno	fleo	fācio	pāreo	aedifico
dūco	tīmeo	vinco	māneo	dirīpio

* * In the following sentences say which is the principal clause and which is the reported statement. Turn each sentence in English as in § 130, and translate into Latin.

As each sentence is translated underline the infinitive and the accusative going with it. In what case is that accusative in the English?

- A. 1. He says that the farmer is ploughing the land.
2. He said that the farmer was ploughing the land.
3. We know that the leader has come into the city.
- 2 4. We knew that the leader had come into the city.
5. He thinks that the girl has remained in the city.
- 3 6. He thinks that the girl is remaining in the city.
- 4 7. He replied that Caesar conquered the Gauls.
8. He replies that Caesar conquered the Gauls.
9. They think that the Gauls fought bravely.
- 5 10. They thought that the Gauls had fought bravely.
11. He knows that the boys obey [their] parents.
12. He knows that the boys always obeyed [their] parents.
- 6 13. He reports that the enemy are descending into the plain.
14. He hears that the enemy plundered the city.
15. They think that the Gauls are plundering the city.
16. He says that the Gauls have captured the city; that the women are weeping.

131. It has already been pointed out that the verb *to be* is merely a coupling verb, i.e., the copula (§ 20 (c)). Since the verb *to be* joins words meaning the same thing, the two words joined are in the same case, and in the accusative and infinitive construction both are accusative (R. 51).

(a) He says that *Claudius* is the brother of *Balbus*.

Dicit *Claudium esse* Balbi fratrem.

(b) He says that the king **was** rich.

Dicit regem **fuisse** divitem.

132. THE USE OF "SE" AND "SUUS".—The rule for the use of *se* and *suus* given in Rule 28 must now be slightly modified.

RULE.—In the **accusative and infinitive**, *i.e.*, reported statement, **se** and **suus** can only be used when the words they translate stand for the **subject of the principal clause**.

(a) The soldier says that **he** is brave.

Miles dicit **se** esse fortem.

Here *se* is used because it stands for *miles*, the subject of the principal clause.

(b) The king praises the leader; he says that **he** and **his soldiers** are brave.

Rex ducem laudat; dicit **eum** et milites **eius** esse fortes.

In this case **he** in the reported statement clearly stands for leader and is translated by **eum** (=that man). If *se* were used it would stand for the subject of the principal clause (*he says*) and would mean that the king is brave (see note to R. 28 (b)).

133. NOTE.—The pronoun-subject is usually omitted in Latin (R. 30): **He** is brave = *est fortis*. When, however, such a sentence becomes a reported statement in the accusative and infinitive the pronoun, which is now accusative, **must not** be omitted.

134. It should be noted that the accusative and infinitive construction is by no means unusual in English, especially with certain verbs, *e.g.*, I know him to be clever; he ordered the prisoner to be shot.

EXERCISE 94.

Point out the reported statements, turn as in § 130, then translate.

- A. 1. He knows that the Romans were brave.
2. He says that the Romans are brave.
3. Caesar says that the Britons were the allies of the Gauls
4. We know that wolves are fierce.

5. He thinks that this [thing] is enough.
6. Do you think that those [things] are true?
7. He reports that the camp is in the plain.
8. The boy knows that Neptune was the god of the sea.
9. He knows that avarice is a vice.
10. He hears that the prisoner is a Gaul.

Before translating, say what the italicised pronouns stand for, and, applying § 132, say how they are to be translated.

- B. 1. We know that *he* is bold.
2. The leader says that *he* has captured the town.
3. The women think that we praise *them* too much.
4. He knows that *he* pleases us.
5. They deny that *they* saw the prisoner.
6. He denies that *he* is ill.
7. They report that the inhabitants of the island are sailors.
8. Do you not think that war is always an evil?
9. The girl denies that *she* is ill.
10. I know that I am faithful to friends.

135. The future infinitive active consists of the *future participle* (R. 48) and the verb *esse*, e.g., *amaturus esse*, *to be about to love*, etc.

In using the future infinitive it must be remembered that the future participle is an adjective declined like *bonus*.

He says *that the Gauls will take the city*
becomes—

He says *the Gauls to-be-about-to-take the city*.
Dicit Gallos urbem **capturos esse**.

EXERCISE 95.

Viva voce :—

Give, with English, the future participle (R. 48) and then the future infinitive of :—

aro	deleo	gero
pugno	doceo	pono

138. The **accusative and infinitive** is used after expressions like *it is true, it is certain, etc.*

It is certain **that the boy will come.** Certum est **puerum venturum esse.**

* * The following sentences should first be translated literally, i.e., with accusative and infinitive, and afterwards put into good English, using a noun clause beginning with **that**.

Rule 76.—Where **se** occurs in a reported statement it must be translated by **him** (not himself), **her** (not herself), etc.

A. 1. Renuntiat explorator Helvetios iam id flumen copias traduxisse. 2. Poetae dicebant Iovem (§ 3, p. 301) esse patrem deorum hominumque. 3. Omnes scimus Homērum caecum fuisse. 4. Cicero dixit Aegyptios mortuos domi servare. 5. Dicit se tempus in legendo agere. 6. Intellego nullam spem auxilii esse. 7. Scimus sacerdotes in Aegypto medicos et praeceptores fuisse. 8. Respondebat populum Romanum semper esse memorem et beneficii et iniuriae. 9. Certum est Romanos sociis auxilium missuros esse. 10. Livius dicit Hannibālem octoginta milia peditum ad Italiam adduxisse.

B. 1. They think that Caesar will lead an army against the Gauls. 2. Do you think (§ 78) I pass [my] time in doing nothing? 3. He perceived that spies were in the camp. 4. It is certain that the citizens will defend the fatherland. 5. Caesar said that the Britons had sent help to the Gauls. 6. Does he know that there were many priests in Egypt? 7. The boy knows now that Livy wrote many books. 8. Caesar said he would (= was about to) conquer the Gauls. 9. He knows that he is not always just. 10. I know that those [things] are true.

139. The future infinitive of *esse* is **fütürüs essē** or **före** = to be about to be; *futurus* is declined, while *fore* is indeclinable.

He says that the soldier **will be brave.** Dicit militem **fore** (or *futurum esse*) **fortem.**

EXERCISE 97.

1. He knows that the Romans will be our allies. 2. He saw that there would be a battle with the cavalry. 3. Do you think these things will be useful to us? 4. He thinks that the battle will be in this plain. 5. He knows that the ships will be in the harbour to-morrow. 6. No one thought that Demosthenes would be a great orator. 7. He knows that the boys will be contented. 8. He announced that the booty from (= of) the captured city will be the *soldiers'* (gen. case).

EXERCISE 98.

Viva voce :—

we shall show	I am about to lead	jeering at (partic.)
he was showing	he was about to lead	he was jeering at
to have shown	against the Gauls	they are greedy
they will lead	against the Romans	they are very greedy
about to lead	do you think	are they greedy?
to be about to lead	I was thinking	says he

Questions to be answered before translating :—

- (1) What case is *Hannibali*?
- (2) What word does *armatorum* agree with?
- (3) What case is *Romanis*?

COSTLY WEAPONS DO NOT MAKE GOOD SOLDIERS.

Antiochus ostendebat Hannibali (1) copias ingentes, quas contra Rōmānos ducturus erat.

"Putasne," inquit, "haec omnia esse satis Rōmānis?"

Tum Poenus,¹ eludens ignaviam militum eius tam pretiose armatorum (2), "Satis, plane satis esse Rōmānis (3) puto haec omnia, etiamsi avarissimi sunt".

¹ Supply *said*.

EXERCISE 99.

Viva voce :—

he has come	he was asking	I believe
he had come	they had asked	I believed
he will come	we shall ask	you (sing.) believe
they will come	they might ask	you believed

Questions referring to the following extract :—

- (1) What gender is each of these words? What do they stand for?
- (2) What mood are these words and why? Translate as if they were the corresponding tenses of the Indicative (R. 61).
- (3) What case and why?
- (4) What case? What word does it agree with? (§ 91.)

“NOT AT HOME.”

1. Publius Scipio Nāsica ad poetam Ennium venerat et eum a ianuā quaerebat.

2. Ancilla dixit **Ennium** domi non **esse**; Scipio tamen *sensit* (*felt*) **illam** (1) domini iussu dixisse et **illum** (1) intus **esse**.

3. Paucis post diebus cum Ennius ad Nasicam *venisset* (2) et eum a ianua *quaereret* (2), Nāsica exclamat **se** domi non **esse**.

4. Tum Ennius, “Quid? Ego non cognosco,” inquit, “vocem tuam?”

5. Hic Nāsica “Homo, es impudens; ego cum te quaererem, ancillae (3) tuae credidi **te** domi non **esse**. Tu mihi non credis ipsi (4)?”

140. Accusative and infinitive with the passive voice.¹

He says that the letter is being written. Dicit **epistolam scribī**.
written.

He said that the letter was being written. Dixit **epistolam scribī**.
written.

¹ The future infinitive passive is omitted at this stage (see §§ 232-5).

He says that the letter **has been** written. Dicit epistolam scriptam esse.

He said that the letter **had been** written. Dixit epistolam scriptam esse.

These sentences should be turned in English thus: He says *the letter to be written*, etc.

141. The **passive infinitive** is formed in the 1st, 2nd and 4th conjugations by changing the final -ē into -ī; in the 3rd by changing the final -ēre into -ī.

āmār-ī mōnēr-ī rēg-ī audīr-ī

142. The **passive infinitive perfect** consists of the *past participle* (R. 56) and the verb esse.

It must be remembered that the past participle is an adjective like *bōnus* and must agree with the word referred to in **gender, number and case**, e.g., *Dicit epistolas scriptas esse*; *Dicit versūs (lines) scriptos esse*, etc.

143. In translating the English passive care must be taken to see the exact meaning. Thus, "He says that the town **is taken**" means that the action is completed (§ 70), *i.e.*, that the town **has been taken**, and it must be translated by the perfect infinitive passive.

Learn the infinitive of the four conjugations.

EXERCISE 100.

Viva voce:—

1. Give, with English, the *present infinitive passive* of:—

do	teneo	dico	munio
servo	contineo	mitto	finio
armo	moveo	capio	custodio
supero	compleo	diripio ¹	sepelio

2. Give the supine, then the past participle, and, finally, the perfect infinitive passive of the above verbs.

¹ What is the pattern conjugation of this verb?

A. Translate into Latin :—

1. He says that the town is being fortified.
2. He says that the town has been fortified.
3. He says that the cities have been fortified.
4. We have heard that the city is being plundered.
5. The leader knows that the slaves have been armed.
6. I know that hostages have been given.
7. He perceived that the ditch had been filled with stones.
8. He perceives that the camp is being moved.
9. He knows that help has been sent.
10. He knew that help was being sent.

EXERCISE 101.

A. 1. Dicit signum pugnandi iam datum esse. 2. Sc̄lon Athēniēnsīs rem publicam contineri duabus rebus dixit : praemio et poenā. 3. Cicēro dicit corpora mortuorum ab Aegyptiis domi servata esse. 4. Caesar totum montem hominibus armatis compleri iussit. 5. Audivit hostium castra trans flumen moveri. 6. Certum est Gallorum copias a nostris superatas esse. 7. Scit multa sapienter dicta esse a sene. 8. Audit filiam suam in ea pugna captam esse. 9. Post eam cladem Athēniēnses iusserunt servos armari, exsules revocari. 10. Caesari *nuntiatur* (*it is announced* (§ 256)) alteram ripam fluminis ab hostibus muniri.

B. 1. He says that (§ 136 (*d*)) the leader has been punished so that (§ 136 (*c*)) *others* (*alii*) may be frightened. 2. Livy says that the Roman general conquered Hannibal *by putting off* (*differendo*) the fight. 3. We know that the ship is being kept (= held) in the harbour by the tempest. 4. Announce to the Roman people that Carthage has been destroyed. 5. The scouts brought-back-word that the mountain was being held by the Gauls. 6. We know that our city is being plundered. 7. The Romans knew that the soldiers had fought vigorously. 8. Have you not prepared everything for (§ 125) fighting? 9. He says that some (§ 106) have fled, others have fought bravely. 10. He says there is no hope of conquering.

EXERCISE 102.

HOW TO TREAT SPIES.

Hannibal tres exploratores ad Scipionis castra misit, **quos** captos Scipio **circumduci** per castra iussit, **ostendique** (R. 39) eis **totum exercitum**. Postea iussit prandium eis dari, et eos dimitti ut omnia Hannibali renuntiarent.

DEPONENT VERBS.

144. Deponent¹ verbs are conjugated like **passives**, but are **active** in meaning, *e.g.*, **hortor**, I exhort; **hortātur**, he exhorts, etc.

145. In addition to the full passive conjugation (with active meanings) deponent verbs have the **active** forms of the participles, **supines** and **gerunds**. Thus:—

Partic.	{ Hortans	<i>exhorting</i>
	{ Hortātūrus	<i>about to exhort</i>
Gerund	Hortandi	<i>of exhorting, etc.</i>
Supine	{ Hortātum	<i>(in order) to exhort</i>
	{ Hortātū	<i>in exhorting</i>

146. The **gerundive** of deponent verbs has a passive meaning, *e.g.*, **hortandus**, requiring to be exhorted. Only transitive verbs can have gerundives.

EXERCISE 103.

Learn *hortor*, p. 160.

Rule 77.—It must be carefully noted that the **past participle** of deponent verbs has an **active** meaning, *e.g.*, **hortātus**, *having exhorted*.

Rule 78.—**Dignus**, *worthy*, and **indignus**, *unworthy*, govern the **ablative**.

The orator is worthy of praise. Orator est **laude dignus**.

¹ A few verbs called **semi-deponent** are conjugated according to the active in all tenses except the perfects, which are passive in form (§ 511).

Viva voce :—

1. Say the future of *mīror*; the present subjunctive of *vāgor*; the perfect indicative of *mōror*.

2. Put into Latin :—

he will imitate	they ravage	having lingered
we were imitating	they had ravaged	they were lingering
they have imitated	ravaging (partic.)	he lingered
I had imitated	that they may ravage	that they might linger
that you might imitate	we shall ravage	I shall linger
to have imitated	of ravaging (gerund)	I had lingered

A. 1. Orator laude dignus est; eum multi imitantur. 2. Alexandri milites Babylōnis magnitudinem et pulchritudinem mirabantur. 3. Multos annos (R. 14 (b)) vagati, tandem ad Rhenum pervenerant. 4. Quinque dies in eis locis moratur populandi causā. 5. Non arbitratur se in eo loco esse tutum. 6. Orator futurus imitetur Dēmōsthēnem qui diligentia industriāque impedimenta naturae superavit. 7. Quis non cupit hunc ducem imitari? 8. Multos annos sine patria vagati erant. 9. Caesar milites longa oratione hortabatur ut fortissimum illum¹ ducem imitentur. 10. Vagati sunt per fines Gallorum in Italiam.

B. 1. They were exhorting [their] companions to imitate (R. 45) the leader. 2. Who does not admire the beauty of this city? 3. He thinks that the enemy are ravaging our fields. 4. They were wandering in the woods the whole night. 5. After the battle the Gauls lingered in our territories *too-long* (*diutius*). 6. Having lingered too long in Gaul the Romans were hastening into Italy. 7. He has sent his [men] into Italy for-the-purpose-of ravaging. 8. They ordered the Gauls not to linger in our territory. 9. He easily persuaded the soldiers (§ 66) not to ravage the land. 10. Let us imitate the examples of great men.

¹ Notice the position of this word, between the adjective and the noun (see § 6, p. 310).

- I. Hortör, hortārī, hortātūs sum, *to exhort*, like *āmör*.
 II. Vöreör, vērērī, vērītūs sum, *to fear*, like *möneör*.

	I.		II.		
INDICATIVE MOOD.	Present.	hort-ör hort-ārīs etc.	<i>I exhort or am exhorting thou exhortest etc.</i>	vēr-eör vēr-ērīs etc.	<i>I fear or am fearing thou fearest etc.</i>
	Imperfect.	hort-ābār	<i>I was exhorting</i>	vēr-ēbār	<i>I was fearing</i>
	Future.	hort-ābör	<i>I shall exhort</i>	vēr-ēbör	<i>I shall fear</i>
	Perfect.	hort-ātūs sum	<i>I have exhorted or I exhorted</i>	vēr-ītūs sum	<i>I have feared or I feared</i>
	Fut. Perf.	hort-ātūs ëro	<i>I shall have ex- horted</i>	vēr-ītūs ëro	<i>I shall have feared</i>
	Pluperfect.	hort-ātūs ëram	<i>I had exhorted</i>	vēr-ītūs ëram	<i>I had feared</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	Present.	hort-ër	<i>I may exhort</i>	vēr-eär	<i>may fear</i>
	Imperfect	hort-ärër	<i>I might exhort</i>	vēr-ërër	<i>I might fear</i>
	Perfect.	hort-ātūs sim	<i>I may have ex- horted</i>	vēr-ītūs sim	<i>I may have feared</i>
	Pluperfect.	hort-ātūs essem	<i>I should have exhorted</i>	vēr-ītūs essem	<i>I should have feared</i>
IMPERATIVE.	Present.	hort-ärë	<i>exhort thou</i>	vēr-ërë	<i>fear thou</i>
	Future.	hort-ätör	<i>thou shalt or must exhort</i>	vēr-ëtör	<i>thou shalt or must fear</i>
INFINITIVE.	Present.	hort-ärī	<i>to exhort</i>	vēr-eri	<i>to fear</i>
	Perfect.	hort-ātūs esse	<i>to have ex- horted</i>	vēr-ītūs essë	<i>to have feared</i>
	Future.	hort-ätürüs essë	<i>to be about to exhort</i>	vēr-ītürüs essë	<i>to be about to fear</i>
PARTICIPLES.	Present.	hort-ans	<i>exhorting</i>	vēr-ens	<i>fearing</i>
	Future.	hort-ätürüs	<i>about to exhort</i>	vēr-ītürüs	<i>about to fear</i>
	Perfect.	hort-ātūs	<i>having exhorted</i>	vēr-ītūs	<i>having feared</i>
	Gerundive.	hort-andüs	<i>requiring to be exhorted</i>	vēr-endüs	<i>requiring to be feared</i>
SUPINES.	hort-ätum hort-ätü	<i>to exhort in exhorting</i>	vēr-itum vēr-itü	<i>to fear in fearing</i>	
GERUND.	hort-andi etc.	<i>of exhorting etc.</i>	vēr-endi etc.	<i>of fearing etc.</i>	

VERBS.

III. Lōquōr, lōquī, lōcūtūs sum, *to speak*, like rēgōr.IV. Partīōr, partīrī, partītūs sum, *to divide*, like audiōr.

III.			IV.			INDICATIVE MOOD.
Present.	lōqu-ōr	{ <i>I speak or am speaking</i>	part-iōr	{ <i>I divide or am dividing</i>		
	lōqu-ēris	{ <i>thou speakest</i>	part-iris	{ <i>thou dividest</i>		
	etc.	{ <i>etc.</i>	etc.	{ <i>etc.</i>		
Imperfect.	lōqu-ēbār	{ <i>I was speaking</i>	part-iēbār	{ <i>I was dividing</i>		
Future.	lōqu-ār	{ <i>I shall speak</i>	part-iār	{ <i>I shall divide</i>		
Perfect.	lōcū-tūs	{ <i>I have spoken</i>	part-itūs	{ <i>I have divided</i>		
	sum	{ <i>or I spoke</i>	sum	{ <i>or I divided</i>		
Fut. Perf.	lōcū-tūs	{ <i>I shall have spoken</i>	part-itūs	{ <i>I shall have divided</i>		
	ēro	{ <i>spoken</i>	ēro	{ <i>divided</i>		
Present.	lōcū-tūs	{ <i>I had spoken</i>	part-itūs	{ <i>I had divided</i>		
	ēram		ēram			
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
Present.	lōqu-ār	{ <i>I may speak</i>	part-iār	{ <i>I may divide</i>		
Imperfect.	lōqu-ērēr	{ <i>I might speak</i>	part-irēr	{ <i>I might divide</i>		
Perfect.	lōcū-tūs	{ <i>I may have spoken</i>	part-itūs	{ <i>I may have divided</i>		
	sim	{ <i>spoken</i>	sim	{ <i>divided</i>		
Pluperfect.	lōcū-tūs	{ <i>I should have spoken</i>	part-itūs	{ <i>I should have divided</i>		
	essem		essem			
IMPERATIVE.						
Present.	lōqu-ērē	{ <i>speak thou</i>	part-irē	{ <i>divide thou</i>		
Future.	lōqu-itōr	{ <i>thou shalt or must speak</i>	part-itōr	{ <i>thou shalt or must divide</i>		
INFINITIVE.						
Present.	lōqu-i	{ <i>to speak</i>	part-iri	{ <i>to divide</i>		
Perfect.	lōcū-tūs	{ <i>to have spoken</i>	part-itūs	{ <i>to have divided</i>		
	essē		essē			
Future.	lōcū-tūrūs	{ <i>to be about to speak</i>	part-itūrūs	{ <i>to be about to divide</i>		
	essē		essē			
PARTICIPLES.						
Present.	lōqu-ens	{ <i>speaking</i>	part-iens	{ <i>dividing</i>		
Future.	lōcū-tūrūs	{ <i>about to speak</i>	part-itūrūs	{ <i>about to divide</i>		
Perfect.	lōcū-tūs	{ <i>having spoken</i>	part-itūs	{ <i>having divided</i>		
Gerundive.	lōqu-endus	{ <i>requiring to be spoken</i>	part-iendus	{ <i>requiring to be divided</i>		
SUPINES.						
	lōcū-tum	{ <i>to speak</i>	part-itum	{ <i>to divide</i>		
	lōcū-tū	{ <i>in speaking</i>	part-itū	{ <i>in dividing</i>		
GERUND.	lōqu-endi	{ <i>of speaking</i>	part-iendi	{ <i>of dividing</i>		
	etc.	{ <i>etc.</i>	etc.	{ <i>etc.</i>		

EXERCISE 104.

Learn *hortor* and *vereor*, p. 160.

Rule 79.—The passive voice of *video*, *to see*, besides being used in its ordinary passive sense, has also a kind of deponent meaning, *to seem*. Thus :—

Act. *Vīdēo, vīdērē, vīdī, visum*, 2, *to see*.

Pass. *Vīdēor, vīdērī, vīsus sum*, 2, *to be seen* ; *to seem*.

NOTE.—In the sense of *to seem*, *vīdeor* takes the nominative case like the verb *to be*.

He **seems worthy** of praise, *i.e.*, he **Videtur dignus laude.**
appears to be worthy of praise.

Viva voce. Put into Latin :—

he promises	we confess	they pity
they will promise	by confessing	that they may pity
we had promised	he has confessed	pity (sing. and pl.)
promise (pl.)	to confess	they have pitied

A. 1. Thēmistōcles multa domino navis¹ pollicitus est si se (§ 474) conservasset (§ 62). 2. Galli magnam copiam navium Caesārī pollicebantur. 3. Imperator, veritus² insidias, milites per montes non duxit. 4. Relinquit duo milia militum ut portum tueantur. 5. Tuemini castra et defendite diligenter. 6. Senes memoriā digni videbantur. 7. Regi, in Aegypto vaganti, panis datus est; nihil ei visum est illo pane iucundius. 8. Pueri *Spartiātae* (*Spartan*) nunquam se victos esse fatebantur. 9. O Romani, sociorum miseremini. 10. Senex veretur ne pueri malorum virorum exempla imitentur.

B. 1. The hostages remained in our camp because they feared the tortures of the Gauls. 2. He will exhort the two soldiers to-watch-over the gates of the citadel. 3. Pity me, [now

¹ Translate *domino navis* by one word.

² *Vēritus*, lit., having feared: translate by *fearing*.

I am an] old-man! ¹ 4. The soldier confesses himself to have been overcome by his companion. 5. The allies have promised help to us. 6. The men seemed useless *for* (*ad*) the fight. 7. He has promised that (§ 136) he will give hostages to the Romans. 8. We feared lest the army should linger *too-long* (*diutius*) there. 9. Who did not admire the beauty of that city? 10. The allies fear lest the enemy may ravage [their] lands.

EXERCISE 105.

Learn *sequor*, p. 161.

Rule 80.—Words meaning to remember or to forget take the **genitive case**, *e.g.*, *obliscor*, *reminiscor*.

Quis Hannibālis famae oblitus est?

Viva voce :—

he follows	we have followed	to have set out
we follow	you had followed	setting out (partic.)
they were following	to follow	they might set out
thou wilt follow	he sets out	they had set out
he will follow	we were setting out	do not set out (R. 37, c.)
he may follow	he will set out	she had set out

A. 1. *Maxima pars exercitus terrā sequetur.* 2. *Ei paruerunt et eius consilia secuti sunt.* 3. *Claudio proficiscenti pater anulum dederat.* 4. *Primā vigiliā dux signum proficiscendi dedit.* 5. *Caesar, cum in Italiam proficisceretur* (R. 61), *duas legiones in Gallia reliquit.* 6. *Senex suae famae non oblitus erat.* 7. *Reminiscentes veteris famae, amici eius aetatis miserentur.* 8. *Romani semper iniurias ulciscabantur.* 9. *Horā circiter diei quartā* (R. 73) *Labiēnus cum duabus legionibus profectus est.* 10. *Romanus Graecō loquebatur ut Athēnis* (*at Athens*) *natus (esse) videretur.*

¹ With what word is *man* in apposition? what case?

B. 1. What do you wish? Speak freely. 2. We shall set out about the third hour. 3. Caesar ordered the cavalry to follow him (§ 132) by-land. 4. In that war the Romans avenged former injuries. 5. The old man, remembering former times, relates brave deeds to his children. 6. He begged us not to set out before dawn (= light). 7. All the ships had set out on the same day. 8. Do not forget benefits. 9. The master orders the pupil to speak in-Latin. 10. I will not narrate the wars which followed.

EXERCISE 106.

Rule 81.—The verbs **fungor**, **fruor**, **nitor**, **vescor** and **pōtior** (see footnote, p. 204) govern the **ablative**.

These verbs were originally reflexive in meaning, e.g., *vescor*, *I feed myself with*, *utor*, *I employ myself with*, etc., so that the ablative with these verbs is the **ablative of the instrument**.

Viva voce :—

he used	we feed on	we enjoy
he has used	they feed on	he will enjoy
he will use	they discharge	he was enjoying
he will have used	they had discharged	he was using
they will have used	we may discharge	they had used
to have used	they might discharge	to use

A. 1. Iphicrātes, Athēniēnsis, pedestria arma mutavit, *cum* (since) ante illum imperatorem maximis clipeis, brevibus hastis, parvis gladiis **uterentur**. Ille autem hastae modum duplicavit; gladios longiores fecit. 2. Est genus *quoddam* (a certain) hominum quod Hēlōtēs vocatur, quorum magna multitudo agros Lacedaemoniorum colit, servorumque munere **fungitur**. 3. In Rhēno sunt multae insulae quarum incolae piscibus atque ovis avium **vescuntur**. 4. In libro quinto Caesaris *de Bello Gallico* legimus de Britannis antiquis. **Utebantur** aut aere, aut taleis ferreis pro nummo.

B. 1. We obey him and use his advice (= plans). 2. Use [your] time well, my son. 3. These birds feed on fruit (plural). 4. The Romans used-to-use (R. 31) rather-short (R. 20) swords. 5. Many animals feed on nuts. 6. In that part of Gaul the inhabitants do not use horses *for* (*ad*) ploughing. 7. Using [his] time wisely the boy learnt many things. 8. The soldiers were enjoying victory. 9. He exhorts the pupils to use [their] time well. 10. About the third hour the cavalry set out.

EXERCISE 107.

147. Some deponents of the 3rd conjugation have -ior in the first person present indicative. These are conjugated like the passive of *capio*, p. 142. Thus *mōrior, mōri, mortuus sum, to die*.

Vivā voce :—

he dies	we suffer	thou art attacking
they will die	we shall suffer	thou wilt attack
he had died	we may suffer	he has entered
they had died	we were suffering	we were entering
let us die	she suffered	he might enter
thou mightest die	they (fem.) suffered	they enter

A. 1. *Mori pulchrum est forti viro: fortiter igitur pugnemus, tuvenes, pro patria, et pro liberis moriamur.* 2. *Corpus nostrum morietur, non anima.* 3. *Ancus Martius (see Ex. 89, 4) mortuus est cum tres et triginta annos regnavisset.* 4. *Alexander Magnus magnā pompā Bābylōnem ingressus est.* 5. *Iam equites trans vallem circiter quinque milia passuum progressierant.* 6. *Pedites sine mora ex oppido egrediebantur.* 7. *Quando Galli aciem aggredientur?* 8. *Caesar milites hortabatur ne longius progredierentur.* 9. *Multa mala pro patria passus sum!* 10. *Num Galli patientur nos per fines suos iter facere?*

B. 1. Alexander, dying, gave a ring to his friend. 2. Many men have died for their fatherland. 3. At the third watch the scouts marched-out *from* (*e*) the camp. 4. The leader exhorts

us not to advance into the plain. 5. The allies had entered the town in the night. 6. This soldier had suffered many [things] for his country. 7. At the seventh hour the enemy attacked our line-of-battle. 8. They are preparing to attack us. 9. Let us enter the city with (R. 72) our allies. 10. Did not (§ 76) the Romans use short spears?

EXERCISE 108.

DIOGENES IN A SMALL TOWN.

Diōgēnes, cum aliquando in parvum oppidum venisset, cuius portae permagnae erant, "Claudite portas," inquit, "cives, ne urbs vestra egrediatur!"

EXERCISE 109.

148. The Latin for **not . . . even** is **nē . . . quidem**, the word modified by even being placed **between** *ne* and *quidem*.

Not even a brave soldier always **Ne fortissimus quidem miles**
overcomes the enemy. hostes semper superat.

Learn *partior*, p. 161.

Write the present subjunctive of **pōtior**; the imperfect indicative of **mētior**; the pluperfect indicative of **partior**.

A. 1. Post mortem regis duces regnum inter eius filios partiti sunt. 2. Rex moriens amicos hortabatur ut pecuniam inter filias partirentur. 3. In ea pugna milites magnā praedā potiti erant. 4. Agēsilaüs, non semel vulneratus, tandem victoriā potitus est. 5. Nulla spes potiendi castris erat. 6. Ēpāmīnondas ne ioco quidem mentiebatur. 7. Quid turpius quam mentiri est? 8. Quarto die hostes aggrediemur, quinto die castris eorum potiemur. 9. Milites, cum urbe potiti essent, inter se omnem praedam partiti sunt. 10. Dux veretur ne hostes urbe potiantur.

B. 1. The Romans used-to-divide (R. 31) the army between the two consuls. 2. After the fight we shall divide the booty. 3. Have the soldiers got-possession-of (R. 81) the camp? 4.

Do not lie, boys (R. 37). 5. The centurions were measuring the corn to the soldiers. 6. On that day not even the leaders heard the signal. 7. These men live on milk and corn. 8. After the death of Alexander the leaders of the forces had divided the kingdom between themselves. 9. In this army not even the youngest soldier fears the day of battle. 10. He is the best friend who shares (= divides) our sorrows.

THE GERUNDIVE.

1. *am-andus* *requiring to be loved*. 3. *reg-endus* *requiring to be ruled*.
2. *mon-endus* *requiring to be advised*. 4. *aud-iendus* *requiring to be heard*.

149. The **gerundive** is a **verbal adjective** declined like *bonus* and agreeing with the word referred to in number, gender and case. It implies **duty** or **obligation** and is mostly translated by the English **must**. Thus:—

The city **must** be captured = the city is **requiring-to-be-captured**.

Urbs **capienda** est.

The cities **must** be captured. Urbes **capiendae** sunt.

150. The **gerundive** implies duty, and the duty is regarded as falling to somebody. After a gerundive, therefore, the name of the person to whom the duty belongs, that is, the **doer**, is put in the **dative**.

Rule 82.—After the **gerundive** the **agent** or **doer** is expressed by the **dative** case (see § 154 n.).

The city **must** be taken **by us**. Urbs **nobis** capienda est.

151. It must be remembered that the **gerundive** is essentially **passive** in meaning. An English sentence with **must** in the active voice must be turned into the passive, thus:—

I **must** punish (*active*) the boy = the boy is **requiring-to-be-punished** by me. **Mihi** puer puniendus est.

152. The **neuter** of the **gerundive** of intransitive verbs and verbs used intransitively is frequently used impersonally (§ 255) to translate the English active voice.

I **must** not **weep** (= it is not **requiring-to-be-wept**). **Mihi** non flendum est.

153. Properly speaking only **transitive** verbs can be used in the passive. But in Latin almost any verb can be used **impersonally** in the passive (§ 255).

154. THE GERUNDIVE OF VERBS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.—It was seen in Rule 60 that verbs governing the dative can only be used impersonally in the passive. The gerundive, therefore, of verbs governing the dative can only be used impersonally in the neuter, and the agent is then expressed by the **ablative** with *a* to prevent ambiguity.¹

I must obey my father. *Meo patri a me parendum est.*

155. NOTE.—The neuter **gerundive** (which is **passive**) must be distinguished from the accusative of the **gerund**, which is **active** (§ 120).

Gerundive. We must **fight**.

Nobis pugnandum est.

Gerund. I am prepared for **fighting**.

Paratus sum ad pugandum.

156. The **gerundive** is the only part of **deponent verbs** which has a **passive meaning**.

Glory must be sought-after. *Gloria est consequenda.*

The impersonal use of the gerundives of deponent verbs is very common.

EXERCISE 110.

(1) Give the gerundive of:—

vasto	teneo	duco	accipio	sepelio
armo	moneo	mitto	suscipio	vincio
nego	compleo	curro	diripio	custodio
do	deleo	disco	capio	munio

¹ In the case of verbs governing the dative, if a dative of the agent (R. 82) were used, we should have two datives, and it would be impossible to tell which dative meant the agent. Thus, *Mihi comiti parendum est* might mean It is requiring-to-be-obeyed to me by the companion or It is requiring-to-be-obeyed by me to the companion. The difficulty is avoided by writing *Mihi a comite parendum est*.

(2) Turn into Latin:—

1. The slaves must be armed quickly.
2. Hostages must be given.
3. The girls must be warned by the mother.
4. The ditches must be filled by the soldiers.
5. Letters must be sent.
6. The words must be learnt by the boy.
7. The city must not be plundered.
8. Wars must be undertaken by the leader.
9. The bodies must be buried after the battle.
10. The camp must be fortified.

EXERCISE 111.

A. Turn the following active sentences into the passive:—

1. We must lay-waste the lands of the Gauls
2. The father must advise the boys well.
3. The enemy must destroy the bridge.
4. Caesar must lead his army into Gaul.
5. The soldiers must bind the captives.
6. The soldiers must guard the captives.
7. The master must arm the slaves.
8. You must not deny these-things.
9. The boy must learn many things.
10. You must give hostages.

B. Turn into Latin:—

1. We must run into the temple.
2. They must remain in the city.
3. The husbandman must plough.
4. Boys must please [their] parents.
5. You must not displease good [men].
6. They must hasten into the city.
7. The trees must not be injured by boys.
8. We must conquer.

9. The pupil must obey the master.
 10. The pupils must obey the master.

157. The **gerundive** can be used with any tense of the verb *to be*. As the English verb *must* can only be used in the present, translations of the gerundive with other tenses should be noted.

Urbs capienda **est**. The city **must** (*has to*) be taken.
 Urbs capienda **erat**. The city **had to** be taken.
 Urbs capienda **erit**. The city **will have to** be taken.

158. Note the three uses of the verb **have** :—

1. To **have** meaning to possess = habeo.
 2. **Have** as a sign of the perfect tenses.
 3. **Have** to denoting duty or obligation.
1. The enemy **have** a camp there. Castra ibi hostes **habent**.
 2. They **have** taken the city. Urbem cep-erunt.
 3. The boy **had** (was obliged) to remain. Puero manendum erat.

159. Notice the gerundive used with accusative and infinitive.

Caesar said **that the territories** Caesar dixit **agros** Gallorum
 of the Gauls **must be ravaged**. **vastandos esse**.

EXERCISE 112.

Viva voce. Give the gerundives of :—

morior	proficiscor	mentior	fleo
hortor	sequor	vinco	relinquo
imitor	aggredior	vito	facio

A. 1. Non omnia omnibus (R. 82) cupienda sunt. 2. Regnum aut relinquendum aut armis retinendum est. 3. Pro Italia pugnandum est nobis. 4. Hic vincendum aut moriendum est, milites. 5. Hostium agri vastandi sunt ne iterum pugnent. 6. Exempla bonorum virorum imitanda sunt pueris ut bene vivant. 7. Servo sapienter respondendum erat ne eum dominus

puniret. 8. Milites hortandi sunt ut bene pugnent. 9. Dux dicit insidias in silva esse parandas. 10. Nonne omnibus legibus parandum est? 11. Nonne ab omnibus legibus parandum est?

B. 1. Now we must set out that we may fight for our fatherland. 2. An ambush must be prepared in this place. 3. The boy had (§ 158) to reply quickly. 4. These dangers must be avoided by prudence. 5. The kingdom must be divided between the two sons. 6. You must attack boldly. 7. He says that his plans must be followed. 8. No one must lie; all must tell the truth (= true things). 9. The soldiers had to obey a cowardly leader. 10. You must not displease good friends.

160. RECAPITULATION OF PREPOSITIONS.—** To be learnt by heart :—

The Alps divide Gaul from Italy.	Alpēs Galliam ab Itāliā dividunt.
Come to me to-morrow	Veni ad me cras.
The fight at Trebia.	Pugna ad Trēbiam.
The leaders divided the kingdom among the sons.	Duces regnum inter filios partiti sunt.
He died for his country.	Pro patriā mortuus est.
Shaking their spears over their heads.	Scuta super capita quatientes.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

161. Many compound verbs are made by prefixing certain prepositions to the verb *sum*. The chief are :—

- absum*, to be absent, to be distant from.
- adsum*, to be present, to be near, to help.
- dēsum*, to be wanting.
- intersum*, to be among, to be present at, to take part in.
- praesum*, to be before, to be in command of.
- prōsum*, to be serviceable to.
- sūpersum*, to remain over, to survive.

162. These verbs are all conjugated like *sum* except *prosum*.

Prosum inserts a **d** after **o** (*i.e.*, **prod-**) whenever the part of **sum** begins with a vowel. Thus :

prō-sum	prō-sūmŭs
prōd-ēs	prōd-estīs
prōd-est	prō-sunt

Similarly **prōd-ēram**, **prōd-ēro**, **pro-fui**, etc.

163. Compounds of **sum** govern the **dative** case.

Labienus was-in-command of the Labienus **equitatui** prae-
cavalry. **fuit.**

164. The **dative** case (§ 209) always denotes the person or thing to or for whom a thing is done, *i.e.*, the person or thing to whom anything is an advantage or a disadvantage.

Keeping this in view it will be easy to understand the dative case after compounds of **sum**. Thus **prae-** means literally *in front of*; **praesum** means *I am in front of*, for the purpose of giving commands to some one, I shall therefore be either an advantage or a disadvantage to some one.

165. NOTE.—When **absum** means *to be distant from* it takes **a** and the ablative.

The town is distant four miles Oppidum quattuor milia passuum
from Rome. **a Romā abest.**

EXERCISE 113.

Turn into Latin :—

1. Good citizens are serviceable to the State.
2. The garden was-distant two miles from the town.
3. Who will survive this battle?
4. The general had-taken-part-in many battles.
5. To-day they are absent, to-morrow they will be present.
6. This leader was-at-the-head-of the forces.
7. Corn was-wanting to the Romans at that time.
8. You had been serviceable to me formerly.
9. May we survive these dangers!
10. Be brave that you may be serviceable to [your] country.

A. 1. Hoc oppidum circiter milia trecenta passuum a Zāmā abest. 2. Hieme (R. 14 (b)) pecunia civibus deesse *coepit* (*began*). 3. Agāmēmnōn, rex Mŷcēnārūm, praeerat exercitui qui Trōiām delevit. 4. Eo tempore castra haud procul a Rōmā aberant. 5. Multi homines, qui *proelio* ad (*at*) Trebiam *facto* supererant, capti sunt. 6. Dicit sibi nihil deesse. 7. Nūma Pompilius bellum quidem nullum gessit, sed non minus civitati quam Rōmūlus profuit. 8. Secundo bello Pūnico Hannibal exercitui Carthāgīnensium praeerat et multis proeliis intererat. 9. Ades mihi, in his periculis, O amice! 10. Hic dux omnia civibus dederat ut rei publicae prodesset. 11. Sunt multa (R. 15) maiora clarioraque quam bellum. Thémistōcles Graeciam *servitute* (*from servitude*) liberavit; Sōlon multas bonasque leges dedit. Ille (R. 64) semel, hic semper, civitati profuit.

B. 1. One *out-of* (*ex* with ablative) many brothers survived this battle. 2. The Gauls are-distant from our camp about three miles. 3. Labiēnus will be in command of the legion which Caesar will send into Britain. 4. Fabius, who was in command of the Roman forces, did not conquer Hannibal by fighting (§ 222), but by delaying. 5. If (R. 40) corn is-wanting to the army how will they conquer the enemy? 6. Not far *from* (*a*) Mycenae is a sacred wood. 7. Let us fight bravely that we may be serviceable to the State. 8. Many were killed, few survived the battle. 9. Good friends are always serviceable to others. 10. My son, I have-taken-part-in many wars.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

166. The Verb *Possūm*, to be able.

Pos-sum is formed by prefixing the adjective pōtis (=able), contracted to pot-, to the tenses of sum. Pot- becomes pos- before s; f is omitted in the perfect tenses, and in the infinitive and derived tenses pot-esse is contracted to posse.

Possum, possē, pōtūī, to be able, can.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT.				PERFECT.			
pos-sum		pos-sim		pōtū-ī		pōtū-ērim	
pōt-ēs		pos-sīs		pōtū-istī		pōtū-ēris	
pōt-est		pos-sīt		pōtū-īt		pōtū-ērīt	
pos-sūmūs		pos-sīmūs		pōtū-īmūs		pōtū-ērimūs	
pōt-esūs		pos-sītīs		pōtū-istīs		pōtū-ērītīs	
pos-sunt		pos-sint		pōtū-ērunt		pōtū-ērint	
IMPERFECT.				PLUPERFECT.			
pōt-eram		pos-sem		pōtū-eram		pōtū-issem	
pōt-erās		pos-sēs		pōtū-erās		pōtū-issēs	
pōt-erāt		pos-sēt		pōtū-erāt		pōtū-issēt	
pōt-erāmūs		pos-sēmūs		pōtū-erāmūs		pōtū-issēmūs	
pōt-erātīs		pos-sētīs		pōtū-erātīs		pōtū-issētīs	
pōt-erant		pos-sent		pōtū-erant		pōtū-issent	
FUTURE.				FUTURE-PERFECT.			
pōt-ero				pōtū-ero			
pōt-erīs				pōtū-erīs			
pōt-erīt				pōtū-erīt			
pōt-erimūs				pōtū-erimūs			
pōt-erītīs				pōtū-erītīs			
pōt-erunt				pōtū-erint			

INFINITIVE MOOD AND PARTICIPLES.

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	possē
„ PERFECT.	pōtū-issē
„ FUTURE.	wanting
PARTICIPLES. ¹	wanting

¹ The word *potens*, the present participle of *posse*, is only used as an adjective meaning *powerful*.

EXERCISE 114.

167. The verb **possum** is followed by an infinitive. In English the infinitive after *can* omits *to*, but the infinitive will be seen by changing **can** to **be able**. I can come = I am able to come = possum venire.

168. The English verb **can** (past tense *could*) is defective, the same word being used both for present, future, etc. To find the real tense of **can** turn it into **be able**.

Can you come to-morrow? = **will you be able** to come to-morrow?
Poterisne cras venire?

Viva voce. Turn into Latin :—

1. They could not capture the camp.
2. Will Caesar be able to overcome the Gauls?
3. They were not able to walk yesterday.
4. We fight bravely that we may-be-able to conquer.
5. Will these soldiers be able to defend the city?
6. Who has been able to-be-serviceable to the fatherland?
7. They hope to be able to see many things.
8. The Gauls could scarcely be conquered by Caesar.
9. Who can please all [men]?
10. The army had not been able to follow by sea.

A. 1. Hostes superare neque consilio neque copiis Romani poterant. 2. Maior regionis pars erat aspera, nec sine magno labore coli poterat. 3. Athēniensēs, cum Persarum impetum nullo modo sustinere possent, suam libertatem classe defendere statuerunt. 4. Pugnemus fortiter ut urbem expugnare possimus. 5. Non poterunt proficisci nono die. 6. Dicit Gallos facile vinci posse. 7. Sperant se obsides dare Caesari posse. 8. Hēlvētii vagari late non possunt quod fines eorum montibus altis continentur. 9. Nullo labore corpus eius fatigari potuerat. 10. Vix poterimus hostium impetum sustinere.

B. 1. Can the legion set-out to-morrow? 2. Why were the Helvetians unable to wander? 3. The leader had been able to be serviceable to the army. 4. A horse can carry many men. 5. He knows that we cannot be-present to-day. 6. A very-small

army was easily able to overcome very many barbarians. 7. I could scarcely read his letter. 8. The slaves had prepared arms that they might be able to defend their city. 9. These barbarians used-to-feed on nuts and milk. 10. We must now set out so that we can enter the city before dawn (= light).

169. *vōlo*, *vellē*, *vōlūi*, to be willing, to wish.

Nōlo, *nōllē*, *nōlūi*, to be unwilling, not to wish.

Mālo, *māllē*, *mālui*, to prefer, to wish rather.

170. *Nōlo* is contracted from *nē-vōlo*; *mālo* from *magis-volo* (= I wish more). This contraction accounts for *ō* which is short in *vōlo* becoming a long *ō* in *nōlo*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>vōlo</i>	<i>nōlo</i>	<i>mālo</i>
<i>vīs</i>	<i>nōn vīs</i>	<i>māvīs</i>
<i>vult</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>māvult</i>
<i>vōlūmūs</i>	<i>nōlūmūs</i>	<i>mālūmūs</i>
<i>vultīs</i>	<i>nōn vultīs</i>	<i>māvultīs</i>
<i>vōlunt</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>mālunt</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>vōl-ēbam</i> ¹	<i>nōl-ēbam</i> ¹	<i>māl-ēbam</i> ¹
<i>vōl-ēbās</i> , etc.	<i>nōl-ēbās</i> , etc.	<i>māl-ēbās</i> , etc.

FUTURE-SIMPLE.

<i>vōl-am</i> ¹	<i>nōl-am</i> ¹	<i>māl-am</i> ¹
<i>vōl-ēs</i> , etc.	<i>nōl-ēs</i> , etc.	<i>māl-ēs</i> , etc.

PERFECT.

<i>vōlu-ī</i>	<i>nōlu-ī</i>	<i>mālu-ī</i>
<i>vōlu-istī</i> , etc.	<i>nōlu-istī</i> , etc.	<i>mālu-istī</i> , etc.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>vōlu-ēram</i>	<i>nōlu-ēram</i>	<i>mālu-ērām</i>
<i>vōlu-ērās</i> , etc.	<i>nōlu-ērās</i> , etc.	<i>mālu-ērās</i> , etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT.

<i>vōlu-ēro</i>	<i>nōlu-ēro</i>	<i>mālu-ēro</i>
<i>vōlu-ērīs</i> , etc.	<i>nōlu-ērīs</i> , etc.	<i>mālu-ērīs</i> , etc.

¹ Conjugated like *rego*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>vĕl-im</i>	<i>nōl-im</i>	<i>māl-im</i>
<i>vĕl-is</i>	<i>nōl-is</i>	<i>māl-is</i>
<i>vĕl-īt</i>	<i>nōl-īt</i>	<i>māl-īt</i>
<i>vĕl-imūs</i>	<i>nōl-imūs</i>	<i>māl-imūs</i>
<i>vĕl-ītis</i>	<i>nōl-ītis</i>	<i>māl-ītis</i>
<i>vĕl-int</i>	<i>nōl-int</i>	<i>māl-int</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>vel-lem</i>	<i>nol-lem</i>	<i>mal-lem</i>
<i>vel-lēs</i>	<i>nol-lēs</i>	<i>mal-lēs</i>
<i>vel-lēt</i>	<i>nol-lēt</i>	<i>mal-lēt</i>
<i>vel-lēmūs</i>	<i>nol-lēmūs</i>	<i>mal-lēmūs</i>
<i>vel-lētis</i>	<i>nol-lētis</i>	<i>mal-lētis</i>
<i>vel-lent</i>	<i>nol-lent</i>	<i>mal-lent</i>

PERFECT.

<i>vōlu-ĕrim</i>	<i>nōlu-ĕrim</i>	<i>mālu-ĕrim</i>
<i>vōlu-ĕris, etc.</i>	<i>nōlu-ĕris, etc.</i>	<i>mālu-ĕris, etc.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>vōlu-issem</i>	<i>nōlu-issem</i>	<i>mālu-issem</i>
<i>vōlu-issēs, etc.</i>	<i>nōlu-issēs, etc.</i>	<i>mālu-issēs, etc.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

wanting	<i>nōlī</i>	wanting
	<i>nōlītē</i>	

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

<i>nōlītō</i>	<i>nōlītō</i>	<i>nōlītōtē</i>	<i>nōlunto</i>
---------------	---------------	-----------------	----------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>vellē</i>	<i>nollē</i>	<i>mallē</i>
PERFECT.	<i>vōluissē</i>	<i>nōlūissē</i>	<i>māluissē</i>
PRES. PARTIC.	<i>vōlens</i>	<i>nōlens</i>	wanting

There are no gerunds or supines to any of the three verbs.

171. **Volo** means *to be willing* or *to wish*. The three verbs *vōlo*, *nōlo* and *mālo* are naturally followed by an infinitive.

He wishes to please his friends. **Amicis placēre vult.**

172. **Mālo** = *I wish rather, I prefer*. It is often translated in English by *I had rather* and *I would rather*. In translating *I had rather* and *I would rather* into Latin it must be noted that in spite of *had* and *would* they are both present tense. *I had rather die* = *I prefer to die*.

173. The imperative of **nōlo**, *I am unwilling*, is often used with an infinitive to express a **prohibition** instead of **ne** with the perfect subjunctive (R. 37 (b)).

Do not tell-lies = be unwilling to tell lies. **Nōlī mentīrī.**

EXERCISE 115.

Viva voce :—

they are unwilling to come	do not set out
we shall be willing to follow	do not give-hostages, citizens
I preferred to set out	do not fight to-day
do you wish to be serviceable	we have preferred to remain
he had been unwilling to prepare arms	we had rather remain in the city

1. A. 1. O cives, num vultis urbem defendere? 2. Dabant ei quae¹ volebat. 3. Cur Rōmāni cum Helvētiis pacem facere nolebant? 4. Improbi malunt se metui quam amari. 5. Si iniuriam acceperamus, malebamus semper ulcisci quam oblivisci. 6. Si vultis principes esse, castris est vobis utendum, non palaestrā. 7. Militibus qui pecuniam quam agrum accipere maluerunt, Hannibal argentum dedit. 8. Amici Sōcrātem hortabantur ut e carcere fugeret; sed noluit patriae legibus non parēre. 9. Nōlite,

¹ The antecedent of quae, viz., ea = those things, is usually omitted when antecedent and relative are both in the same case (R. 70).

O Romāni, urbem nostram delere; nos volumus obsides dare. 10. Galli dixerunt se velle cum Cæsäre pacem facere. 11. Hi viri mori malebant quam regi iniusto parere. 12. Fabius a hoste metui quam a civibus laudari maluit. 13. Alii muris, alii classe, urbem defendi voluerunt. 14. Cæsāri copiam frumenti miserunt ut ille secum¹ pacem facere vellet. 15. Quod² multi voluerunt, pauci potuerunt,² *ab* (*from*) uno tyranno patriam liberare.

B. 1. He would-rather die than lie. 2. Who prefers to be feared rather-than praised? 3. Do not, O Romans, forget (R. 80) our former valour! 4. The Romans wished to destroy the city of the allies because they had been unwilling to give corn. 5. Why are our allies unwilling to send help? 6. My friend said that he was willing to set out on the third day. 7. Bad men have always been unwilling to admire brave deeds. 8. *Since* (*cum* (R. 61)) the Romans are unwilling to make an end of fighting (§ 222) let us defend our country bravely. 9. Do not, I beg you, advise the allies to fight against the Romans. 10. Our enemies know that we prefer to die rather than yield.

174. *Fēro, ferrē, tūli, lātum, to bear, endure, carry.* *Fero* is conjugated like *rego*, with the following exceptions:—

(a) Final *e* is dropped in the singular active imperative (*fer*) and between *r* and *r* in present-derived tenses, *e.g.*, *fer-rē* (for *ferēre*).

(b) *i* is dropped before *s* and *t*, *e.g.*, *fers* (for *feris*), *fert* (for *ferit*), etc.

The perfect tenses are formed regularly, but the stems *tūl-* and *lāt-* are borrowed from another verb.

¹ The preposition *cum* (R. 72) is affixed to the words *me, te, se, nobis, vobis*, and (sometimes) *quibus*.

² The antecedent *id* is omitted; after *potuerunt* supply *facere*; before the remainder of the clause supply *namely*.

Fēro, ferrē, tūl-i, lātum, to bear, endure, carry.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
fēr-o	fer-am	fēr-ōr	fēr-ār
fer-s	fēr-ās	fer-ris, -rē	fēr-āris, -ārē
fer-t	fēr-āt	fer-tur	fēr-ātūr
fēr-īmūs	fēr-āmūs	fēr-īmūr	fēr-āmūr
fer-tis	fēr-ātīs	fēr-īmīnī	fēr-āminī
fēr-unt	fēr-ant	fēr-untūr	fēr-antūr
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
fēr-ēbam	fer-rem	fēr-ēbār	fer-rēr
fēr-ēbās	fer-rēs	fēr-ēbāris, -ārē	fer-rēris, -ērē
fēr-ēbāt	fer-rēt	fēr-ēbātūr	fer-rētūr
fēr-ēbāmūs	fer-rēmūs	fēr-ēbāmūr	fer-rēmūr
fēr-ēbātīs	fer-rētīs	fēr-ēbāminī	fer-rēmīnī
fēr-ēbant	fer-rent	fēr-ēbantūr	fer-rentūr
FUTURE.		FUTURE.	
fēr-am		fēr-ār	
fēr-ēs		fēr-ēris, -ērē	
fēr-ēt		fēr-ētūr	
fēr-ēmūs		fēr-ēmūr	
fēr-ētīs		fēr-ēmīnī	
fēr-ent		fēr-entūr	
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
tūl-i	tūl-ērim	lātus sum	lātus sim
tūl-istī, etc.	tūl-ērīs, etc.	lātus ēs, etc.	lātus sis, etc.
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
tūl-ērām	tūl-isse	lātus eram	lātus essem
tūl-ērās, etc.	tūl-issēs, etc.	lātus erās, etc.	lātus essēs, etc.
FUTURE PERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
tūl-ēro		lātus ēro	
tūl-ērīs, etc.		lātus ēris, etc.	
IMPERATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	
PRES. fēr	PRES. fēr-ens	PRES. fēr-rē	PARTICIPLE.
fer-tē	FUT. lātūrūs	fēr-īmīnī	PERF. lātus
FUT. fer-to	SUPIN.	fer-tōr	
fer-tōtē	lātum	fer-tōr	
fēr-unto	lātū	fēr-untōr	
INFINITIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
PRES. fer-rē	GERUND.	PRES. fer-ri	GERUNDIVE.
PERF. tūl-issē	fēr-endi, etc.	PERF. lātus essē	fēr-endūs
FUT. lātūrūs essē		FUT. lātum iri	

175. The compounds of *ferō* are conjugated in the same way. The change in the prefixed preposition should be noted in some of these compounds.

af-ferō	(ad-fero)	af-ferrē	at-tūli	al-lātum	bring to
au-ferō	(ab-fero)	au-ferrē	abs-tūli	ab-lātum	carry away
con-ferō	(cum-fero)	con-ferre	con-tūli	col-lātum	bring together
ef-ferō	(ex-fero)	ef-ferrē	ex-tūli	ē-lātum	carry out
in-ferō	(in-fero)	in-ferrē	in-tūli	il-lātum	carry into
of-ferō	(ob ¹ -fero)	of-ferrē	ob-tūli	ob-lātum	offer
per-ferō	(per-fero)	per-ferrē	per-tūli	per-lātum	bear through, endure
prae-ferō	(prae-fero)	prae-ferre	prae-tūli	prae-lātum	prefer
rē-ferō	(re-fero)	rē-ferrē	{ rē-tūli ret-tūli ² }	rē-lātum	bring back

EXERCISE 116.

1. *Viva voce* practice on **confero**, to carry :—

thou carriest	we might carry
he had carried	by carrying (gerund.)
we shall carry	to have carried
he may be carried	we were being carried
thou art being carried	they carry
carry (plural)	to carry
he may have carried	
do not carry	
they have been carried	
we may have been carried	
requiring to be carried	
having been carried	

A. 1. Ante proelium socii impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt. 2. Qui non arma ferre possunt, eos domi (at home)

¹ The preposition *ob* originally meant *towards*, so that *ob-fero* means to carry towards.

² The *t* is sometimes doubled to show lost reduplication; *tūli* = *tētūli*.

relinquemus. 3. Ne unus quidem nostrorum hostium impetum ferre poterat. 4. Rumores crebri ad ducem afferebantur. 5. Hi homines laborem diu tulerant. 6. Tempestate maxima navis nostra ferebatur ad oram Italiae. 7. Noctu ligna contuleramus circa casam in quā quiescebat. 8. Plerique homines pacem bello anteferunt. 9. Sine ullo morbo lumina oculorum amisit, quam calamitatem aequo animo tulit. 10. Illa pestis qui Graeciam infestavit ex Aegypto allatus erat; plerisque septimus aut nonus dies mortem afferebat.

B. 1. The Gauls had carried all things into one place. 2. Who is able to bear with resignation the calamities of war? 3. Do you, friend, prefer bad [things] to good? 4. The Britons had borne help to the Gauls in all [their] wars with Caesar. 5. We shall bear arms against this tyrant. 6. Bear injuries patiently, my son; do not avenge them. 7. Why are you (plural) not bearing help to your allies? 8. Old soldiers can bear wounds bravely. 9. When we had carried all the baggage into the wood we exhorted our men to fight and die bravely. 10. He said that the allies had borne help to him. 11. Trouble (=grief) must be borne.

Rule 83.—After **verbs of motion** the place *to which* is put in the **accusative** with the preposition **ad** (*to*) or **in** (*into*).

With the names of **towns** and **small islands** the **accusative** alone, *without preposition*, is used, and this is the rule with the words **dōmus** (*home*) and **rūs** (*the country*).

He hastens **to Italy**.

In (or **ad**) **Italiam** contendit.

The leader has gone **to Rome**.

Dux Romam ivit.

In summer men go **to the country**. Aestate homines **rus** eunt.

Rule 84.—Some Latin verbs can be used **reflexively**. Thus **conferre**, *to carry*; **se conferre**, *to carry oneself, to betake oneself*.

In conjugating a verb used reflexively care must be taken to use the proper pronoun object.

I betook myself to Athens. Athēnas (R. 83) **me contuli**.

EXERCISE 117.

1. *Viva voce* practice on **aufero**, to carry away, to take away:—

he takes away	they had been taken away
we took away	they will be taken away
to have taken away	thou hast taken away
they were taking away	thou art being taken away
it has been taken away	taking away (participle)
we shall be taken away	to be about to take away

A. 1. Num mors sensus omnino omnes auferet? 2. Mors ei (R. 63) somno similis est qui placatissimam quietem affert. 3. Campi flumini adiacentes feraces erant et laetas messes ferebant. 4. Incolae huius regionis sine dolore vim frigoris perferunt. 5. Duces sociorum, cum regi dona attulissent, Athēnas se contulerunt. 6. Servus, cum tempestate maxima Naxum ferretur, dominum hortabatur ut vitam suam servaret. 7. Xerxes maximis exercitibus terrā marique bellum Graeciae (§ 211) intulit. 8. Multi morti se offerunt qui dolorem patienter non ferunt. 9. Agēsilaüs in Aegypto mortuus est; eius amici corpus Spartam rettulerunt. 10. Eo tempore lupus vigili¹ gladium abstulisse dicitur.

B. 1. These fields have always borne large harvests. 2. What are you bringing, boys? We are bringing many beautiful² stones. 3. By the tempest we were carried to the coast of Italy. 4. Can you, citizens, bear the cold of winter with-resignation?

¹ This word is dative case (see § 210, p. 205) and is translated by *from*.

² Say *many and* (que) *beautiful*.

5. This general had carried war into (= in, § 359) all the islands. 6. The girl offers flowers to her mother. 7. Does not death bring rest to us all? 8. Caesar is dead; his friends will carry his body [back] home. 9. The sentinel reports that (§ 136) the Gauls are betaking themselves into the woods. 10. When Āgēsīlāus had carried war into Asia he was recalled home by the citizens.

Rule 85.—The **ablative case** is used to express a **quality** which describes a person.

He was of **short stature**. *Staturā fuit humili.*

Rule 86.—The object, when it can be clearly understood from what has preceded, is frequently omitted in Latin. See below.*

EXERCISE 118.

ĀGESILĀUS, KING OF THE SPARTANS.

1. *He becomes King.*

Āgēsīlāus fuit frater Lācēdaemōniōrum regis. Hic rex, moriens, filium unum reliquerat. Ille de honore regni cum Āgēsīlao contendit. Agesilāus autem antelatus est.

Āgēsīlāus fuit *staturā humili* et corpore exiguo et claudus altero¹ pede, quae res nonnullam deformitatem afferebat. Stulti, cum eius faciem intuerentur, contemnebant.* Ei autem qui virtutes eius noverant, non poterant admirari * satis.

2. *His Victories.*

Āgēsīlāus persuasit Lācēdaemōniis ut bellum in Āsiam inferrent. Ibi Tissaphernem *apud (at)* Sardes vicit et in interiorem Asiam penetravit.

Postea in Graeciam se contulit quod Athēnienses et eorum

¹ How many feet has a man? (§ 104, p. 132.)

socii bellum contra Lacedaemonios parabant. Illos apud Cōrōnēam aggressus est. Ibi vero atrox proelium factum est. Agēsilaus non semel vulneratus, victoriā potitus est.

3. *His Clemency.*

Post victoriam apud Cōrōnēam plerique ex fuga se in templum Minervae coniecerant. Agēsilaus, etsi iratus erat omnibus qui adversus eum arma tulerant, tamen irae religionem antetulit et eos violari vetuit.

4. *He goes to Egypt.*

Octogesimo aetatis anno in Aegyptum se contulerat ut Tacho auxilium ferret. Cum fama de eius adventu ad duces perlata esset, celeriter munera cuiusque generis sunt allata. Cum multis verbis, hi duces ei dederunt ea quae attulerant. Is autem, unguenta coronasque inter servos partitus est; ipse nihil praeter ea quae tempus desiderabat, accepit; cetera referri iussit.

5. *His Death.*

Ex Aegypto revertens, in portum qui Mēnēlaus vocatur, pervenerat et ibi mortuus est. Eius amici corpus Spartam perferre voluerunt. Quod mel non habebant, cerā circumfuderunt (§ 213) atque ita domum retulerunt (R. 83).

176. *Ēo, irē, iv-ī or i-ī, itum, to go.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
ēo	ēam	iv-ī	iv-ērim
īs	ēās	iv-istī	iv-ērīs
it	ēāt	iv-it	iv-ērīt
imūs	ēāmūs	iv-imūs	iv-ērīmūs
ītīs	ēātīs	iv-istīs	iv-ērītīs
ēunt	ēant	iv-erunt, -ere	iv-erint
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
ibam	irem	iv-eram	iv-issem
ibās	irēs	iv-erās	iv-issēs
ibāt	irēt	iv-erāt	iv-issēt
ibāmūs	irēmūs	iv-erāmūs	iv-issēmūs
ibātīs	irētīs	iv-erātīs	iv-issētīs
ibant	irent	iv-erant	iv-issent
FUTURE.		FUTURE.	
ibo		iv-ero	
ibīs		iv-erīs	
ibīt		iv-erīt	
ibīmūs		iv-erīmūs	
ibītīs		iv-erītīs	
ibunt		iv-erint	
IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
PRES. ī		PRES. iens (gen. euntis)	
itē		FUT. itūrus, -a, -um	
FUT. ito			
itō			
itōtē			
eunto			
INFINITIVES.		GERUND.	
PRES. irē		GEN. eundi	
PERF. ivissē or iisse or isse		ACC. eundum, etc.	
FUT. itūrus esse			
		SUPINE.	
		itum	

NOTES ON THE VERB¹ EO.

177. 1. The stem of the verb is -i, which changes to e before a, o and u.
 2. The perfect tenses sometimes omit v from the perfect stem; thus i-i, i-isti, i-it; i-imūs. i-istis, i-ērunt, etc.
 3. The compounds of eo use this contracted form of perfect more than the full form; thus transeo, to cross, perfect transi-i.
 4. The compounds of eo are conjugated like eo. Though the verb eo is intransitive, some of its compounds become transitive from their sense; thus transeo, to cross, adeo, to approach. Such compounds of eo have the full passive voice; thus transēor, transiris, transitur, etc., perfect transitus sum, etc., present infinitive transiri, gerundive transiendus.
 5. The verb eo like all intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive (§ 255), e.g., present itur¹=it is gone, i.e., they go; perfect itum est, infinitive iri (see § 232).

178. They used such speed that they finished the bridge in thirty days. Here the dependent clause *that . . . days* denotes consequence.

Rule 87.—In a clause denoting consequence the verb in Latin is put in the **subjunctive**, although in English it is indicative.

They used such speed that they	Tantā celeritate usi sunt ut
finished the bridge in thirty	pontem triginta diebus
days.	conficerent.

Recapitulate §§ 384, 388, pp. 255-6, and RR. 90-1, p. 197.

EXERCISE 119.

Viva voce :—

1. They were returning into the city with their friends.
2. We shall cross the river by night.
3. They are going out of (= from) the city.
4. Many perished in that fight.
5. No one except traders had visited the Britons.
6. He exhorts us to go out of our native land.
7. Go, soldier; announce the victory to the Romans.

¹ Notice the quantity—active it, passive itur. Compare the 3rd person singular of all verbs, e.g., amāt, amātur.

8. I advised them to return home.
9. All had perished by disease.
10. Let us enter the city with the allies.

A. 1. Multa milia militum ex patriā exierant; nemo eorum rediit. 2. Hannibal princeps in proelium ibat, ultimus excedebat. 3. Plures (§ 43) perierunt fame quam ferro. 4. Lŷcurgus vetuit ne mulieres noctu e domo exirent, nisi curru; ne, cum peregre irent, plura quam tria vestimenta secum ferrent. 5. Tarquinius periit insidiis Anci filiorum. 6. Caesar Lābiēnum cum cohortibus sex *subsidio* (as a help) nostris mittit. Ipse reliquos adit et eos hortatur ut strenue pugnent. 7. Rhōdānus nonnullis locis vado transītur. 8. Persuadet sociis ut e castris exeant, ut ad hostes transeant. 9. Flumen ex nivibus creverat ut omnino vado non posse transiri videretur (R. 79). 10. Dominus maluit perire quam navem relinquere.

B. 1. The wretched soldiers perished from (= by) cold and hunger. 2. Alexander, *since* (*cum*) he wished to seize all the coast of that sea, had crossed into Egypt. 3. In the river were many islands into which the farmers, by swimming (§ 222), were crossing. 4. The leaders exhorted the Helvetii to go out from their territory. 5. This river can be crossed [in] some places by a ford. 6. They said that they had returned home *with* (*cum*) great booty. 7. We are about to perish if our friends cannot (R. 40) bring us help. 8. He used such speed that the river was crossed [in] three hours (ablative). 9. Go, friends; announce our arrival to the allies. 10. To-morrow we shall go to the country; after a few days we shall return to Rome.

EXERCISE 120.

A. 1. Ad Alpes Hannibal venit quae Italiam ab Galliā dividunt, quas nemo ante eum cum exercitu transierat. Itinera muniit, effecitque ut eā viā elephāntus ornatus ire posset, quā antea unus homo inermis vix poterat rēpere.

2. Lēōnidas, dux Spartānōrum, duxit exercitum contra Xer-

zem, regem Persarum, qui bellum in Graeciam inferre voluit. Ad Thermopylas Leônidas cum trecentis militibus adventum Persarum expectabat. Spartani hostium impetum fregit donec transfuga quidam secretum callem in altero montis latere Barbaris indicavit. Leônidas, oppressus a tergo, periit cum suis.

3. In hoc ipso loco lapideus leo positus est, mortuorum virtutis monumentum, et constitutus est tumulus cum hoc titulo: "I, viator, nuntia Spartae nos hic pro patria cecidisse".

179. **Fīo, fīērī, factus sum, to be made, to become.**

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	
		PRESENT.	PRESENT. fī, fītē	
fīo		fīam	PARTICIPLES.	
fīs		fīās		
fīt		fīāt		
fīmūs		fīāmūs		
fītīs		fīātīs	GERUNDIVE. fāciendūs, -a, -um	
fīunt		fīant		
		IMPERFECT.	INFINITIVE.	
fīēbam		fīērem	PRESENT. fīērī	
fīēbās		fīērēs	PERFECT. factus essē	
fīēbāt		fīērēt	FUTURE. factum irī	
fīēbāmūs		fīērēmūs	PERFECT TENSES.	
fīēbātīs		fīērētīs		
fīēbant		fīērēt	INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		FUTURE.	factus sum	factus sim
fīam			etc.	etc.
fīēs			PLUPERFECT.	
fīēt				
fīēmūs			factus ēram	factus essem
fīētīs			etc.	etc.
fīent			FUTURE-PERFECT.	
			factus ēro	—

180. **Fio** is used as the passive of **facio**. The perfect tenses use the past participle **factus** and the verb **sum**. They follow the regular rules of the passive voice, § 70.

 THE CASE AFTER PASSIVE VERBS.

181. We saw in § 20 (c) that the verb *esse*, *to be*, is used to couple two nouns which stand for the same thing, *e.g.*, *Britain is an island*. Both nouns are then in the same case.

Other **coupling verbs** are *fio*, *to be made*, *to become*; *videor*, *to seem*, and many passive verbs.

Rule 88.—Verbs like *fio* and **passive verbs of making, calling**, etc., take the same case after them as before them.

Caesar was made consul. **Caesar consul factus est.**

182. The noun used after such verbs as in R. 88 are called **complements** because they **complete** the meaning of the word to which they are attached. A noun complement can be attached to the object of a verb and then it is naturally in the accusative case.

They appointed Labienus **leader**. Labienum **ducem** constituerunt.

183. The verb **facio** (both active and passive) with the comparative **certior** (= more certain) is used in the sense of *to inform*. This expression is often followed by an accusative and infinitive (see sentence 8, Exercise 121, A.).

They **inform** Caesar of the arrival of De Helvetiorum adventu
the Helvetii. Caesarem **certiorem**
(§ 182) **faciunt**.

Caesar **was informed** of the arrival De Helvetiorum adventu
of the Helvetii. Caesar **certior** (R. 88)
factus est.

184. *Fio* is sometimes used in the sense of *to happen* or *to follow*. It is then followed by a clause of **consequence** (R. 87).

From these things it **followed** that His rebus **fiebat** ut minus
they wandered less widely. late vagarentur.

EXERCISE 121.

Viva voce. Turn into Latin:—

1. The boy will become a soldier.
2. They have become invisible.
3. Fires were being made in the camp.
4. Bridges are now being made.
5. We have appointed him king.
6. He has been appointed king.
7. These men are called Gauls.
8. How do men become friends?
9. He trains his body that he may become strong.
10. The general *ordered* (*iubeo*) it to be done.

A. 1. Athēnienses murum aedificare voluerunt; Lacedaemōnii legatos Athēnas miserunt qui id fieri vetarent (§ 231). 2. Hannibal imperavit ut quam minime in castris ignis fieret. 3. Cum haec audita essent, ex castris Gallorum fit fuga. 4. Rēgulus senatui persuasit ut pax cum Poenis fieret. 5. Midas erat rex Phrygiae; *quidquid* (*whatever*) tetigerat, aurum fiebat, etiam cibi. 6. Perseus accepit a (*from*) Plūtōne galeam, *per* (*by means of*) quam invisus fiebat. 7. In omnibus locis magna caedes facta erat. 8. Caesārem certiores fecerunt se e suis finibus exire velle. 9. Caesāri Labiēnus fidelis esse videbatur. 10. Incolae huius regionis nostrā linguā Galli appellantur. 11. Profectio similis fugae videbatur. 12. Amicus appellatus erat a senatu Populi Romani.

B. 1. How did Midas become rich? 2. In that year Cicero had become consul. 3. The leader was informed that (§ 136) the cavalry had crossed the river. 4. Let us persuade the Senate so that a treaty may be made with our allies. 5. The man has two sons; one has been made consul this year, the other will be made consul next year. 6. Caesar ordered a bridge to be made. 7. You will become strong if you exercise your body. 8. Many fires were not made that the camp might become invisible to the

enemy. 9. He said that a bridge must be made. 10. Soon they will go to the country with their friends.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

185. A perfect participle and a noun (or pronoun) agreeing with it are often used to describe the circumstances under which an action is done. In Latin the **participle** and **noun** are put in the **ablative case**, the construction being called the **ablative absolute**.

The city having been plundered, Urbe direptā, milites in the soldiers returned to camp. castra redierunt.

186. The phrase which is translated by the ablative absolute is equal to a dependent clause beginning with *when, as, etc.* Thus the above sentence means *when the city had been plundered* the soldiers, etc.

EXERCISE 122.

Viva voce. Give the past participle of *supero, relinquo, amitto, interficio, facio, extrahō, finio, do, accipio, nuntio, deleo.*

Recapitulate R. 56 and § 70.

* * * Translate the following phrases by a noun and a perfect participle, i.e., *literally*; then turn the phrase into a clause beginning with some suitable conjunction, *when, as, etc.* :—

- A. 1. Gallis superatis, consul exercitum in castra reduxit.
 2. Alpibus superatis, Hannibal in Italia cum Romanis bellum gessit. 3. Castris relictis, milites in silvam fugerunt. 4. Armis impedimentisque amissis, socii in nostra castra se contulerunt.
 5. Nemo, illo interfecto, se tutum putabat. 6. Societate cum Gallis facta, Helvētīi proficisci statuerunt. 7. Ēpāmīnondas in eo proelio hasta vulneratus est; ferro extracto, confestim mortuus est. 8. Finito bello Pūnīco, Rōmāni legatos ad Ptōlōymaeum, Aegypti regem, miserunt. 9. Obsidibus datis, Rōmāni pacem cum Gallis faciunt. 10. Hoc responso dato, legati discesserunt.

- B. 1. The Romans having been conquered, Hannibal prepared to take the city. 2. Caesar, his enemies having been overcome, hastened into Britain. 3. Wood (pl.) having been collected, the

soldiers made many fires. 4. Hostages having been received, Caesar allowed the leaders to depart. 5. The victory having been announced, the soldiers raised a great shout. 6. A great number having been killed, the rest fled into the camp. 7. The leaders having been called together, Caesar explains his plans. 8. The town having been destroyed, the citizens hid themselves in the woods. 9. Peace having at length been made, the farmers begin to till their fields. 10. The bridge having been made, Caesar led his troops [across] with the greatest speed.

In the following sentences turn the italicised dependent clauses into phrases consisting of a noun and a perfect passive participle. Thus, **When Caesar had conquered the Gauls** he set out into Britain = **Caesar, the Gauls having been conquered,** set out into Britain.

C. 1.* *When Caesar had conquered the Gauls* he set out into Britain. 2. *Because they had lost their baggage,* they returned to the town. 3. Crassus, *when he had received many hostages,* hastened into the territory of the Gauls. 4. *As they had made peace with the Romans,* the Gauls were able to till their lands. 5. *When the signal had been given for (ad) the fight* the soldiers raised a great shout. 6. *When we had captured their leader,* the slaves at once fled. 7. *After the war with the Helvetii was finished,* the ambassadors of the other States came to Caesar. 8. *When Xerxes had overcome the Greeks* he immediately set out for (= to) Athens. 9. *When the camp had been pitched (= placed)* the soldiers made fires. 10. *As peace had been made* the allies returned home.

187. English has two perfect participles, e.g. :—

Perfect participle active. *having conquered.*

” ” passive. *having been conquered.*

188. Latin, except in the case of deponent verbs, has no perfect participle active.

189. To translate the English perfect participle active into the **ablative absolute**, the phrase must be made passive. Thus, **having conquered the Gauls** becomes *the Gauls having been conquered.*

190. *CAUTION.—If, however, the Latin verb is deponent there is no need for this change, because the perfect participle of deponents is active. In these cases, therefore, the ablative absolute is not used.

Caesar, **having conquered the Gauls** (§ 189), set out for Britain. Caesar, **Gallis victis**, ad Britanniam profectus est.

Caesar, **having promised** (§ 190) many things, sent the ambassadors home again. Caesar, **multa pollicitus**, legatos domum remisit.

191. NOTE.—The perfect participles of a few deponents, *adeptus*, *expertus*, *mentitus*, *partitus*, etc., are sometimes used in a passive sense as well as in an active.

192. The ablative absolute is also used with **present participles** and with certain **nouns and adjectives**.

NOTE.—When the present participle is used in the ablative absolute the ablative ends in -e (see R. 47).

Themistocles, **while Xerxes was reigning**, crossed into Asia. Themistocles, **Xerxe regnante**, in Asiam transiit.

While that man was¹ leader the Romans always conquered. Illo duce semper Romani vincebant.

The father being¹ dead, the sons returned home. Patre mortuo, filii domum redierunt.

193. Note the following examples, which are all capable of more than one translation:—

eo duce	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{under his leadership,} \\ \text{with him for leader,} \\ \text{when he leads, etc.} \\ \text{with me as judge,} \\ \text{in my judgment (or opinion),} \\ \text{at my instigation,} \\ \text{by my advice.} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right\} \rightarrow \text{learn}$
me iudice		
me auctore		

learn

¹ As the verb *esse* has no present participle, the noun and adjective are put in the ablative absolute.

194. One of the commonest ways of indicating the year in which an event took place is to use the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute.

When **Fabius and Virginius** were **Fabio et Virginio consulibus**.

There is one important caution to be observed in translating the English participle into ablative absolute.

195. * * Whenever the noun used with the participle can be made the subject or object of the principal verb the **ablative absolute cannot be used**. Thus, in **The city having been plundered** the enemy burnt it, *city* (for which word *it* stands) can be made the object of *burnt*, i.e., The enemy burnt the **plundered city**, i.e., *Urbem direptam* hostes incenderunt.

EXERCISE 123.

Viva voce. Put into Latin:—

1. *Having heard these things* the leader returned into camp.
2. The Gauls, *having waged war many years*, at length made a treaty with their enemies.
3. The leader, *having said*¹ *many things*, persuaded the soldiers to obey.
4. *Under my leadership* you will conquer.
5. *In my opinion* we shall set out immediately.
6. *The leaders having been captured*, the king killed them.
7. *If he perishes* we shall all perish.
8. *With Fabius leading*, the Romans conquered.
9. *When Crassus and Fabius were consuls* we were always victors.
10. *This having been said*, the consuls returned to Rome.

A. 1. Nonnulli dicunt Thēmistōclem, Xerxe regnante, in Asiam transiisse. 2. Tarquinius bellum Romanis intulit, auxilium ei ferente Porsēnā. 3. Magnam classem nactus, Athēnas rediit. 4. Repulsi a servis, domini in urbem refugerunt. 5. Barbari, fugā comparatā, hortantibus sociis, se in silvas ab-

¹ Use *loquor* (§ 190).

diderant. 6. Hectōre Œuce, Trōiāni e moenibus erumpebant. 7. Nullo viso hoste, equites in castra redierunt. 8. Dicunt in eo proelio duo milia et octingentos hostium occisos esse, non plus quingentis Romanorum amissis. 9. Omnibus sarcinis abiectis, iubet milites aquā se et iumenta onerare. 10. Omnibus insciis, eō, ubi rex erat, venerant.

B. 1. At that time Cyrus, his father being dead, was preparing war against his brother. 2. Having suffered many evils for his country, he was now dying. 3. Under the leadership of Fabius the Romans defeated the Carthaginians. 4. When Fabius and Virginius were consuls three hundred nobles undertook a war against the enemy. 5. Epaminondas, having been severely wounded, died. When he perished (= him perishing), the power of his native-land perished. 6. In his absence, they had undertaken a great war. 7. Having drawn their swords, the foot-soldiers made a rush on (= in) the slaves. 8. Having made many fires the barbarians raised great shouts all the night long. 9. The ship was useless for sailing, ropes and anchors having been lost. 10. After the battle at *Cannæ* (*ad Cannas*), their armies having been destroyed, the Romans thought that (§ 136) Hannibal would come to Rome.

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

196. When a question stands by itself it is called a *direct* or *independent* question, e.g., *Who conquered the Gauls?*

197. A question is, however, frequently made the *object*¹ of the verb of another clause called the principal clause, e.g., They ask *who conquered the Gauls*. Such a question is called an indirect question or a *dependent question*. Thus:—

<i>Principal clause</i>	They ask
<i>Dependent question</i>	who conquered the Gauls.

¹ The dependent question can also be the subject of a verb, or in apposition to the subject of a verb (see § 201, p. 198).

Rule 89.—In Latin the verb of a dependent question must be in the *subjunctive mood*.

They ask <i>who</i> conquered <i>the Gauls</i> .	Rogant quis Gallos vicerit .
--	--

197 (a). A question, whether dependent or not, is recognised by the *interrogative* word which introduces it. Thus, He asks *why* they returned; We wonder *whether* he will come; He asks *how great* the wall was.

The word for **whether** in dependent questions is *num*¹; the word for **whether . . . not** is *nonne*.

198. The tense of the verb in the dependent question depends on the tense of the verb in the **principal clause**. For this purpose tenses are divided into two classes:—

- (a) Tenses which do not refer to the past, *i.e.*, **primary tenses**.
- (b) Tenses which do refer to the past, *i.e.*, **historic or past tenses**.

(a) PRIMARY TENSES.	(b) HISTORIC TENSES.
Present indicative.	Imperfect indicative.
Future indicative.	Pluperfect indicative.
Imperative mood.	Perfect <i>without</i> have (<i>i.e.</i> ,
Perfect <i>with</i> have.	the simple past).

199. The tense of the dependent question can be determined by reference to the two following rules, which are of very great importance:—

Rule 90.—If the verb of the Principal clause is one of the **primary tenses**, the verb of the dependent question will be either **present subjunctive** or **perfect subjunctive**.

Rule 91.—If the verb of the Principal clause is one of the **historic or past tenses**, the verb of the dependent question will be either **imperfect subjunctive** or **pluperfect subjunctive**.

Examples of Rules 90 and 91:—

- (1) He asks whether the farmer Rogat num agricola terram
ploughs the land. **aret**.

Here there is no difficulty because *ploughs* is present tense.

Num in dependent questions no longer implies the answer *no* (§ 79) as it does in independent questions.

- (2) He asks why the farmer **did** *Rogat cur agricola terram non*
not **plough** the land. **araverit.**

In this case the principal verb *asks* is present tense, therefore R. 90 is used, and the verb of the dependent question is either *present* or *perfect subjunctive*. Clearly *did plough* could not be present, and so it must be perfect subjunctive.

- (3) He was asking whether the farmer *Rogabat* **nonne** agricola
did not plough the land. **terram araret.**

Here, because the principal verb *was asking* is a historic tense, *did plough* will be either imperfect or pluperfect. If *did plough* means *was ploughing* it will be imperfect, if it means *had ploughed* it will be pluperfect.

NOTE.—In a dependent question the simple past tense is often pluperfect in meaning. He asked whether they *received* the letter means He asked whether they *had received* the letter.

- (4) He was asking how the city *Rogabat quomodo urbs* **ser-**
had been preserved. **vata esset.**

Here the verb of the dependent question *had been preserved* is pluperfect.

* * 200. CAUTION.—One of the commonest difficulties in dependent questions arises from a misunderstanding of the function of the principal verb. The principal verb need not be a verb meaning to ask. Many other verbs are used with dependent questions. Thus:—

I ask why they came late.

Tell me why they came late.

He explains why they came late.

I know why they came late.

In all these examples the dependent question *why they came late* is recognised as a question because it begins with the interrogative word *why*, and it is a dependent question in each case because it is the object of a verb.

201. A dependent question can even be used after an impersonal expression like *it is uncertain*, etc. Thus, *It is uncertain why they came late*.

202. The commonest verbs which are followed by dependent questions are :—

rōgo	<i>I ask</i>	cognosco	<i>I find out</i>
quaero	<i>I enquire</i>	scio	<i>I know</i>
intellēgo	<i>I perceive</i>	nescio	<i>I do not know</i>
dōceo	<i>I show (explain, teach)</i>	ēnuntio	<i>I announce</i>
ostendo	<i>I show (explain)</i>	rēnuntio	<i>I bring back word (I report)</i>

The commonest interrogative words are *whether, why, when, where, how, who, which, what*

EXERCISE 124.

Recapitulate §§ 73-80.

In the following sentences pick out the dependent questions ; then find by Rules 90 and 91 what tense must be used ; then translate :—

A. 1. He asks why you are hastening into the city. 2. He asks why you hastened into the city. 3. They were enquiring whether the Romans had conquered the Gauls. 4. The messenger reported what he had seen. 5. He perceives why the soldiers remain in the camp. 6. Caesar shows what he wishes to be done. 7. We do not ask whether they have armed the slaves. 8. He finds out why they did not plunder the town. 9. Ask whether the man is not a Roman. 10. Ask who has taught this boy.

B. 1. They asked whether the captive was not bound. 2. We do not ask whether the enemy has been seen. 3. Let us find out whether the hill was seized. 4. Tell me whether the boy is being well taught. 5. They had enquired whether the messenger had not arrived. 6. He perceives how the messengers have been captured. 7. They were asking whether the gold was being carried into the town. 8. The citizens were not able to say why they had been called together. 9. He does not know how many soldiers have been wounded. 10. I know whether the boy is being punished.

THE FUTURE IN DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

203. He asks me *when I shall plough my land*. Here the verb of the dependent question, *shall plough*, is future. As Latin has no future subjunctive, the **future participle** and the subjunctive of the verb **esse** is used, thus: He asks me when *I am about to plough my land*.

He asks me when I shall plough	Me rogat quando terram
my land (= am about to plough).	araturus sim.
He asked me when I should plough	Me rogabat quando ter-
my land (= was about to plough).	ram araturus essem.

NOTE.—1. The tense of *esse* follows Rules 90 and 91, p. 197.

2. The future participle agrees in gender and number with the subject of the dependent question, R. 48.

He asks when the girls will	Rogat quando puellae ven-
come.	turae sint.

3. The English of the future dependent question varies. thus: He asked them *when they would come*, or *when they were going to come*, or *when they were about to come*, all these forms being translated alike in Latin.

204. When a verb, e.g., *possum*, has no future participle the future¹ in a dependent question is translated by *futurum sit* (or *esset*, etc.) followed by *ut* and the subjunctive.

He asks when you will be able to	Rogat quando futurum sit ut
come, i.e., when it is about to	possis venire.
be that you may be able to	
come.	

¹The same applies to the future passive in dependent questions. thus:—

He asks when the fields will be	Rogat quando futurum sit ut
ploughed.	agri arentur.

EXERCISE 125.

Translate:—

A. 1. They ask whether we shall come to-morrow. 2. Tell me where they will pitch the camp. 3. We shall enquire what our friends are going to do. 4. Do you know whether they will arm the slaves? 5. The spies were finding out whether the army was about to fortify the place (pl.). 6. We perceived where ~~they were~~ going to pitch the camp. 7. He enquired why the forces were going to cross the river. 8. Ask who is going to teach this boy. 9. No one knows when they will capture the city. 10. We must ask how long the women will remain in the town.

B. 1. Let us enquire whether the mother has been obeyed (§ 60). 2. The leader asked why the old soldier had not spoken. 3. Tell me what you wish. 4. They find out when the enemy will set out. 5. The soldier reported what he had seen. 6. He does not know when they will be able to pitch their camp. 7. He announces to the enemy that the Romans will set out to-morrow. 8. Who knows who was consul in that year? 9. Do you know what is being done? 10. He asked why I preferred to remain in the town.

EXERCISE 126.

A. 1. Ēpāminondas, vulneratus, rogavit utra *pars* (*side*) vicisset. 2. Pōrus, rex Indorum, ab Alexandro interrogatus quomodo tractari vellet, "Regie," respondit. 3. Nostra consilia quaeque (§ 364) in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiant. 4. Intellego cum quanto periculo id fecerim. 5. Quaerebat *ex* (*from*) eis quae civitates in armis essent. 6. Explorator renuntiat quae viderit. 7. Lacedaemoniī non quaerebant *quam* (*how*) multi, sed ubi essent hostes. 8. Dic mihi num Rōmānus civis sis. 9. Incertum est quando domos nostras visuri simus. 10. Nescimus quid agendum sit.

207. NOTES.—1. In both dependent and independent questions **utrum** and **-ne** are sometimes omitted, **an** standing alone.

It is uncertain whether he is *Incertum est beatus an*
happy or wretched. *miser sit.*

2. Sometimes **-ne** is used in place of **an**, without any preceding interrogative word.

It is uncertain whether he is *Incertum est beatus miserne*
happy or wretched. *sit.*

CAUTIONS.—1. The word for **or** in questions is **an**; *aut* or *vel* can never be used in questions.

2. **Num** is only used in single questions; **utrum** is the word for **whether** in double questions.

208. Nescio an. The phrase **nescio an**, *I do not know whether*, is an apparent exception to § 205. The phrase, however, is elliptical, thus: *nescio (utrum haec dixerit) an haec non dixerit*. Thus **nescio an** has come to mean *I do not know whether* in the sense of *I rather think*.

I do not know whether he said *Nescio an non haec dixerit.*
this = **I rather think** he did
not say this.

I do not know whether he did *Nescio an haec dixerit.*
not say this = **I rather think**
he said this.

Note the use of **non** with **nescio an** and compare § 391.

Rule 92.—When two subjects joined by *or* are used the verb agrees in number and person with the second, *i.e.*, with the one nearest to it.

He asks whether **you** or your *Rogat utrum tu an frater*
brother came yesterday. *tuus heri venerit.*

EXERCISE 127.

Viva voce. Turn into Latin :—

1. Is he in the garden or in the field? 2. Will they carry the gold into the temple or into the house? 3. Do you prefer flowers or fruit? 4. Shall you or I (R. 92) go? 5. Did the Romans or the Carthaginians conquer? 6. Let us enquire whether the son or the daughter loved him *more* (*plus*). 7. They do not know whether the Carthaginians or the Romans conquered. 8. The spy was not able to report whether the enemy was going to cross the river or not. 9. He asks whether I wish these things to be done or not. 10. Who knows whether they were dearer to their father or their mother?

A. 1. Magna fuit contentio **utrum** moenibus se defenderent an obviam hostibus irent. 2. Interfuit Hannibalis (§ 305), capta an (§ 207 (1)) tradita, Nola poteretur.¹ 3. Haud facile fuit discernere utrum imperatori an exercitui carior esset Hannibal. 4. Voluit experiri verum falsumne esset relatum. 5. Cum Gallum in custodiam dedisset, et praefectus quaesisset (§ 62) quomodo servari vellet, rex nihil respondit; nondum enim statuerat, servaret eum, necne. 6. Difficile erat intellectu (§ 228) utrum eum amici magis vererentur an amarent. 7. Paternae tuus an mater aegrotat? 8. *A* (*from*) me quaerebat vellemne secum in castra proficisci. 9. *Apud* (*among*) Germanos consuetudo erat ut matres-familiae sortibus et vaticinationibus declarent utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne. 10. Non dicebat utrum traditor igni statim necaretur an *in* (*for*) aliud tempus reservaretur.

B. 1. He does not know whether this State promised many or few men. 2. They asked the soldiers what they could carry

¹ From *pōtior*, which though of the fourth conjugation has some forms according to the third, e.g., *indico.*, *pōtītūr*, *pōtīmūr*; *impf. subjun.*, *pōtērer* or *pōtīrer*.

with them. 3. The friends of Socrates asked him how he wished to be buried? 4. He does not know whether his father or mother is ill. 5. Who asks whether we must run or fight (§ 152)? 6. It is uncertain whether they will set out on the same day or not. 7. Who asks whether good citizens are not serviceable to the State? 8. No one has informed me whether the captives have escaped or not. 9. Did Fabius prefer to be feared by the enemy or to be praised by the citizens? 10. The spies reported that (§ 136) the Gauls had found out what (*plur.*) was being done in our camp.

THE DATIVE OF THE PERSON INTERESTED.

209. Many verbs which take an accusative require for their complete meaning the mention of some person who is **concerned in or interested in or affected by** the action. Thus, **I give money to the boy.** The name of the person interested or concerned in the matter is put in the **dative case**.

This is often called the **dative of advantage or disadvantage**, because the action is always either an advantage or a disadvantage to the person concerned.

210. The preposition used in English to denote the person concerned in the action is by no means always *to* or *for*, as will be seen from the following examples :—

He gives money to the boy.	Puero pecuniam dat.
He cast great fear on all.	Omnibus maximum timorem iniecit.
He demands hostages from the Gauls.	Gallis obsides imperat.
He places guards over the King.	Regi custodes ponit.
He places Labienus in command of the army.	Exercitui Labienum praeficit.

211. This use of the **dative of the person concerned** is very common with verbs compounded with prepositions.

As such verbs are usually used in two ways it will be necessary to distinguish carefully.

(a) When a verb compounded with a preposition is used of **things**, *i.e.*, in its strictly literal sense, the **preposition is frequently repeated followed by its proper case.**

(b) When the compound verb is followed by the name of a person, the **dative of the person concerned** is mostly used. Thus: **ē-ripĕre**, compounded of *ex* and *rāpĕre*, to snatch out of or away.

(a) Literal use with **preposition repeated** :—

He snatched the birds out of the nest. *Aves ex nido eripuit.*

(b) With **dative of the person concerned** :—

He escaped (= *snatched himself away*) *Custodi se eripuit.*
from the guard.

212. A similar use of the dative of the **person concerned** corresponds in English to a **possessive case** or a **possessive pronoun.**

They threw themselves at **Caesar's** *Caesāri ad pedes se proiē-*
feet. *cērunt.*

213. NOTE.—A few verbs like **dono**, *I present*, **circumdo**, *I surround*, have two constructions. We can say *They surround the city (acc.) with a wall (abl.)*, or *They carry round a wall (acc.) to the city (dat.)*.

EXERCISE 128.

A. 1. Hic rex populo Romano bellum intulerat. 2. Anno primo, expulsis regibus, consules fuerunt Brūtus et Tarquīnius: sed **Tarquīnio**¹ statim dignitas sublata est. 3. Minos, Crētensium rex, **Atheniensibus** duram legem imposuit, scilicet

¹ Because the Romans could not bear to have anyone of the name of Tarquīnius in office (see § 7, p. 141).

quotannis septeni adolescentes et septenae virgines in Crētā mitti debebant. 4. In proelio perierat Lysander, itaque territi, Lacedaemonii, ut hosti peritum ducem opponerent, Agēsilaum revocarunt (§ 62). 5. Dārium amici hortantur ut equum conscendat et se hosti fugā eripiat. 6. Alexander Magnus, moriens, anulum **de** digito **detractum**, Perdicae dedit. 7. Caesar custodes Dumnōrigi ponit ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur scire possit. 8. Volusēnum equitatu Caesar praefecit. 9. Rōmulus urbem aedificavit quam Romam vocavit. Huic urbi murum circumdedit. 10. Ea hieme multa prodigia facta sunt; in Gallia lupus vigili gladium ex vagina abstulit.

B. 1. At that time the Romans were making war on the Gauls. 2. They had taken (= snatched) [their] liberty from the Aedui. 3. Having conquered the Gauls he imposed tribute on their allies. 4. He wished to make war on the king of the island. 5. The soldier ought to take-away the sword from the little boy. 6. The power was taken from the consuls. 7. The citizens presented the leader with a golden crown. 8. This took from Hannibal all hope of conquering. 9. They were surrounding the city with a ditch. 10. The boys took-down nests from the tree; their companions took the nests from the boys.

DATIVE CASE (CONTINUED).

214. The verb **esse** is used with a dative to denote possession.

I have a horse. **Mihi** est equus.

215. The **dative** is used especially with verbs like *to be, to give, to come, etc.*, to denote **purpose**.

He sent the tenth legion **as a help** **Misit** decimam legionem **auxilio** nostris.¹

¹ This of course is the dative of the person interested.

EXERCISE 129.

A. 1. Id Gallis **magno** ad pugnam **impedimento** erat. 2. Omnia, quae ad bellum **usui** sunt, coepit comparare. 3. Duae legiones, quae proxime conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudabant, **praesidioque** impedimentis erant. 4. Duabus missis **subsidio** cohortibus a Caesare, nostri se incolumes inde receperunt. 5. Nulli potestas erat *in* (*on*) muro consistendi. 6. Haec urbs est praesidio et ornamento civitati. 7. Oppidum quod a se teneri non posse iudicabant, ne **cui** (§ 332) esset **usui** Romanis, incenderunt. 8. Claudio imperavit ut, retento *Nolae* (*at Nola*) necessario praesidio, ceteros milites dimitteret Romam, ne oneri sociis et sumptui rei publicae essent.

B. 1. He left two legions that they might be as-a-guard to the baggage. 2. Caesar sends five cohorts as a garrison to the camp. 3. Send two cohorts as a help to the cavalry! 4. The consul ordered Fabius to send those things which might be of use to the city. 5. The Germans who were coming as a help, having heard these things, immediately returned home. 6. These men had come with all their forces to-help (use a noun in dative) the Nervii. 7. The infantry has bread, the cavalry wine; no one has water. 8. Having left two legions as a guard Caesar set out for Italy.

THE TRANSLATION OF THE ENGLISH **VERBAL NOUN**.

216. We have seen, §§ 122-125 and §§ 149-156, the use of the Latin **gerund** and **gerundive**. We must now see how these are used to translate the English verbal nouns.

217. When the English **verbal noun** is **intransitive** it is translated by the Latin **gerund**.

The art of **navigating**. *Ars navigandi*.

218. When the English **verbal noun** is **transitive** it is translated by the Latin **gerundive**.

The object of the transitive verbal noun takes the case proper to the English verbal noun, and the gerundive, which is an adjective (§ 149), is made to agree with it. Thus:—

The difficulty of **waging war**, *i.e.*, the **Difficultas belli gerendi**.
difficulty of **war** requiring-to-be-
waged.

219. The gerundive thus used can be in the accusative, genitive, dative or ablative case. Two uses in particular should be noted.

The accusative case after **ad** (§ 125) is used to denote purpose.

He prepared everything for **waging war**, *i.e.*, for **war** requiring-to-be-waged. **Omnia paravit ad bellum gerendum.**

220. The genitive after **causā**¹ is similarly used to denote purpose.

He sent his men to make **war**, *i.e.*, for the sake of **war** requiring to be waged. **Suos misit belli gerendi causā.**

221. A very common use is with verbs like **curare**, *to take care, to cause*. The verb is often translated by **have** in English.

He **had** a bridge made over the Arar, **Curavit pontem in Ārārē**
i.e., He caused a **bridge** requiring to be made. **faciendum.**

¹ **Causā** is the ablative of **causa**. It thus means by cause of and naturally takes a genitive.

222. EXAMPLES OF ENGLISH VERBAL NOUNS TRANSLATED.

Accusative:—

A place suitable for fighting.	Locus idoneus ad pugnandum.
A place suitable for fighting battles.	Locus idoneus ad proelia pugnanda.

Genitive:—

The opportunity of conquering.	Facultas vincendi.
The opportunity of conquering the State.	Facultas civitatis vincendae.

Dative:—

He gives his attention to reading.	Dat operam legendo.
He gives his attention to reading books.	Dat operam legendis libris.

Ablative:—

He wastes his time by waiting.	Cunctando tempus terit.
He wastes his time by sending embassies.	Tempus terit legationibus mittendis.

223. Only transitive verbs, including deponents, can have the gerundive.

224. When a Latin verb governs the **dative**, the **gerund** must be used, *not* the gerundive.

The desire of serving his country.	Cupiditas serviendi patriae (dat.).
---	--

225. This rule applies also to deponents governing the ablative or genitive.

The hope of getting possession of the camp.	Spes potiendi castris (abl.).
---	--------------------------------------

226. A few deponents of this class, *e.g.*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *utor*, *vescor*, are also sometimes used like transitive verbs (see Ex. 131, A. 5).

EXERCISE 130.

Viva voce. Turn into Latin:—

1. The difficulty of making a bridge.
2. They were sent *on account of* (*causā*) seeking provisions.
3. The plan of renewing the war.
4. They are very keen *on* (*ad*) undertaking wars.
5. Their minds are not prepared *for* (*ad*) bearing calamities.
6. Wood suitable for making a fire.
7. The consul is giving his

attention to appeasing the gods. 8. These things will be *of use* (§ 215) *for (ad)* making ships. 9. They have come to redeem the captives (*use a gerundive*). 10. Will he give us the opportunity of making a journey?

A. 1. Legati ad Pyrrhum missi sunt de redimendis captivis. 2. Cupiditas dominandi dissensionem fecit inter victores. 3. Ad traiciendum Hellespontum, Europam et Asiam ponte iungi voluit Xerxes; septem dies et totidem noctes in traiciendo ponte consumpsit. 4. Nemini ibi manendi potestas facta est. 5. Ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinent, comparant. 6. Parati erant ad omnia pericula subeunda. 7. Vult cum suo fratre colloqui de partiendo regno. 8. Exploratores missi sunt commeatus petendi causa. 9. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum homines effeminari arbitrantur. 10. Audendo atque agendo res Romana crevit, non his seignibus consiliis, quae timidi cauta vocant.

B. 1. There is no hope of building a bridge in this place. 2. Fabius waged war by sitting [still] and delaying. 3. In seeking peace they threw the blame for (= of) the war on (= in) the allies. 4. We had no chance (= opportunity) of making war on-account-of the time of the year. 5. Having obtained weather suitable for sailing Caesar set out. 6. Let us not give them time for taking counsel (pl.). 7. For that war Caesar had many ships made. 8. Caesar ordered the infantry to make a beginning of crossing. 9. Caesar sent three legions with Trebonius, the lieutenant, to forage. 10. Do you know whether Caesar had a bridge made?

EXERCISE 131.

A. 1. Si principes Graeciae esse vultis, castris est vobis (§ 150) utendum, non palaestra. 2. Nulla spes erat potiundi castris (§ 225); signum receptui dedit. 3. Animus defuit ad erumpendum ex castris. 4. Marcellum *ab (from)* gerendis rebus

valetudo adversa Romae (§ 315) tenuit. 5. Tertio die, silentio noctis, omissa spe Nolae potiundae, Tarentum (§ 314) proficiscitur. 6. Iussit milites ex ordine non recedere, nisi teli sumendi aut petendi, aut hostis feriendi, aut civis servandi causā. 7. Dum consul placandis Romae dīs (App. II., § 2 (c)), habendoque delectu (§ 36) dat operam, Hannibal profectus est ex hibernis. 8. Hunc locum ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitrantur. 9. Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum. 10. Pars Britanniae incolitur ab eis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causā ex Belgio transierant. 11. Sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt.

B. 1. Great is the difficulty of pleasing everybody. 2. They set out more in anger than in the hope of getting-possession-of the city. 3. He has collected an immense army in-order-to punish his enemies. 4. Caesar has had a great tower built near the river. 5. A garrison had been sent for-the-purpose-of watching over the allies' lands. 6. The allies had set out for-the-purpose-of bringing help to Caesar. 7. The mind of the Germans is inclined to undertaking wars. 8. The hope of plundering recalled the farmers *from* (*ab*) their daily labour. 9. The difficulty of crossing is great on account of the depth of the river. 10. The difficulty of capturing the town is great on account of the large garrison.

THE SUPINES.

227. The **supine** in **-um** is only used after **verbs of motion** to express purpose. It is translated by the English Infinitive.

They send ambassadors **to ask-for** Legatos mittunt **rogatum**
help. auxilium.

228. The **supine** in **-u** can only be used after certain adjectives like *difficult*, *easy*, etc., and a few nouns like *fas*, *scelus*, etc.: *e.g.* Facile **factu**. easy **in doing**. *i.e.* easy **to do**.

229. The supine in *-um* can govern an object; the supine in *-u* never has a noun-object, though it can be followed by a dependent question or an accusative and infinitive.

230. In origin the two supines are the **accusative** and the **ablative** cases of a fourth declension noun derived from a verb. Thus the supine in *-um* is the accusative used without a preposition after a verb of motion (§ 314).

231. CLAUSES DENOTING PURPOSE.—We have now seen that there are several ways of expressing **purpose**, remembering that the English infinitive of purpose is never translated by the infinitive in Latin.

In Latin a clause of purpose is expressed by (1) *ut* and the subjunctive; (2) *qui* and the subjunctive; (3) a **gerundive** (or a **gerund**) governed by *ad*; (4) a **gerundive** (or a **gerund**) governed by *causā*; (5) the supine in *-um*. Thus: He sends ambassadors to seek for peace:—

- (1) Legatos mittit *ut* pacem **petant**.
- (2) Legatos mittit *qui* pacem **petant**.
- (3) Legatos mittit *ad* pacem **petendam**.
- (4) Legatos mittit *pacis* **petendae** *causā*.
- (5) Legatos mittit pacem **rogatum**.

EXERCISE 132.

A. 1. Pompeiūm ad regem mittit **rogatum** ut sibi militibusque pareat. 2. Persae legatos Athenas miserunt **questum** quod ille contra regem bellum gereret (§ 422) cum Aegyptiis. 3. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, totius fere Galliae legati ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerant. 4. Aedui, cum se suaque defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt rogatum auxilium. 5. Erat difficile intellectu utrum eum amici vererentur magis, an amarent. 6. Spectatumne huc, *ut* (*as*) rem fruendam oculis, sociorum caedes et incendia vënimus? 7. Ipse exercitum reduxit, misso exploratum cum quadringentis equitibus L. Hostilio Mancino. 8. Pulsus (incredibile dictu) biduo et duabus noctibus (§ 441) Athenas pervenit. 9. Is amnis longe omnium Galliae fluminum difficillimus transitu est. 10. Haec omnia, visu quam dictu foediora, terrorem renovârunt (§ 62).

B. 1. He led the army back to Italy to winter. 2. This enemy has come to attack our fatherland. 3. On the third day

the Gauls set out to plunder. 4. It is not easy to see why he has brought back the army. 5. Caesar sends these legions into the neighbouring fields to seek-for-fodder. 6. He had come with a large force (pl.) to storm the camp. 7. They sent ambassadors to Hannibal to beg that he would move his army to (§ 314) Capua. 8. They were filled with the hope of liberty, a name pleasant to hear. 9. Are not these rivers difficult to cross on account of [their] rapidity? 10. Fabius was chosen to finish the war.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (CONTINUED).

Recapitulate §§ 126-143.

232. There is no **future infinitive passive** in Latin. To supply its place the **supine** in **-um** together with the passive infinitive of *ire*, to go, is used; e.g., **amatum iri** = to be about to be loved.

He says that the children **will be loved** by their friends becomes:—

He says *the children to be about to be loved by their friends.*
Dicit *liberos ab amicis* **amatum iri**.

233. In this construction *iri* is used impersonally (§ 255) and means *it to be being gone* or *there to be a going*; **amatum** is the supine used after the verb *iri*; *liberos* is the accusative governed by *amatum* (§ 229).

234. When a verb has no supine, the phrase **fore ut** or **futurum esse ut** (followed by the subjunctive) is used impersonally to translate the future infinitive passive.

235. This construction is often used even when there is a supine. It is also used to translate the future infinitive active (§ 135) when a verb has no participle in *-rus*.

He says that the children will be loved. Dicit *fore ut liberi amentur*.
I know that he will come. Scio *eum venturum esse*
or Scio *fore ut veniat*,

i.e., I know *it to be about to be* that he may come.

236. NOTES ON THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION.—A few

verbs like *spéro*, *I hope*; *polliceor*, *I promise*; *minor*, *I threaten*, and similar verbs, require the future infinitive in Latin.

He hopes to come. *Sperat se¹ venturum esse.*

This will be readily seen by expanding the English. *He hopes to come* does not mean *He hopes that he is coming*, but *He hopes that he will be coming*.

237. With *spero* the infinitive *posse* is often used instead of the future infinitive. *Sperat se venire posse.*

238. Where the English verb of **saying** is followed by a negative it is translated by the Latin *negare*, to *deny*. *He says that this is not true* becomes *He denies this to be true*.

He says that this is not true. *Negat haec esse vera.*

He says that he has never seen it. *Negat se id unquam vidisse.*

239. The one great exception to the use of accusative and infinitive with verbs of *saying* is the verb *inquit* (§ 513).

Inquit, which never stands first² in a clause, quotes the **exact words** of the speaker, *i.e.*, it does not take the accusative and infinitive.

"All these things," says he, "I have often heard." *Saepe ego, inquit, haec omnia audivi.*

The same sentence would require the accusative and infinitive if *dico* or any other verb of saying were used. Thus:—

Se haec omnia audivisse dicit.



240. **Esse** is very frequently omitted in the future infinitive and passive infinitive (see sentence 4, Ex. 133, A.).

241. Frequently the verb of saying is understood in Latin.

Ambassadors came to Caesar (**saying**) that they wished to make peace with the Romans. *Legati ad Caesarem venerunt: se cum Romanis pacem facere cupere.*

242. It is not at all uncommon to find a long series of sentences in accusative and infinitive depending on one verb of saying. Beginners should repeat this verb in translating before each separate accusative and infinitive (see Ex. 133, B.).

¹ This pronoun cannot be omitted in Latin.

² Like the English "quoth he," etc.

EXERCISE 133.

A. 1. Hoc non praeteribo, quamquam nonnullis leve visum iri putem.¹ 2. Cum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium comparabant, oppidi tuendi causā. 3. Dicit, si diutius alatur controversia, fore ut pars cum parte civitatis contigat. 4. Pollicentur se facturos quae imperaret (§ 462). 5. Victori hosti obviam eundum esse duces censerunt. 6. Orgetorix Helvetiis persuasit ut de finibus suis exirent: perfacile esse totius Galliae imperio (R. 81) potiri.

B. Ea hieme prodigia facta sunt; multa nuntiata et temere credita sunt, in quibus (§ 89) infantem semestrem in foro olitorio triumphum clamasse; et in foro boario, bovem in tertiam contignationem sua sponte² escendisse, atque inde, tumultu habitatorum territum, sese deiecisse; et navium speciem de caelo affulsisse; et aedem Spei, quae est in foro olitorio, fulmine ictam (§ 240); et Lanuvi (§ 316) hastam se commovisse; et corvum in aedem Iunonis devolasse atque in ipso pulvinario consedis; et in Gallia lupum vigili gladium ex vagina raptum abstulisse.

C. 1. He thinks that the city will be captured. 2. He thought that the city would be captured. 3. They say that the Romans did not always conquer the Gauls. 4. He said that the victory was not announced to the Romans. 5. We all hope to live long. 6. They hope that the war will soon be finished. 7. "Come with me," says he, "into the citadel." 8. They promised to come on the third day. 9. He promised to do all these things. 10. He says that the inhabitants will be driven out of their territories. 11. They promised to return on the next day. 12. He said that it was useless for the captives to be returned (= sent back).

¹ Subjunctive governed by *quamquam*.

² Only the ablative *sponte* and genitive *spontis* of the noun occur (see Vocabulary, p. 845).

Mēmīnī, ōdī, coepī, cognosco.

243. The verbs **mēmīn-ī**, *I remember*, and **ōd-ī**, *I hate*, have no tenses except those formed from the **perfect stem**. The meaning, however, of each tense is that of the corresponding simple tense; thus, **mēmīnī**, *I remember*; **mēmīnēram**, *I remembered*, etc. The tenses and meanings will be seen from the following:—

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.	ōd-ī	ōd-istī, etc.	<i>I hate, etc.</i>
Pluperfect.	ōd-ēram	ōd-ēras, etc.	<i>I hated, etc.</i>
Future Perf.	ōd-ēro	ōd-ēris, etc.	<i>I shall hate, etc.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.	ōd-ērim	ōd-ēris, etc.	<i>I may hate, etc.</i>
Pluperfect.	ōd-issem	od-isses, etc.	<i>I might hate, etc.</i>

INFINITIVE. **ōd-isse** *to hate*. FUTURE PARTIC. **ōsūrus** *about to hate*.

244. **Mēmīnī** has no participles, but it has the *imperatives*, **mēmētō**, **mēmētōtē**. **Mēmīnī** governs the *genitive* case when its object is a noun.

245. **Coep-ī** also has only perfect tenses, but they have **perfect¹ meanings**; thus, **coepī**, *I have begun* or *I began*, etc. It has a *future participle*, **coepturus**.

246. When followed by a *passive infinitive* **coep-i** is used in the passive, the past participle **coeptus** being used; thus, **coeptus sum**, etc.

247. The verb **cognosco**, **-ēre**, **cognōvī**, **cognītum** in its present tenses means *to ascertain*, *to find out*, *to learn*. In its **perfect tenses** it means *to know*. Thus **cognōvī** = *I have found out* and therefore **I know**.

The simple verb **nosco**, **-ēre**, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, is similarly used with the same meanings.

EXERCISE 134.

A. 1. Is mihi parum meminisse vestrae libertatis videbatur.
 2. Themistocles, cum ei philosophus artem memoriae polliceretur, Mallem (§ 413), inquit, habere artem obliviscendi; nam meminī *etiam* (even) quae nolo, oblivisci non possum quae volo.

¹ The present meanings of begin are supplied from the verb incipio.

3. Vos odistis, *ut (as)* opinor, hos senatores, non senatum omnino habere non vultis. 4. Romanos Galli et oderant et metuebant. 5. Tyrannos ulciscendo quae odissent scelera ipsi imitabantur. 6. Caesar disponit exercitum ad utramque partem munitionum ut suum quisque (§ 336) locum teneat et noverit. 7. Prope cottidie vagabantur ut cognoscerent situm castrorum. 8. Caedes promiscue omnium circum portam primo, deinde etiam in urbe fieri coepta est. 9. Eo tempore Romani duos consules habere pro uno rege coeperunt. 10. Quam varia victoria priore Punico bello fuerit (§ 200), plerique qui meminerimus supersumus.

B. 1. Always remember benefits, boys. 2. We shall remember the words of our master. 3. These men hate tyrants because they fear [them]. 4. The master loves his pupils, but hates their vices. 5. Caesar knew (= had learnt) the plans of the enemy *from (ex)* spies. 6. The town had begun to be stormed in the eighth month. 7. If we know ourselves we shall become wise. 8. Caesar sent scouts to find out (§ 247) *what (qualis)* was the nature of the mountain. 9. When the Helvetii could no longer sustain the attack of the Romans, they began to retire into the wood. 10. If you remember the precepts of the doctor you will be healthy.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

248. An impersonal verb is only used in the 3rd person singular with *it* (standing for no definite thing) for its subject, as *it snows*, etc. The following are the most important:—

miseret	-ere	(miseruit)	<i>it fills with pity</i>
piget	-ere	piguit	<i>it vexes</i>
paenitet	-ere	paenituit	<i>it repents</i>
pudet	-ere	puduit	<i>it shames</i>
taedet	-ere	taeduit	<i>it wearies</i>
dēcet	-ere	dēcuit	<i>it is becoming, becomes</i>
dēdēcet	-ere	dēdēcuit	<i>it is unbecoming</i>
libet	-ere	libuit	<i>it pleases</i>
licet	-ere	licuit	<i>it is lawful, allowed</i>
oportet	-ere	oportuit	<i>it behoves</i>

249. All these verbs are of the 2nd conjugation, thus:—

Indic. licet, licēbat, licēbit; licu-it, licu-erat, licu-ērit.

Subj. liceat, liceret; licu-ērit, licu-isset.

They have in addition an infinitive and a gerund.

250. Some of these verbs use passive forms in the perfect, thus:—

misērītum est (for misērui); pertaesum est (for taedui);
pūditum est (for pudui).

251. Construction of Impersonal Verbs.

(1) Verbs referring to **feeling**, viz., *miseret*, *piget*, *paenitet*, *pudet*, *taedet*, govern an **accusative** of the **person** and a **genitive** of the **cause**.

I am ashamed of your **cowardice** Pudet me ignaviae tuae.
= it shames me of your **cowardice**.

(2) *Decet*, *dēdecet* and *oportet*, referring to **conduct**, take an **accusative** of the **person** and a nominative or an infinitive for subject.

It becomes me to obey the laws. Me decet parēre legibus.

It behoves me (I ought) to remain in the city. Me oportet in urbe manēre.

(3) *Libet* and *licet* take a **dative** of the **person** and an infinitive.

It pleases me to come. Mihi libet venire.

252. NOTE.—*Ōportet*¹ and *licet* are also followed by the subjunctive *without* ut.

It behoves you to take arms. Oportet arma capias.

For the tense of the infinitive after *oportet* see § 264.

EXERCISE 135.

Viva voce :—

1. I am ashamed of your folly. 2. They are ashamed of your words. 3. I pity (= it pities me) your mother. 4. He

¹ Oportet can also take an accusative and infinitive. See Sentence 4, Ex. 135, A.

pities your friends. 5. The boy was repenting his folly. 6. We repented our folly. 7. It behoved the general to lead the army. 8. I am allowed to speak. 9. They will be allowed to follow us. 10. I am weary of your plans.

A. 1. Senator interrogat paeniteatne me *suscepti* adversus Romanos *belli*. 2. Civitatis morum me piget taedetque. 3. Cum in acie stare ac pugnare illos decuerat, tum in castra refugerunt. 4. Dux dixit oppida incendi oportere. 5. Campani Fabium orabant ut sibi abire Capuam (§ 314) tuto liceret. 6. Ante Solonem nemini licebat testari, sed necesse erat bona in defuncti familiā permanēre. 7. Nunc, ait, mori oportet, *ut (as)* vos et regem decet. 8. Nihil in bello oportet contemni. 9. Germanis antiquis non longius anno (R. 18) remanere uno in loco incolendi causā licebat. 10. Arma capias oportet, et descendas in æquum, et congrediaris, vir cum viro!

B. 1. I am weary of life. 2. Are you not ashamed of such allies? 3. Does the slave not repent of his crimes? 4. These men were neither weary of, nor ashamed of their cowardice. 5. You may (use *licet*) return to your city, soldiers. 6. The soldiers begged that they might be allowed to return to Rome. 7. They ought to have crossed (= it behoved them to cross) the river in this place. 8. By the laws of the Aedui these men were not allowed (*licet*) to go out of their territories. 9. It does not become a soldier to disobey the general. 10. When shall I be allowed to plead my cause?

253. As in English, Latin verbs referring to **weather** are impersonal. Such are:—

plūit	-ēre	plūit or plūvit	it rains
ningit	-ēre	ninxit	it snows
grandīnat	-āre	grandīnavit	it hails
fulgūrat	-are	fulgūravit	it lightens
tōnāt	-āre	tōnnit	it thunders
vespērāscit	-ēre	vespērāvit	evening comes on

254. Many verbs which are conjugated fully are also used impersonally. Such are: *accidit*, it happens; *evenit*, it results; *restat*, it remains; etc.

255. In English only transitive verbs can be made passive. In Latin almost any verb can be made passive if used impersonally.

256. The impersonal use of the **passive** is very common with intransitive verbs like **pugno**, *to fight*; **venio**, *to come*; **eo**, *to go*; **curro**, *to run*; etc.

Our men fought for three hours = **it was** Tres horas a nostris fought by our men, etc. **pugnabatur**.

Galli, **veniri** ad se confestim existimantes, ad arma clamant.

Veniri is here used impersonally, meaning *it to be being come*. It is used in accusative and infinitive, it understood being the accusative. *A Romanis* is also understood. Thus the sentence means: The Gauls, thinking that the Romans are coming to them immediately, sound the call to arms.

EXERCISE 136.

Viva voce. Translate the following, using all the verbs impersonally:—

1. They fought a long time. 2. We fought a long time. 3. They will come here. 4. You must (§ 152) come here. 5. We must (§ 152) go to the camp. 6. Our men had fought bravely. 7. They went as-a-help to the allies. 8. The enemy descended into the plain. 9. Fighting-went-on (use *pugno*) a long time. 10. Fighting-continued all day.

* * The verbs used impersonally are in thick type:—

A. 1. Summa vi ab utrisque **contendebatur**. 2. **Pugnatur** uno tempore, in omnibus locis acriter, atque omnia tentantur; qua minime visa¹ pars firma est,¹ huc **concurritur**. 3. Per paucae naves ad terram pervenerunt, cum (although) ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum **pugnaretur**. 4. **Pugnatum est** a nostris diu atque acriter. 5. Nonnulli dicunt, septem et octoginta milia armatorum et ducentos in castris Romanis fuisse,

¹ These two words are the verb. (See R. 57.)

cum pugnatum ad Cannas est. 6. Usque ad vesperum pugnabatur. 7. Quod¹ ubi auditum est, conclamabant omnes, ad castra iri oportere. 8. Tres fere horas pugnatum est et ubique atrociter. 9. Eò cum esset ventum, exploratores hostium a nostris opprimuntur. 10. Quoniam ad hunc locum² perventum est, non alienum esse videtur de Gallorum moribus pauca dicere.

NOTES ON SYNTAX.

Agreement of verbs :—

257. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person. If there are two subjects joined by *et* the verb is plural and agrees with the first person rather than the second, the second rather than the third.

258. If there are two subjects coupled by a disjunctive conjunction, *e.g.*, *neque . . . neque*, *neither . . . nor*; *aut . . . aut*, *either . . . or*, *vel . . . vel*, *either . . . or*, the verb usually agrees with the latter, *i.e.*, with the one nearest to it.

My father and mother are present.

Pater et mater adsunt.

You and I exclaim.

Ego et tu clamamus.

Either you or your sister came too late. *Aut tu aut soror tua sèrius venit.*

259. A singular collective noun usually takes a singular verb unless it is intended to indicate that each of the units comprised in the collective noun acted independently.

The army arrived at the camp. *Exercitus ad castra pervenit.*

TENSES.

260. HISTORIC PRESENT.—The present tense is very frequently used in narrative to render the account more vivid. As a rule it must be translated by the English past.³

Cum eis Commius, quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, . . . mittit.

With them he sends Commius whom he, having overcome the Atrebates, had appointed King there.

¹ See § 342, p. 243. Translate as if *quod* = *illud*, making it the subject of *auditum est*.

² This means *point* or *place* in a book.

³ Though English is not without this idiom it uses it much less frequently than Latin. And He preached the word unto them, and they *came* unto Him bringing one sick of the palsy.—St. Mark ii. 2, 3.

261. The **historic infinitive** is often used instead of the imperfect indicative, especially where a series of actions is related.

Igitur diffidens veteri exercitui, milites **scribere**, praesidia undique **arcessere**: arma, tela, equos, cetera instrumenta militiae **parare**.

Therefore, distrusting the old army, he **began to enroll** soldiers, he **summoned** garrisons from all parts, he **set-to-preparing** arms, weapons, horses and other instruments of warfare.

262. The imperfect and perfect tenses contrasted. The perfect tense is the tense of **narration**, the imperfect that of **description**. In relating a series of events the perfect tense is used for those actions which are essential to and carry on the narrative. All subsidiary matter, explanation or description, is translated by the imperfect.

Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam . . . **coëgit** et omnes clientes . . . quorum magnum numerum *habebat*, eodem **conduxit**: per eos, ne causam *diceret*, se eripuit. Cum civitas, . . . armis ius suum exsequi *conaretur*, . . . Orgetorix **mortuus est**.

263. When an action begun previously is still continuing, Latin uses the **present** tense with the adverb **iampridem** or **iamdudum**.

He **has been writing** a long time. Iamdudum **scribit**.

Similarly with the imperfect:—

I **had been weeping** already long. Iamdudum **flebam**.

264. The perfect infinitive cannot be used in Latin after verbs like **possum**, **licet**, **oportet**, etc.

He could **have replied** = He has been (or was) able to reply.

Potuit **respondere**.

265. The **Latin future** must always be used to translate the English present when the action referred to is still in the future. This is especially so with *relative pronouns*, with *when*, *if*, etc.

When he **comes** I will give Cum **venerit** (lit., *shall have come*)
it to him. ei id dabo.

EXERCISE 137.

Translate:—

1. The crowd shouted loudly. 2. Neither Fabius nor Hannibal wishes to begin the battle. 3. Either I or your friend will

set out to-morrow. 4. When the Romans attack, the Gauls will flee. 5. They had been preparing [for] war for a long time. 6. We ought (use *oportet*) to have set out yesterday. 7. They ask whether the city will be captured (§ 204) to-morrow. 8. It is uncertain whether they will be able (§ 168) to reach the city before night. 9. Either your brother or you have written this letter. 10. The leader will give a reward to the soldier who captures the king of the barbarians.

THE NOUN.

266. A noun placed after another noun or pronoun to describe it more clearly is said to be in **apposition** to the other noun or pronoun.

Nouns or pronouns in apposition are in the same case.

Fabius, the Dictator, conquered Hannibal. **Fābius, Dictator, Hannibālem vicit.**

All men praise Fabius, the Dictator. **Omnes Fābium Dictatorem laudant.**

267. When an **adjective** is added to the name of a **person** it is necessary in Latin to supply some noun in **apposition** like *victor, man, queen, king*, etc., and the adjective is frequently in the superlative degree.

The **renowned** Alexander. **Alexander victor clarissimus.**

The **beautiful** Tullia. **Tullia puella pulcherrima.**

268. Note the Latin order. First the name, then the noun in apposition, and finally the adjective.

269. **LATIN NAMES OF PERSONS.**—Every Roman had three names: (a) **praenomen** or *personal name*; (b) **nomen** or *name of the house or gens*¹ to which he belonged; (c) **cognomen** or *family name* denoting the branch of the *gens* to which he belonged. Thus:—

<i>praenomen</i>	<i>nomen</i>	<i>cognomen</i>
Marcus	Iūnius	Brūtus
Publius	Ōvidius	Nāso
Marcus	Tullius	Cicēro
Cāius	Cornēlius	Tācitus

¹ The *gens* included all the descendants from one common ancestor.

270. The family name (cognomen) was often in its origin a nickname; thus, *Brutus*, *stupid*; *Cicero*, *a pea* (or *wart*).

Except when standing alone, the praenomen was abbreviated, e.g., *M. Iunius Brutus* or even *M. Brutus*.

271. Sometimes a fourth or even a fifth name, called *agnomen*, was added, usually taken from some distinguishing exploit. Thus to *Publius Cornélius Scipio* was added *Africānus* from his African wars and *Aemiliānus* because he was adopted by the Aemilian gens.

272. Women had no personal names, but were called by the name of their gens. *Brutus*' wife was called *Porcia*, being the daughter of *M. Porcius Cāto*.

273. Some Latin nouns change their meaning in the plural. Such are:—

<i>aedēs</i> , -is (fem.), <i>temple</i>	<i>aedēs</i> , -ium, <i>house</i>
<i>castrum</i> , -i (neut.), <i>fort</i>	<i>castrā</i> , -ōrum, <i>camp</i>
<i>cōpia</i> , -ae (fem.), <i>plenty</i>	<i>copiae</i> , -ārum, <i>forces, troops</i>
<i>finis</i> , -is (masc.), <i>end</i>	<i>fines</i> , -ium, <i>territories</i>
<i>fortūna</i> , -ae (fem.), <i>fortune</i>	<i>fortūnae</i> , -ārum, <i>possessions</i>
<i>frumentum</i> , -i (neut.), <i>corn</i> (when gathered)	<i>frumenta</i> , -ōrum, <i>corn</i> (standing in the field)
<i>grātia</i> , -ae (fem.), <i>favour</i>	<i>grātiae</i> , -ārum, <i>thanks</i>

EXERCISE 138.

A. 1. *Milites missi sunt cum Leonidā, Lacedaemoniorum rege, qui Thermopylas occuparent* (§ 231). 2. *Aristides cognomine Iustus (= Justus) appellatus est*. 3. *Athenis, splendidissima civitate,¹ natus est*. 4. *Callicrates quidam, civis Atheniensis, ad regem adit, et ait: eum in magno periculo esse*. 5. *Ipse exercitum reducit, L. Hostilio Mancino misso exploratum cum quadringentis equitibus*. 6. *Multas turres Hispania habet, quibus et speculis et propugnaculis adversus latrones utuntur*.

B. 1. The ancient Germans mostly worshipped the god Mercury. 2. Chabrias, the leader of the Athenians, waged many wars in Europe. 3. The land had been ravaged by Dionysius the tyrant. 4. When L. Domitius [and] Ap.

¹ Observe that a noun in apposition agrees in case, but is not necessarily of the same number as the noun it agrees with.

Claudius were consuls (§ 194) Caesar set out into Italy. 5. The renowned Fabius defeated the Carthaginians by delaying. 6. M. Minucius Rufus was made (= created) Master of the Horse (= horse-soldiers).

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

274. Verbs of **making, thinking, etc.**, take **two accusatives**. They made **Manlius consul**. **Manlium consulem** creaverunt.

275. The verbs **celo**, *to conceal*, **dōceo**, *to teach*, **flāgīto**, *to demand*, **ōro**, *to beg*, **rōgo** and **interrogō**, *to ask*, take two accusatives in the active and one in the passive.

He teaches **the boy music**. **Puerum musicam** docet.
The boy is taught **music**. **Puer musicam** docefur.

276. NOTE.—Carefully distinguish the construction of **peto** and **quaero**. *I ask you this* = **Hoc** (acc.) **a te** **peto** or **Hoc a** (or **ex**) **te** **quaero**.

277. The **accusative of extent** is used to denote (a) **space** (measurement), (b) **time**.

- (a) The enemy are **two miles** **Hostes ab oppido duo milia**
distant from the town. **passuum** absunt.
(b) He was in Britain all the **Totam hiemem** in Britannia
winter. **erat**.

278. The **accusative of respect** is used especially in poetry to indicate the part affected.

Bare as to his **limbs**. **Nudus membra**.

279. **COGNATE ACCUSATIVE**.—Verbs usually intransitive sometimes have an accusative which contains the same idea as the verb. Thus we say in English, **He runs a race**.

Qui stadium currit (*runs a race*), **eniti et contendere debet quam maxime possit ut vincat**.—Cicero.

280. The **accusative** is also used in exclamations. This accusative is governed by some verb understood, *e.g.*, **pity**, **admire**, etc.

O fortunate state! O fortunatam Rem Publicam!

EXERCISE 139.

A. 1. Mare tutum reddidit maritimos praedones consecrando. 2. Neptunus Graecos artem navigandi docuit. 3. Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod publice polliciti essent (§ 422) flagitabat. 4. Iussit cibaria cocta comparari ut quam minime fieret ignis in castris; iter omnes celat. 5. Hoc flumen, quod Tamesis appellatur, a mari circiter milia passuum octoginta abest. 6. Cum paucorum dierum iter abesset ab eis, legati ad eum venerunt. 7. Hic locus ab hoste, *ut (as)* dictum est, circiter passus sexcentos aberat. 8. Alexander duos annos mansit apud Bactrianos. 9. A flumine ad castra duas fossas quindecim pedes latas perduxit. 10. Romani parricidas insui in culleum vivos atque ita in flumen deiici voluerunt. O singularem sapientiam!

B. 1. Having been asked [his] opinion the general replied with a few words. 2. The boy was taught grammar by an excellent teacher. 3. Having advanced about four hundred paces they see the enemies' camp. 4. This river was two feet deep and ten feet broad. 5. They have concealed this [from] me. 6. Caesar follows the enemy and places his camp three thousand paces *from (ab)* their camp. 7. Unhappy girl! who will deliver thee from this penalty? 8. They tarried three-days (see Vocabulary) on account of the burial of [those] killed [in battle]. 9. Marathon is about ten thousand paces distant from the town. 10. He left the chiefs whom he had led with him [as] guardians of the bridge.

THE DATIVE CASE.

For the **dative** with compound verbs, *i.e.*, dative of advantage or disadvantage, see § 209; dative of agent, § 150; dative of possessor, § 214; dative of purpose, § 215.

281. The **dative case** is used with verbs meaning **pleasing and displeasing, obeying and disobeying, helping and injuring, sparing, etc.**

282. Verbs of this class can only be used impersonally in the passive, R. 60.

He spares his enemies. *Inimicis parcit.*

283. But note that *delecto* (and *iuvo*), *to delight*, *laedo*, *to injure*, and *iubeo*, *to order*, govern the accusative.

284. The **dative case** is used after **adjectives** signifying likeness, fitness, nearness, help, etc., and words of opposite meaning. Also with **nouns** of similar meaning.

The nations bordering on the **Gauls**. *Populi Gallis finitimi.*

285. NOTE.—**Similis** and **dissimilis** usually take a **dative** of a thing, a **genitive** of a person.

The house was *like* (= *similar to*) a **tower**. *Domus turri similis erat.*

The boy is *like* (*the likeness of*) his **father**. *Puer patris similis est.*

286. The verb **consūlo**, *I consult*; **cāveo**, *I take care* (*beware*); and a few similar verbs govern either an accusative or a dative according to the sense.

Te consulo. I consult you = I ask your opinion.

Tibi consulo. I consult your interests, *i.e.*, I am consulting things for you (§ 209).

EXERCISE 140.

A. 1. Ante pugnam omnia accurate **speculabatur**; in pugna autem vivo impetu hostem invadebat, nec sibi parcebat. 2. Nonne videtis futurum esse ut barbari rebus suis **consulant**? 3. Dion historicus, cui nos plurimum de Persicis rebus credimus scripsit ducem effugisse. 4. Hi plus consilio quam fortunae confidunt. 5. Arma, tela, alia parari iubent et vetera spolia hostium templis (§ 211) porticibusque detrahunt. 6. Galli fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. 7. Germani agriculturae non student, maiorque pars victus eorum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. 8. *Sub* (*about*) idem fere tempus a Carthagine in

289. The **ablative of quality or description** can only be used when the noun in the ablative has an adjective with it.

Agesilāus was of **short stature**. Agesilaus fuit **staturā humili**.

290. The **ablative of manner** describes the circumstances under which an action is done. If the noun has an adjective with it, it is used without preposition; if there is no adjective the preposition **cum** must be used.

He spoke with great boldness. **Audaciā summā** locutus est.
He spoke with boldness. **Cum audaciā** locutus est.

291. The **ablative of price** expresses the **definite price** at which a thing is bought or sold.

The book costs 20 asses. Liber viginti **assibus**¹ constat.

292. The **ablative of measure** is used with comparatives and superlatives.

Much taller. **Multo** procerior.

293. The verbs **fungor**, *I discharge*; **frŭor**, *I enjoy*; **vescor**, *I feed on*; **utor**, *I use*; **pōtior**, *I get possession of*; and the adjectives **dignus**, *worthy*; **indignus**, *unworthy*; **contentus**, *contented*; and **frētus**, *relying on*, require the **ablative case**.

They live on **fish**. Vescuntur **piscibus**.

Worthy of such punishment. Dignus **tantā paenā**.

294. The indeclinable word **opus**² usually takes the ablative. I require books = there is need to me, etc. **Mihi libris opus** est.

EXERCISE 141.

A. 1. Inter eos hic vir erat dignitate regia quamvis nomine carebat. 2. Pari felicitate ceteras insulas, quae Cyclades nomi-

¹ The *as* was a copper coin worth about $\frac{1}{16}$ d.

² Distinguish between *opus*, -*eris* (n.), *work*; *opĕrā*, -*ae* (f.), *attention, care*: and *opus* (indeclinable), *need, want*.

nantur, sub potestatem Atheniensium redegit. 3. Ad amicos miserunt nuntios qui nuntiarent *quam* (*how*) celeri opus esset auxilio. 4. Dātis,¹ etsi non aequum locum videbat suis (R. 15), tamen fretus numero copiarum, configere cupiebat, *eoque* (§ 292) *magis* (*and all the more*), quod dimicare utile arbitrabatur priusquam Lacedaemonii subsidio venirent. 5. Haec extrema fuit aetas imperatorum Atheniensium; neque, post illorum obitum, quisquam (§ 334) dux in illa urbe fuit dignus memoriā. 6. Hannibal, minor quinque et viginti annis natus, imperator in omnibus rebus singulari fuit prudentia et industria. 7. Eodem tempore imbres largi sitis metu eos liberaverunt. 8. Suprema fuit haec vox; paulo (§ 292) post Alexander exstinctus est. 9. In agrum Picēnum Hannibal avertit iter, non copiā solum omnis generis frugum abundantem,² sed refertum² praedā. 10. Miltiades, incensis operibus, cum totidem navibus *atque* (*as* (§ 426)) erat profectus, Athenas magna cum offensione civium suorum rediit.

B. 1. Alexander wished to be painted by Apelles, to have his-statue-made (= modelled) by Lysippus. 2. Cicero himself, since he was in very poor health, had remained in Gaul. 3. At that time he was sick with wounds which he had received in storming (§ 218) the town. 4. Xerxes was conquered more by the stratagem of Themistocles than by the arms of Greece. 5. By that message he was freed from danger. 6. He was of such liberality that he never placed watchmen in his gardens to preserve the fruit. 7. The leader, relying not *so-much* (*tam*) on his forces as on the hatred of the tyrant, set out with five hundred ships of war. 8. They joined their armies in order that they might carry on the affair with common mind and aim. 9. These rivers abound in fish (plural). 10. He did not always bear the ills of life with equanimity.

¹ Dātis was a Persian commander defeated at the battle of Mārathon.

² These words agree with agrum Picēnum.

THE GENITIVE CASE.

295. The **genitive of description** can only be used when the noun is qualified by an adjective.

A fleet of 300 ships. Classis **trecentarum navium**

A man of huge body. Homo **maximi corporis**.

296. NOTE.—Compare § 290. The genitive of quality is used only for permanent qualities, while the ablative is used both of permanent and temporary qualities, especially for dress, etc.

297. The genitive is used in cases where English inserts a word like *mark, part, duty, nature*, etc.

It is the *mark* of a wise man to **Sapientis** est res adversas
bear misfortune with fortitude. **summa fortitudine** ferre.

298. Verbs of **accusing, condemning, acquitting**, etc., take a **genitive** of the crime or fault. The **punishment** is expressed by the **ablative**, though the genitive is sometimes used with *capitis* (= by death) and a few other words.

They were accused of treachery; **Proditionis**¹ accusati sunt;
they were punished by a fine. **pecuniā** multati.

299. GENITIVE OF PRICE.—With the verbs **facio** (to value), **aestimo** (to value) and **sum** (to cost), the genitives **magnī, plūris, plūrimī; parvī, mīnōris, mīnimī; tantī, quantī, nihīlī** are used to express the **value**.

300. With verbs **ēmo** (to buy), **vendo** (to sell), the indefinite price is expressed by the genitives **tantī, quantī, plūris, mīnōris**. The positive and superlative forms corresponding to *pluris* and *minoris* are used in the ablative, *viz.*, **magnō, parvō, maximō, mīnimō**.

¹ This genitive depends on *crimine* = *on the charge*, understood. This word is sometimes expressed.

I think **nothing** of you.

Te **nihil**i facio.

How much did this house cost you?

Quanti haec domus tibi

A **great deal**.

stetit? **Magno**.

301. The **partitive genitive** is used in speaking of a part of anything (see § 302).

None **of us**.

Nemo **nostrum** (R. 24).

Many **of the ships**.

Multae **navium**.

Much **time**.

Multum **temporis**.

Any word denoting a quantity may be used with a partitive genitive.

302. CAUTION.—It must be distinctly understood that the partitive can only be used where a *part* of a *whole* is referred to. Thus, *all of us* is **nos omnes**, not partitive, because all are referred to and not a part. Similarly, the city of Rome = **urbs Roma**. Cases like these are in reality examples of apposition.

303. In expressions like **in the middle of the river**, Latin instead of using a noun corresponding to *middle* has an adjective agreeing with the noun.

In the **middle of the river**. In **medio amne**.

This construction is used with **summus**, *highest*; **mēdius**, *middle*; **rēliquus**, *remaining*; **īmus**, *lowest*, etc.

304. The genitive is used with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* (R. 80) and with certain impersonal verbs (§ 251).

Note that **mīſēreor** (2), *I feel pity*, governs the genitive.

mīſēror (1), *I express pity for*, governs the accusative.

305. The impersonal verbs **intērest**, *it is important*, and **rēfert**, *it concerns* :—

Interest governs a **genitive** of the person when a noun is used; but with possessive pronouns the **ablative singular**, *mea, tua, nostra, vestra, sua*, is used.

It is of importance **to the king** **Regis** interest iudices iustos
to have just judges. habere.

It is of importance **to me.** **Meā** interest.

306. The genitive of price or an adverb like *multum* is used to express degree.

It is of **great** importance to the leader. Ducis multum interest.

307. **Rēfert** takes the ablative of the possessive adjectives, *meā*, etc., rarely a genitive of a noun.

308. The genitive is used after many adjectives signifying desire, knowledge, participation, fulness, and words of opposite meaning; also with adjectives in -ax and present participles.

Such adjectives are *pēritus*, *skilled in*; *insuētus*, *unaccustomed to*; *cūpidus*, *desirous of*; *ignārus*, *ignorant of*; *mēmor*, *mindful of*; *stūdiōsus*, *zealous for*; *cāpax*, *capable of*.

Skilled in military matters. *Peritus militiæ.*

309. SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.—When a phrase with a genitive can be turned in such a way that the genitive becomes the subject of a verb the genitive is called the **subjective genitive**. *The bravery of the soldier = the bravery which the soldier feels.*

When, in turning such a phrase, the genitive becomes the object of a verb it is called the **objective genitive**. *Hatred of tyranny = the fact that people hate tyranny.*

310. The objective genitive is much used in Latin, and in many cases the corresponding English requires some other preposition than *of*. Thus: *skilled in military matters = peritus militiæ*; the accident to the ships = *eventus navium*.

EXERCISE 142.

A. 1. Rogo ut mihi annum des, eoque transacto, ad te veniam. 2. Quantum pecuniae quaeque civitas daret ad classes aedificandas, constituit. 3. Is, cum interrogaretur, utrum pluris patrem matremne faceret; "Matrem," inquit. 4. Cōnon, Atheniēnsis, erat et prudens rei militaris et diligens imperii. 5. Ad templum Iovis ducebat longum iter per medias arenas, ardente sub sole, sine aquā. 6. In mediis tenebris

pugna terribilis oritur. 7. Hannibal quod agri (§ 301) est inter Cortōnam urbem Trāsīmēnumque lacum, omni clade belli pervastat. 8. Magis nullius interest quam tua, T. Otacili (§ 16) non imponi cœvicibus onus sub quo concidas. 9. Milites laeti in armis expediendis quod diei reliquum est consumunt. 10. Est humani generis odisse quem laeseris. 11. Etsi bellum ingens in cervicibus erat, **nullius usquam terrarum** (*in the world*) rei cura Romanos, ne longinqua quidem, effugiebat. 12. Magni interest quos quisque audiat cottidie domi.

B. 1. Darius prepared a fleet of 500 ships. 2. He was skilled in military affairs, and not less in ruling a state. 3. In the middle of the river are many islands. 4. Zeal for the State overcame all things. 5. The Aeduans said that they had nothing left except the soil of the field. 6. He was a man of large body and terrible appearance. 7. Caesar ordered Labienus to seize the top of the mountain. 8. It is of very great importance to us[all] to learn many things. 9. For how much did you buy the house? For very little. 10. It is a mark of a good soldier always to obey the general.

PLACE; THE LOCATIVE CASE.

311. The **place where** anything is or is done is in the **ablative** with a preposition (Rules 7 and 14.)

The camp is **in the valley**. *Castra in valle sunt.*

312. The **place to which** anyone goes, *i.e.*, implying **motion towards**, is in the **accusative** with a preposition.

He descended **into Italy**. *In Italianam descendit.*

313. The **place from which** anyone goes is in the **ablative** with a preposition; **ab**, *from*; **ex**, *out of*, or **de**, *down from*, according to the sense.

314. IMPORTANT EXCEPTIONS.—With names of **towns and islands sufficiently small** to be regarded as one place, the **pre-**

position in all cases of place is **omitted**. This is the rule, also with **dōmus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *the country*.

The consul is **at** (in) **Rome**.

Consul **Romae** est.

The consul goes **to Rome**.

Consul **Romam** it.

The consul is starting **from Rome**.

Consul **Romā** proficiscitur.

315. THE LOCATIVE CASE.—In ancient Latin there was a case called the **locative case**, ending in **-i** to denote the place at which anything was done. Thus **Romae** (in old Latin *Romai*), *at Rome*, **Tarenti**, *at Tarentum*.

This locative case has survived in a few words, viz., **dōmi**, *at home*; **hūmi**, *on the ground*; **rūri**, *in the country*; **militiae**,¹ *in war*.

316. RULE FOR THE LOCATIVE CASE.—If the name of the town or small island at which anything is done is a **singular noun** of the **1st** or **2nd** declension the **genitive** is used; if it is **plural** or of the **3rd** declension (singular or plural) the **ablative** is used.

Romae, *at Rome*; **Tarenti**, *at Tarentum*; **Athēnis**, *at Athens*; **Carthāgine**, *at Carthage*.

317. Notice that names of towns may be of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension and some are plural. Singular, **Rōma**, **Tārentum**, **Carthāgo**, **-inis**; plural, **Athēnae**, **Sŷrācūsae**, **Delphī**.

EXERCISE 143.

A. 1. Parvi (§ 299) sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. 2. Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum (§ 227) quidnam facerent de suis rebus. 3. Themistocles, quod non satis tutum se Argis videbat, Corcyram demigravit. 4. Pausanias, domum revocatus, accusatus capitis (§ 298), absolvitur; multatur tamen pecuniā. 5. Conon plurimum Cypri vixit, Iphicrates in Thracia, Timotheus Lesbi. 6. Alexandro Babylone mortuo, regna familiaribus dispertita sunt. 7. Hic dux ruri aut militiae, sine pallio, sine calceis semper incedebat. 8. Carthagine profectus, exercitum ducebat ad Europam. 9. Campani Fabium orabant ut abire Capuam tuto liceret. 10. Cum, e Cilicia decedens, Rhodum ven-

¹ Militiae is chiefly used in contrast with domi.

issem et eo (*there*) mihi de Q. Hortensii morte esset allatum, opinione (R. 18) omnium maiorem animo cepi dolorem.

B. 1. These men said that they were fleeing from (= out of) Spain to Sicily. 2. Miltiades had set out for Rhodes with a large fleet. 3. They did not wish to return to Sparta. 4. Alcibiades was born at Athens, a most splendid city.¹ 5. He fled from Rome and reached Corinth. 6. The village is about two thousand paces from² Rome. 7. Chabrias waged war on his own account in Egypt; he did the same at Cyprus. 8. Cn. Servilius, the consul at Rome, entered upon his magistracy that day. 9. In the summer he goes to the country; in winter he returns to Rome. 10. He looked after all things at home and abroad. 11. I used to see the old man daily *coming from* (*ex eo*) home.

THE ADJECTIVE.

318. Adjectives are often used as nouns (see R. 15).

Neuter adjectives are much used to translate English abstract nouns: *vēra* = the truth (lit. true things).

319. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.—When an adjective or participle refers to two subjects of different genders, names of living beings, joined by *et*, the adjective or participle is put in the **masculine plural**.

My father and mother are **glad**. Pater et mater sunt **laeti**.

320. An adjective or participle referring to two names of inanimate objects joined by *et* is put in the **neuter plural**.

The house and the temple Domus et templum **incensa**
were burnt. sunt.

¹ Nouns in apposition agree in *case*, but not necessarily in number.

² When *from* means not motion from but distance from, the preposition must be expressed.

321. Comparison (see R. 18). Notice that after a comparative with *quam* Latin often used a second comparative.

He was **braver** than he was **Fortior quam prudentior**
prudent. erat.

322. IDIOMS WITH THE SUPERLATIVE.—When a **superlative** is attached to a noun qualified by a **relative clause** the Latin superlative is transferred to the relative clause and made to agree with the relative pronoun.

He sent the **wisest** slave that **Servum quem sapientissimum**
 he had (= the slave which **habebat misit.**
 he had the wisest).

323. When a superlative is attached to the adjective *all*, thus, *all the bravest soldiers*, Latin uses the word **each**, *quisque, quaeque, quodque*, making the whole phrase singular. If the phrase is the subject of a verb, the verb will be singular.

All the bravest soldiers obey **Ei fortissimus quisque**
 him. **militum paret.**
 He gives rewards to **all the** **Fortissimo cuique mili-**
bravest soldiers. **tum praemia dant.**

Note that *quisque* stands second and see § 336.

324. Sometimes the adverb *quam* adds force to a superlative.

They bought as great a number of **Carrorum quam maximum**
 carts as possible. **numerus coemērunt.**

325. In addition to cardinal and ordinal numerals (§§ 108-116) there are in Latin **distributive numeral adjectives** and **numeral adverbs**.

326. Distributives mean so many at a time, so many each. They are declined like the plural of *bonus*.¹ Numeral adverbs tell how many times. They are indeclinable.

¹The plural genitive, however, is usually written, *binum = binorum*, etc.

	Distributives.	Numeral Adverbs.		Distributives.	Numeral Adverbs.
1	singŭli	sēmēl, <i>once</i>	12	dŭdēdēnī	dŭdēdēciens
2	binī	bis, <i>twice</i> , etc.	13	ternī dēnī	trēdēciens
3	ternī	tēr	20	vicēnī	viciens
4	quāternī	quātēr	21	vicēnī singŭli	sēmēl et viciens
5	quinī	quinq̄uens	30	trīcēnī	trīciens
6	sēnī	sexiens	40	quādrāgenī	quādrāgiens
7	septēnī	septiens	100	centēnī	centiens
8	octōnī	octiens	200	dūcēnī	dūcentiens
9	nōvēnī	nōviens	600	sescēnī	sescentiens
10	dēnī	dēciens	1000	singŭlā milia	milliens
11	undēnī	undēciens	2000	bina milia	bis miliens

327. Distributives are used to denote numbers grouped in sets. Thus *binī* means *two each*, i.e., sets of two.

Fabius and Lucullus brought each twenty companions. Fabius et Lucullus **vīcenos** comites adduxerunt.

Viginti comites would mean *twenty in all*, not *twenty each*.

328. NOTE.—All the distributives including *one* = *singŭli* are plural. Thus *singŭli* means a number of *ones*, i.e., one each.

329. Distributives are also used with those nouns which change their meaning in the plural (§ 273) or with nouns which have no singular.

Two camps. *Bina castra.*

330. With words which change their meaning in the plural, *one* is translated by *uni* (*one camp* = *una castra*) and three by *trini*. *Singuli* and *terni* are only used for the meanings *one each*, *three each*.

EXERCISE 144.

A. 1. *Feminarum praecipue et gaudia insignia erant et luctus.*
 2. *Hostes contenderunt ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos Romanis daretur.* 3. *Eam urbem fame demum in deditionem dux accepit, pactus ut inermes cum singulis abirent vestimentis.* 4. *Circumdatis moenibus, aliquot milites et promptissimum quemque*

e muro turribusque ictos amisit. 5. Bini consules cum binis exercitibus ingrediebantur fines nostros. 6. Eo tempore Romani numerum peditum equitumque auxerunt, milibus peditum et centenis equitibus in singulas legiones adjectis, ut quina milia peditum, trecenti equites essent. 7. Post proelium Hannibal postulavit ut captivi arma atque equos traderent, in capita Romana¹ trecentis nummis² quadrigatis, in socios ducenis,³ in servos centenis et ut, eo pretio persoluto, abirent. 8. Inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinque aut sex milibus passuum intererat.

B. 1. The sister and brother were equally beautiful. 2. Send me the best soldier that you have. 3. Joy and grief are necessary to men. 4. All the best of the soldiers took-up-their-stand and fought bravely. 5. One camp was in the valley. 6. We had prepared a very great (§ 324) number of ships. 7. To each soldier he gave ten horses. 8. He demanded that he and his brother might bring 15 companions. 9. Among these three camps the two brothers brought corn, of which there was need. 10. The road through the Jura mountains (sing.) was so narrow that scarcely could one cart [abreast] be led.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

331. Most of the following pronouns are compounds of *quis*, which word is declined like the relative or interrogative pronoun, the particle with which it is compounded remaining unaltered; *quisque*, *quemque*, etc. Most of them have a pronominal form, *quis*, *qua*, *quid*, and an adjectival form, *qui*, *qua* (*quae*), *quod* (see R. 69). For *ullus* and *uterque* see § 99.

¹ Literally, per Roman heads, *i.e.*, for each Roman.

² *Nummus*, literally a coin, here means sestertertius = a silver coin worth 2½d. As the sestertertius was stamped with the figure of a four-horse chariot, it is here called *nummus quadrigātus*.

³ Ablative of price. They refer to the amount of ransom to be paid.

332. I. Words meaning any, anyone, someone.

(1) quis	quā	quid	anyone, anything
aliquis	aliquā	aliquid	} someone, something
aliqui (adj.)	aliquā	aliquid	
quispiam	quaepiam	quippiam (quodpiam)	someone
quivis	quaevis	quidvis (quodvis)	anyone (you like)
quilibet	quaelibet	quidlibet (quodlibet)	anyone (you like)
(2) quisquam	—	quidquam (quodquam)	any at all
ullus (adj.)	ullā	ullum	any at all

II. Other Indefinite Pronouns,

quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)	a certain person
quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque)	each
utroque	utraque	utrumque	both (= each of two)

333. The indefinite pronoun **quis** can never begin a sentence; it is mostly used after **si**, **num** or **ne**.

If **anyone** is present, let him speak. **Si quis** adest, loquatur.

334. The words **quisquam** (pro.), **ullus** (adj.) can only be used after a **negative** or in a sentence which is virtually negative, *e.g.*, in a question expecting a negative answer, and after comparatives.

He was angry and did not praise **anyone**. **Iratus erat neque quemquam** laudavit.

335. In sentences like the last *anyone* means really **no one**. Whenever this is the case use **quisquam**.

336. **Quidam** means a **certain man** whose name I could mention if necessary.

Quisque, *each*, usually stands after some word, especially after **se**, **suus**, etc.

Each man remained in his own house. **In sua quisque domo mansit.**

The use of **quisque** with superlatives is explained in § 323.

337. NOTE.—There is no pronoun in Latin for the reciprocal **each other**. This is represented by the preposition **inter**, *among*, *between*.

These boys love **each other**. **Hi pueri inter se amant.**

EXERCISE 145.

A. 1. Cuidam *ex* (*of*) equitibus Gallis Labienus magnis praemiis persuadet ut ad Ciceronem epistolam deferat. 2. *Ut* (*when*) quisque arma ceperat, sine imperio in proelium ruunt. 3. Dux dixit, suam cuique fortunam in manu esse. 4. Octoni ordines **ternos** inter se **pedes** (§ 277) distabant. 5. Hi viri petunt ut aliquid praesidii sibi Romani dent. 6. Tum Tito Balventio (§ 212), viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula traicitur. 7. Darius duxit copias majores quam antea habuit quisquam. 8. Diem noctemque procul ab insula, in salo navem tenuit in ancoris neque quemquam ex ea exire passus est. 9. Proficiscuntur sine ullo insidiarum metu. 10. Saepe, si aliquem minus bene vestitum viderat,¹ suum amiculum dābat. 11. Praesidium in vestibulo reliquit ne quis adire curiam inussu suo, neve inde egredi possit.

B. 1. The leader selected certain young men out-of the number of his [soldiers]. 2. He asked how much money each State was giving towards building the ships. 3. To the men departing he gave orders that each of them should prepare his State for war. 4. Both armies (*i.e., each of two*) fought with great vigour. 5. All set out in-good-spirits, nor was there any one of all [those men] who feared (subjunctive, § 435) the foe. 6. Caesar arranged his army *on* (*ad*) both banks of the river that each [one] might know his place. 7. He said that there was no hope of safety and that ruin was never (= not ever) nearer to any State. 8. Then they shut the doors lest any one should go out. 9. He begged them to do nothing (= not to do anything) in his absence (§ 193). 10. You, Romans, will prevail if any one will lead you. 11. If any one announces to Labienus that his brother has been killed, will he not return home immediately?

¹ See Ex. 153, A. 8, n.

CORRELATIVES; RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

338. Besides the correlatives mentioned in § 105, p. 132, many pronouns, adjectives and adverbs are used correlatively: such are:—

<i>tālis</i>	<i>such</i>	<i>quālis</i>	<i>of what kind</i>
<i>tantus</i>	<i>so great</i>	<i>quantus</i>	<i>how great</i>
<i>tot</i>	<i>so many</i>	<i>quot</i>	<i>how many</i>

339. *Tot* and *quot* are indeclinable. All these words can be used singly or in pairs. The use of *tantus*, . . . *quantus* should be noted:

He has **as much gold as** *Quantum* auri (§ 301), *tantum* silver. *argenti habet.*

NOTES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

340. The relative clause in Latin often stands before the principal clause.

He praises greatly those **whom** he loves. *Quos amat, eos maxime laudat.*

341. The English relative pronoun can be changed to a personal (or demonstrative) pronoun and a conjunction. Thus, *He praises those whom he loves* = *He praises them because* he loves *them*.

The fire **which** burnt the bridge = The fire destroyed the shipping destroyed the shipping **and it** burnt the bridge.

342. In Latin this conjunctive force of the relative is often used to join sentences where in English a demonstrative would be used with or without a conjunction. See Ex. 146, A., Nos. 2, 3, 9.

343. In English the relative pronoun when it is the object is often omitted. In Latin this is never so, and it must always be supplied when missing in English.

Have you read the book (*which*) *Librum quem* misi, tune I sent? *legisti?*

EXERCISE 146.

A. 1. Caesar Britannis obsides imperavit;¹ *quorum* partem illi statim dederunt. 2. Reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierum-

¹ Note the construction of *impero*. It takes an accusative of the thing ordered (demanded) and a dative of the person to whom the order is given.

que passim fugere coepit; ad **quos** consecrandos Caesar equitatum misit. 3. Iterum eodem bello ille dux omnes copias eorum fugavit; **quo** facto, magnam adeptus est gloriam. 4. Quibus rex maxime obediat, eos hic vir inimicissimos habet. 5. Exploratores misit qui cognoscerent (§ 231) qualis esset natura montis. 6. Xerxes, et mari et terra, bellum inferebat Europae, cum tantis copiis, quantas nunquam antea habuit quisquam. 7. Quot casus exercitus victi¹ fuerant, tot in curas dispertiti animi Romanorum erant. 8. Ea tanta est urbs ut ex quattuor urbibus maximis constare dicatur. 9. Duodeviginti naves ex superiore portu solverunt; quae cum Britanniae appropinquarent, magna tempestas coorta est.

B. 1. He asked how much money each State gave. 2. Caesar gave the opportunity of departing to those he had kept in the camp. 3. The Gauls had not such large swords as the Romans. 4. He ordered those to be kept whom he himself had captured. 5. Caesar reached the camp *before* (*prius quam*) the Germans could (subjunc., § 407) perceive what was being done; and they (= who), suddenly terrified by all these things, were thrown utterly into confusion. 6. Not even so many soldiers were able to take the city. 7. Those whom fear does not hold, will not be conquered by kindness and favour. 8. The soldiers then promised not to go away without the order of the consuls, [a thing] which had never been done before. 9. Then Brutus spoke; [he said] there was need of a very great general. 10. He sent the legion which he had just-recently enrolled in Italy.

ADVERBS.

344. FORMATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.—Most adjectives ending in -us (positives and superlatives) form adverbs by changing -us to long -ē: *āvarus*, *greedy*; *āvārē*, *greedily*; so *cēlerrimus*, *cēlerrimē*, *very quickly*.

¹Victi is here an adjective agreeing with *exercitus*.

345. Most comparatives in *-ior* use the neuter in *-ius* as adverbs: *cēlērīor*, *quicker*; *celerius*, *more quickly*.

Like adjectives, comparative adverbs have several meanings: *celerius*, *more quickly*, *too quickly*, *rather quickly*.

346. Third declension adjectives form adverbs ending in *-ter*: *fortis*, *brave*; *fortiter*, *bravely*; *prudens*, *prudent*; *prudenter*, *prudently*.

346 (a). EXAMPLES OF COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pulchrē	pulchrūs	pulcherrimē
bēnē ¹	mēliūs	optimē

347. SPECIAL CASES.—*Nunc*, *now*, can only be used of the present. To translate *now* referring to past or future time use *iam*, *already*.

Caesar was *now* in Britain. Caesar *iam* erat in Britannia.

348. Certain English adverbs are represented by two in Latin, one of which can only be used after verbs of motion. Such are *hic*, *here*; *hūc*, *thither*; *ibi*, *there*; *eō*, *thither*.

Here is the house.	<i>Hic</i> est domus.
Come here.	<i>Veni huc</i> .

The adverb **much** used with adjectives and adverbs is **multo** (lit. *by much*). Similarly **little** = **paulo**.

Much taller.	Multo ² <i>procerior</i> .
A little before.	Paulo <i>ante</i> .

349. NEGATIVES.—*Non*, *not*, is the usual negative. *Haud*, *not*, is only used with adjectives, other adverbs and a few verbs; e.g.,

<i>Haud dubius</i> .	<i>Not doubtful</i> .
----------------------	-----------------------

350. *Nē* is used with the perfect subjunctive to form a prohibition (§ 61).

351. *Not even* is *nē . . . quidem*, the modified word being placed between *nē* and *quidem* (§ 148).

Even is translated by *etiam* or *vel*.

¹ This final *e* is long in adverbs except in *bēnē*, *mālē* and *sūpernē*.

² This may be parsed as the ablative of the measure of excess, § 292.

Not even the best of teachers **Ne optimus quidem** praeceptorum omnia docebit.
will teach all things.

Even the wise sometimes err. **Etiam** sapientes interdum errant.

352. Two negatives make an affirmative.

Nemo non audit. Everyone heard.

EXERCISE 147.

A. 1. Lysander in bello multa crudeliter avareque fecit.
2. Eo tempore Athenienses multo superiores bello esse coeperunt. 3. Illis temporibus fortius pro libertate multi loquebantur quam pugnabant. 4. Hic vir non quaesivit ubi ipse tuto viveret sed unde praesidio civibus suis esse posset. 5. Hinc, male re gesta, compluribus amissis navibus, eodem unde profectus erat, se recepit. 6. Tandem haud multo ante solis occasum, M. Pomponius, praetor, "Pugnā," inquit, "magnā victi sumus".
7. Hannibalem non fefellit cum duce mutata esse belli rationem et ferocius quam consultius (§ 321), rem hostes gesturos esse.
8. Ne in senatu quidem satis aequis auribus Dictator audiebatur.
9. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt. 10. Caesar naves comparabat quam celerrime potuit.

B. 1. We must fight bravely and die honourably. 2. He repented of his folly, but too late. 3. The way is at first very-narrow, then a little wider. 4. Among the Persians it was the greatest praise to hunt bravely, to live luxuriously. 5. I am in Rome; come here (= hither) quickly. 6. Suddenly pity succeeded.hatred. 7. Alexander said that he could tame the horse better than his elders. 8. The States of Greece bore the domination of the Macedonians reluctantly. 9. At that time the care of no *thing* (*res*) anywhere in the world, not even far-away, escaped the Romans. 10. They desired that all things should be managed cautiously and deliberately.

PREPOSITIONS.

353. Most Latin prepositions govern the accusative case; others govern the ablative; and a few accusative or ablative, according to the exact use. Some prepositions can be used adverbially.

354. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

ad <i>to, towards, at</i>	ob <i>on account of</i>
adversus <i>against</i>	p̄nēs <i>in the power of, in the possession of</i>
antē <i>before</i>	p̄r <i>through</i>
apud <i>at, near, among</i>	post <i>after, behind</i>
circā } <i>around</i>	praeter <i>beside, beyond</i>
circum }	prōpē <i>near</i>
circit̄r <i>about</i>	propius <i>nearer</i>
cis, citrā <i>on this side of</i>	propt̄r <i>near, on account of</i>
contra <i>against</i>	sēcundum <i>next, along, according to</i>
ergā <i>towards (of feelings)</i>	suprā <i>above</i>
extrā <i>outside, without</i>	trans <i>across</i>
infra <i>below</i>	ultrā <i>beyond</i>
int̄r <i>between, among</i>	versus <i>towards (= in the direction of)</i>
intrā <i>within</i>	
iuxtā <i>next to, besides</i>	

Versus usually follows the word it governs : **Romam versus.**

355. The original meaning of prepositions was to denote **time** or **place**, but most of them, besides the original meaning, are used metaphorically, *i.e.*, to denote some thought. The chief uses of the above prepositions are set out below.

356. EXAMPLES OF PREPOSITIONS TO BE LEARNT BY HEART.

1. Hannibal equites quingentos **ad castra Romana** miserat speculatum.

1 (a). Inter Romanos Poenosque maximum proelium **ad Cannas** factum est.

2. Ne **adversus te** quidem gloriabor.

3. Caesar equitatum **ante se** misit.

4. **Apud Germanos** Mercurius colebatur.

5. Romani bellum gerebant **circa moenia** Carthaginīs.

6. Castra Romana erant **cis Ib̄rum**.

7. Caesar **contra Gallos** exercitum duxit.

8. O Pater ne fueris malus **erga me**.
9. Dux castra **extra urbem** habebat.
10. **Infra frontem** sunt oculi.
11. **Inter bina castra** tria milia passuum fuerunt.
12. **Intra paucos dies** Carthaginem delebimus.
13. **Iuxta murum** dux castra posuit.
14. Barbarus eum **ob iram** interfecit.
15. Dux erat Hannibal **penes quem** summa scientia belli erat.
16. **Per exploratores** Caesar certior factus est oppidum captum esse.
17. **Per vias** floribus stratas milites canentes ibant.
18. **Post hoc proelium** Athenienses Miltiadi maximam classem dederunt.
19. Nocte proxima, nihil **praeter arma ferente** secum *milite*, dux castra reliquit.
20. Militum pars, **praeter spem** incolumis, in castra pervenit.
21. **Prope eum vicum** Hannibal castra posuit.
22. Haec loca nemo incolebat **propter aquae inopiam**.
23. Hae legiones **secundum mare** iter faciebant.
24. **Supra duo milia** hominum Galli amiserunt.
25. Ei **trans Mosam** frumenti causam ierant.
26. Civitas ea longe opulentissima **ultra Iberum** fuit.

EXERCISE 148.

A. 1. In Spain are many towers which they use against robbers. 2. Caesar reached the camp before sunrise. 3. Among the Germans there was *no* (*nihil*, § 301) private land. 4. Alexander has left a very-great reputation among those-who-came-after-him (= his successors). 5. In the night they carried wood round his cottage and set-fire-to it. 6. Gaul is on-this-side of the Alps. 7. These boys do nothing against [their own] will. 8. Hannibal, standing at the altar, confirmed his hatred towards the Romans. 9. None of the soldiers dared to advance

outside the line-of-march. 10. Among the captives were the mother, wife and two daughters of the King.

B. 1. The enemy were holding themselves within those woods. 2. On that account (= on account of that thing) he returned rapidly to Rome. 3. In the-hands-of those chiefs was the whole public-weal. 4. These men were able to effect many things through the Senate. 5. After this victory Hannibal moved his camp into Italy. 6. [At] the first rush (R. 14) they captured all the city except the citadel. 7. The leader placed the cavalry on the right wing—that was nearer the river. 8. The Romans had no opportunity of fighting on account of the time of the year. 9. The Germans dwell across the Rhine. 10. Beyond the mountain lies a valley.

357. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

a (ab before vowels) <i>by, from</i>	ē or ex <i>out of</i>
clam <i>secretly, without the knowledge of</i>	prae <i>before, in comparison with</i>
cōram <i>in the presence of</i>	prō <i>before, on behalf of, instead of, in return for</i>
cum <i>with, together with</i>	sīnē <i>without</i>
dē <i>down from, from, concerning</i>	tēnus <i>as far as</i>

358. NOTES.—1. **Cum** denotes accompaniment and manner. *Misit Labienum cum duabus legionibus; cum celeritate* (see § 290). **With**, meaning instrument, is translated by the ablative alone.

2. **Cum** is affixed to the ablatives *me, te, se, nobis, vobis*, and usually *quo* and *quibus*, e.g., *mecum*.

3. **Ex** is used before all letters; **e** only before consonants.

4. **Prae** is not much used of place; in this sense **pro** is the commonest word: *pro castris*, before the camp. With this contrast **ante**, which is chiefly used of time: *ante lucem*, before dawn.

5. **Prae** is chiefly used with restrictive words like *vix, non*.

The commands could not be heard for the noise and tumult. **Prae strepitu ac tumultu imperium accipi non poterat.**

6. **Tēnus**, which stands after its noun, sometimes governs the genitive with plural nouns: *Alpium tenus*, as far as the Alps.

359. Prepositions governing both **accusative** and **ablative** : **In, in, on, into ; sub, under ; and super, above, over ;** take the accusative when meaning **motion towards**, the ablative when meaning **rest in a place**.

360. **Sub** with the accusative usually refers to time and means *towards* : **Sub vesperum, towards evening.**

EXERCISE 149.

A. 1. Eum procul ab eo loco infoderunt quo mortuus est. 2. Graeci voluerunt Darium interficere **cum eis copiis** quas **secum** transportaverat. 3. **Coram amico** multa narravit philosophus. 4. Secunda vigilia, **magno cum strepitu ac tumultu** e castris egressi sunt. 5. **De eius morte** multa scripta sunt. 6. Multi, incendio territi, **de turre** sese praecipitabant. 7. Nihil unquam, neque insolens neque gloriosum **ex ore** exiit. 8. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, **e quibus** alter ad Caesarem venit. 9. Nostri non poterant satis decernere **prae imbri quā (where)** suis opem ferrent (§ 200). 10. Diogenes **pro poculo** manibus utebatur. 11. Quoniam ipse **pro se** dicere non poterat, verba pro eo facit frater eius. 12. Ii in statione **pro castris** fuerant. 13. **Sine ullo morbo** lumina oculorum amisit. 14. Aqua, aucta nocturno imbri, erat **pectoribus tenuis**. 15. Acies instructa erat **sub montis radicibus**. 16. **Sub occasum** solis destiterunt, seque in castra receperunt. 17. Equus repente **super caput** consulem effudit.

B. 1. The leader set out with twenty ships. 2. The Gauls were contending with the Germans concerning those territories. 3. Will you make friends (= friendship) with us? 4. In the battle the Britons leaped from (= out of) their chariots. 5. King Darius had made a bridge over (= in) the river. 6. Towards evening they hastened into camp. 7. "You will not see the sun for the multitude of arrows." "Then we will fight in the shade." 8. The Britons used-to-sacrifice men for victims.

9. They were fighting daily before the camp. 10. In the sacred wood a flock was grazing without shepherd.

C. 1. Supplies could be carried to him without danger. 2. Agesilaus said that he was about-to-seize all Asia as-far-as the Taurus. 3. Do you not see the enemy under [your very] eyes burning the houses of your allies? 4. They journeyed under a burning sun, without water, through the midst (§ 303) of a sandy-waste. 5. Do you see the Gauls shaking their spears over their heads? 6. The river Meuse flows-forth out of the Vosges mountains. 7. Having said these words, he descended under the earth. 8. Come with us to-day, we will come with you to-morrow. 9. Do you wish to fight the enemy with arms or with poison? 10. These ambassadors had come to Caesar from Gaul concerning peace.

CONJUNCTIONS.

361. Conjunctions are divided into **co-ordinating** and **subordinating**. When the clauses joined by a conjunction are grammatically independent they are called **co-ordinate clauses** and the conjunction joining them is a **co-ordinating conjunction**.

My brother saw him yesterday **and** I shall see him to-morrow.

362. The chief **co-ordinating conjunctions** are: **and** (*et, -que, atque*); **or** (*aut, vel, -ve*); **but** (*sed, autem*); **nevertheless** (*tamen*); **therefore** (*ergo, igitur*); **for** (*nam, enim*); **quodque** (*also*).

363. Of these words *enim, autem, quidem, quoque* cannot stand first in a clause (§ 10, p. 310).

364. *Que* is used to join words which habitually go together; *atque* is stronger than *et*; it means *and also, and therefore*.

365. When several nouns are joined by *and*, Latin either omits *et* altogether or inserts it with each word.

Father, mother **and** children. *Pater et mater et liberi*
or *Pater, mater, liberi*.

366. Similarly *et* is often omitted between two clauses.

367. When a clause joined by *et* has a negative, the negative is joined to -que, thus *nēque* (or *nec*).

The boy is foolish **and not** Puer stultus est **neque** be-
kind to his sister. nignus sorori.

368. Some conjunctions are used in pairs, *i.e.*, correlatively.

<i>et</i> . . . <i>et</i>	<i>both</i> . . . <i>and</i>
<i>cum</i> . . . <i>tum</i>	<i>both</i> . . . <i>and</i>
<i>nēque</i> (<i>nec</i>) . . . <i>nēque</i> (<i>nec</i>)	<i>neither</i> . . . <i>nor</i>
<i>aut</i> . . . <i>aut</i>	<i>either</i> . . . <i>or</i>
<i>vel</i> . . . <i>vel</i>	<i>either</i> . . . <i>or</i>
<i>sivē</i> (<i>seu</i>) . . . <i>sivē</i> (<i>seu</i>)	<i>whether</i> . . . <i>or</i>
<i>nōn solum</i> . . . <i>sed etiam</i>	<i>not only</i> . . . <i>but also</i>

369. *Aut* makes a much stronger distinction than *vel*; it is used in cases where only one of the alternatives can be true.

Haec sunt *aut* (*either*) vera *aut* (*or else*) falsa.

370. *Vel*, which is derived from the verb *velle*, implies one or the other, whichever you wish.

I will take **either** an apple or (*if you like*) *Vel* pōmum **vel** pīrum
a pear. capiam.

* * 371. CAUTION.—Remember that neither *aut*, *vel* nor *sivē* can be used for *whether* or or in questions. In the same way *utrum*, *num* and *an* can *only* be used in questions (§§ 205-8).

372. The words *quidem*, *on the one hand*, *indeed*, and *autem* (or *vērō*) *on the other hand*, *however*, are often used to bring into prominence two contrasted words. They never stand first, but immediately after the word emphasised.

You **indeed** are a Gaul; that man **on** Tu **quidem** Gallus es;
the other hand is a German. ille **autem** Germanus.

373. *Autem* is often used, without *quidem*, to emphasise a word in the second half of a sentence.

EXERCISE 150.

- A. 1. Nullo labore aut corpus fatigari aut animus vinci poterat.
2. Extra urbem, in Martis colle, sub dio,¹ Graecorum magistrātus ius dicebat. Nec oratoribus licebat per longos sermones

¹ Also spelled *divo*.

iudicum affectus movere. Audita causā, hi calculum nigrum aut candidum in urnam tacite deponebant. 3. Germani neque Druides habebant neque sacrificiis studebant. 4. Videt omnia esse quietā apud hostes, nec castra ullo tumultu mota. 5. Eā victoriā non solum Athenae sed etiam cuncta Graecia liberata est. 6. Themistocles monuit ut omnes serviatque liberi operam darent ad murum extruendum, neque ulli loco parcerent, sive privatus esset, sive publicus. 7. Athenienses sciunt quidem recta facere, sed facere nolunt. 8. Xerxes quidem exercitum ingentem duxit; Graecis autem pauci homines erant. 9. Putaverunt regem, ponte rescisso, vel¹ hostium ferro vel¹ inopiā interiturum esse. 10. Dicunt neminem eo (§ 18) excellentiorem fuisse vel in vitiis vel in virtutibus.

B. 1. The region is rough, and cannot be cultivated without great labour. 2. It is easy either for a messenger or a letter to be sent. 3. These men were not able to bear the labour either of war or of flight. 4. This consul overcame Jugurtha [in] many battles, [and] he killed or captured his elephants. 5. The Gauls neither came to the council nor did they obey his rule. 6. Themistocles was great in war, and he was not less in peace. 7. Pericles asked all States, whether small or great, to send ambassadors to Athens. 8. All must take-up arms either for the Romans or for their enemies. 9. They longed-for a great leader not only in war but also in peace. 10. The Romans indeed have many allies; we, however, are without friends.

INTERJECTIONS.

374. Interjections are indeclinable words used in exclamations. They have no grammatical connection with the sentence in which they occur, and so do not influence the case of nouns (except *vae*, e.g., *vae victis*, *vae to the conquered*).

¹ That is, he would perish by one means or the other; which it was is unimportant.

Examples of interjections:—

En (*behold*), hic est qui legiones nostras cecidit.

Ecce (*behold*), senex rure redit.

375. In this connection may be noted the accusative used in exclamations (§ 280).

O, rectam sinceramque vitam, O, dulce otium, honestum ac paene omni negotio pulchrius!

375 (a). The imperative **salvē**¹ (plural **salvēte**), literally *be well*, is used as a greeting.

Good morning, Cassius! **Salve**, Cassi!

Good morning to you also. **Salve** et tu.

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

376. The simplest form of a **simple sentence** consists of one finite verb with its **subject** (and **object** if the verb is transitive). *Caesar conquered the Gauls.*

377. A simple sentence may have three forms: It may be

(a) A statement Caesar conquered the Gauls.

(b) A question Did Caesar conquer the Gauls?

(c) A command or wish O Caesar! conquer the Gauls
or May Caesar conquer the Gauls!

378. Two or more simple sentences joined by co-ordinate conjunctions form a **compound sentence**. *Caesar conquered the Gauls and visited Britain.*

379. Each clause in a compound sentence is grammatically independent of the other clauses.

380. The nouns in a simple sentence may be qualified by **adjectives**, the verbs by **adverbs**. *The great Caesar eventually conquered the Gauls.*

381. Any noun, adjective or adverb in a sentence may be expanded into a separate sentence or clause. In this case the original simple sentence is called the **principal clause**. Thus: *The great Caesar conquered the Gauls* becomes *Caesar who was a great general conquered the Gauls.*

Principal clause Caesar conquered the Gauls

Dependent clause who was a great general.

¹ The infinitive also is used, **salvēre**, otherwise the verb is defective.

332. When a clause takes the place of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb in a principal clause, it is called a dependent clause. We have thus three classes of dependent clauses.

1. A noun clause is either the subject or object of the verb of the principal clause.

(a) Subject That Caesar conquered the Gauls is certain.

(b) Object We all know that Caesar conquered the Gauls.

2. An adjective clause qualifies or distinguishes some noun in the principal clause.

Caesar who conquered the Gauls was murdered by conspirators.

3. An adverbial clause modifies a verb, adjective or adverb in the principal clause.

When Caesar had conquered the Gauls he went to Britain.

333. It has already been seen that in Latin noun clauses are represented by the accusative and infinitive (§ 126), or else by a dependent question. Adjective clauses have already been treated (see also §§ 431-8). It remains therefore to deal with adverbial clauses.

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE AND CONSEQUENCE.

334. Purpose . They prepared arms in-order that they might conquer their neighbours.

Consequence They fought so bravely that (*as a consequence*) they conquered their neighbours.

335. Clauses of purpose or final clauses have the verb in the subjunctive. In such clauses the word for that is *ut*; that not is translated by *nē*. *Dux milites laudabat ne pericula vitarent.*

336. When a clause of purpose contains a comparative, that is translated by *quo* (= by which), not by *ut*.

They chose this leader that they might the more easily drive back the enemy. *Hunc ducem delegerunt quo facilius hostes repellerent.*

337. Clauses of consequence take the subjunctive in Latin, but the indicative in English.

The soldier is so brave that he overcomes everybody. *Miles adeo fortis est ut omnes superet.*

388. It has been seen that in clauses of **purpose**, the **negative** in a dependent clause is combined with the conjunction forming **ne**. This is never so in clauses of **consequence**, **ut . . . non** being used.

Purpose Arma parant **ne** vincantur.

Consequence Pugnauerunt tam fortiter **ut non** victi sint.

389. This principle is applied to all negative expressions like **no one**, **never**. Thus:—

	Purpose	Consequence
that nobody	= ne quis	ut nemo
that nothing	= ne quid	ut nihil
that no	= ne ullus	ut nullus
that never	= ne unquam	ut nunquam

390. NOTE.—**Ut** is followed by the subjunctive in clauses of purpose and consequence.

Ut meaning **that** or **so that** takes the subjunctive.

Ut meaning **as** or **when** takes the indicative.

See Ex. 151, A. 8.

391. With verbs of **fearing**, **that** is translated by **ne**, **that not** by **ut** with the subjunctive.

I fear **that** he will come. Vereor **ne** veniat.

I fear **that** he will **not** come. Vereor **ut** veniat.

392. This is usually explained thus: I fear *that he will come* means I fear and my **purpose** is *that he may not come*. In I fear *that he will not come* the meaning is I am full of fear, but my desire is *that he may come*.¹

It should be noticed that the English tense is future, while the Latin is present subjunctive.

EXERCISE 151.

Viva voce. Translate:—

1. The soldier was so brave that no one blamed him. 2. He walked so quickly that he reached the town in (§ 441) two

¹ Another explanation is that **ut** here means *how*, so that *vereor ut veniat* means *I am full of fear as to how he may come*, the clause *ut veniat* thus being a dependent question.

hours. 3. They feared that they would be overcome. 4. We fear that the boy is not strong enough. 5. Write carefully, that your friends may read more easily. 6. He was preparing so that he might write a longer letter.

A. 1. Accidit **ut** Athenienses colonos Chersōnēsū mittere **vellent**. 2. Quale praemium sit tributum docebo, **quo facilius** intellegi possit eandem omnium civitatum esse naturam. 3. Adeo angusto mari confligit **ut** eius multitudo navium explicari **non** potuerit. 4. Cum plurimum in civitate posset, legem tulit **ne quis** ante actarum rerum accusaretur, **neve**¹ multaretur. 5. Hoc itinere adeo gravi morbo afficitur oculorum **ut** postea **nunquam** dextero aequae bene usus sit. 6. Tantus fuit ardor animorum **ut** eum motum terrae quae magnas partes Italiae prostravit, **nemo** pugnantium (R. 15) senserit. 7. Darius, veritus ne vivus veniret in hostium potestatem, de curru desiliit et *in (on)* equum imponitur. 8. Cum Caesar esset in citeriore Gallia, *ita ut (just as)* supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur.

B. 1. The Persians were so terrified that they sought their ships, not their camp. 2. He was such a leader that not only was he compared *with (cum)* the first [men] of his age, but no one even of his elders was preferred [to him]. 3. That cast so great a terror on (§ 211) the soldiers that no-one dared *to move (egredior)* outside the entrenchment. 4. They surrounded the harbour with a wall, that it might be safe. 5. The consul was wasting time in carrying-on the war that he might the longer be in [his] office (= magistracy). 6. I fear, if-we-hesitate-so (= us hesitating so), that Hannibal will destroy our city. 7. They feared that the allies would not reach the city before night. 8. He advised that no one should be allowed to escape.

¹ Nēve = *ne* repeated and *-ve*, or (see § 362 and 10, p. 310). In this sentence *ante* is used as an adverb. *Actarum* comes from *ago*.

QUOMINUS AND QUIN.

393. Verbs of **preventing** or **hindering** are followed by **quōminus** (i.e., *quo-minus*, by which the less) and the subjunctive. In English a verbal noun is used.

They prevented us **from setting out** (= by which the less we might set out). Nobis obstabant **quominus proficisceremur**.

394. The chief verbs used with **quominus** are *impēdiō*, to prevent; *obstare* (with dative of the person), to prevent; *dēterreo*, to frighten from, to deter.

395. **Quin** = *but that* with the **subjunctive** can only be used after negative expressions, or expressions which are virtually negative, especially after verbs of **doubting**.

Do you doubt (= surely you do not doubt) **that** he came? *Dubitasne quin venerit?*

396. **Quin** with the **subjunctive** is also used after **absum** used impersonally.

He very nearly died = It was within a very little **but that** he died. *Minimum afit quin mortuus sit.*

397. **Quin** with the **subjunctive** is also used in sentences like the following. Compare § 437.

There is no one **who** does not praise him. *Nemo est quin eum laudet.*

398. In cases like §§ 395-6 **quin** is *quī* (an old ablative = *quo*) combined with *ne* the negative. In § 397 **quin** = the nom. *qui* with the negative *ne*.

EXERCISE 152.

Viva voce :—

1. He prevents me from writing.
2. He prevented us from reading.
3. Who doubts but that they were captured alive.
4. Why did he not prevent men from enjoying the gardens?
5. I nearly broke my (= dative of pronoun) arm.
6. He nearly

broke his¹ arm. 7. There is no one who does not praise Homer. 8. He frightened the merchants from remaining in the city. 9. Night will not prevent me from running quickly. 10. Who is there so uncivilised as not to pity us?

A. 1. *Tantae liberalitatis fuit Cimon ut nunquam in suis hortis custodem imposuerit fructus servandi gratiā ne quis impediretur quominus eis rebus, quibus² quisque vellet, frueretur.* 2. Orator sic verba fecit ut nemo tam ferus fuerit quin eius casum lacrymaret. 3. Omnia confessus est, neque recusavit quominus legis poenam subiret. 4. Caesar oppido potitur, perpaucis ex hostium numero desideratis quin cuncti vivi caperentur. 5. Nemo est tam fortis quin rei novitate perturbetur. 6. Nec imber, nec nox, nec nix impedit nuntios Persicos quominus suum quisque cursum³ quam celerrime conficiat.

B. 1. The Greeks did not doubt but that in a short time they would perish. 2. Who doubts but that by sitting still we shall overcome this enemy? 3. Poor health prevented Cicero from leading the army. 4. There is no doubt that our enemy is brave. 5. The rapidity of the river prevents us from making a bridge. 6. I do not doubt but that those things are true. 7. Nothing prevents us from going out. 8. No one is so brave as not to be afraid sometimes. 9. Among the Greeks there was no doubt that Neptune taught them the art of navigating. 10. In that year the Gauls very-nearly captured Rome.

CLAUSES OF TIME.

399. ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS.—In English the same word is frequently an *adverb*, *preposition* or *conjunction* according to its use. This is rarely so in Latin, and it will be necessary before translating an English word to decide what part of speech it is.

¹ Use the dative of the corresponding pronoun instead of the possessive adjective.

² What case and why?

³ *I.e.*, when carrying a message.

400. An **adverb** tells *when, where*, etc., by itself, *e.g., He came after.*

A **preposition** forms, with a noun or pronoun, a phrase which tells when or why, etc., or qualifies a noun, *e.g., He came after (preposition) the battle.*

401. A **conjunction** introduces a clause, *i.e.*, a group of words containing a finite verb. *He came after (conjunction) the battle was finished.*

402. In Latin these three uses of the word *after* would necessitate three different Latin words. *Adverb, postea; preposition, post; conjunction, postquam.*

403. Clauses of time introduced by words meaning *when*, *e.g., cum, ūbi, postquam (after), simūl atque (as soon as)*, all usually take the indicative mood except those introduced by **cum**.

Quae ūbi hostes **viderunt**, in silvam se receperunt.

Cum with the imperfect or pluperfect takes the **subjunctive**.

Caesar, **cum Galli victi essent**, in Italiam rediit.

404. The reason for this is that the clause *when the Gauls were conquered* not only tells the *time* but also the *cause* of Caesar's return.

405. Whenever this **causal meaning** of the clause introduced by **cum** is at all strongly felt, **cum** takes the subjunctive with all tenses.

406. **Cum**, however, always takes the **indicative** when time merely is meant, *i.e.*, where two events are spoken of as being merely **contemporaneous**.

When I was in the city, you were **Cum** in urbe **eram**, tu domi
at home. eras.

407. Other conjunctions of time, *e.g., dum, while; dōnēc, as long as; quamdiū, as long as; quoad, until*, take the **indicative**, unless some additional meaning, *e.g., purpose*, is implied, when the **subjunctive** is used.

Dum ea Romani **parant** iam Saguntum summā vi oppugnabatur.

Obsidio per paucos dies magis quam oppugnatio fuit, **dum** vulnus ducis **curaretur** (so that the leader's wound might be healed), i.e.; to give the wound time to heal.

Sometimes it is not easy to clearly determine this use of the **subjunctive** with **dum**. When *dum* implies that two actions are merely contemporaneous and are otherwise not connected the indicative is used. When, however, there is some other connection between the two sentences, even mere contingency, the subjunctive is used.

408. * * NOTE.—When **dum** denotes a longer period during part of which some other event has happened, it always takes the **present** tense, even when referring to the past. See ex. § 407.

409. CAUTION.—When in questions is translated by **quando**, and dependent questions must of course have the verb in the subjunctive (§§ 196-202).

EXERCISE 153.

A. 1. **Dum** Iāson redit praeter Siciliae et Italiae litora, navem Nērēidēs humeris suscipiunt. 2. Priusquam satis certa consilia essent, repens alia nuntiatur clades. 3. *Cum* (though) hic dux omnes gloriā anteiret, omnibus tamen carus erat. 4. Nostri Britannos reppulerunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt quoad subsidio confisi equites, *cum* (since) post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt. 5. Hostes, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt. 6. Cn. Servilius consul, postquam de collegae exercitūque caede audivit,¹ metuens ne abesset in discrimine extremo, ad urbem iter intendit. 7. Nostri, autem, elati spe celeris victoriae, hostes consecuti sunt, neque **prius** finem sequendi fecerunt, **quam** muro oppidi portisque appropinqua-

¹ English requires the pluperfect here. This use of the perfect in place of the pluperfect is very common in Latin after conjunctions like *postquam* and words of similar meaning.

rent. 8. *Britanni pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebant: tum, cum equitatus noster praedandi causā se in agros elecerat*,¹ omnibus viis notis, essedarios ex silvis emittebant.

B. 1. The Roman general, when he saw himself (to be) wearied with artifices, decided to storm Zama, a large town. 2. While these things were being done, one legion, which was called the seventh, was sent to-get-corn. 3. Scipio, after he [had] heard that the enemy had moved out-of winter-quarters, decided to prepare [for] battle. 4. Certain writers say that there were 87,200 armed-men in the Roman camp when² they fought (§ 256) *at (ad)* Cannae. 5. The consuls waited a few days while the allies were coming. 6. The Romans, a shout having arisen on-all-sides, before they really saw, felt that they were surrounded. 7. He advised Caesar to fight before the enemies' forces were greater. 8. When he had come there he saw that great forces of the Germans had been drawn up *on (ad)* the other³ bank of the river. 9. While the consul at Rome was giving his attention to appeasing the gods, Hannibal set out from his winter-quarters. 10. He had advised them to flee while there were few of the enemy round the camp.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

410. Sentences containing if-clauses are analysed thus:—

Conditional clause *If the soldier is brave*

Principal clause *the leader praises.*

411. The conditional clause is sometimes called the *Protasis*, the principal clause the *Apodosis*.

¹ This use of the pluperfect indicative after *cum* implies repeated action. Translate *whenever they betook themselves*, etc

² This is clearly time merely.

³ How many banks has a river? (§ 106.)

RULES FOR MOOD AND TENSE OF CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

412. The conditional clause and the principal clause must always be both in the same mood and tense.

(a) If the **principal clause** is **indicative** or **imperative** the **conditional clause** must be **indicative**.

(b) If the **principal clause** is **subjunctive** the **conditional clause** must be **subjunctive**.

413. NOTE.—As a rule a principal clause is either indicative or imperative, but when we wish to express not a **fact** but a **mere conception** of the mind, that is, something purely **imaginary**, the subjunctive is used, even in *principal clauses*; e.g.,

If he were here I should be happy. Si adesset ego laetus essem.

414. The chief difficulty with regard to the **tense** in conditional clauses is when the principal clause is **future** and when consequently the **conditional clause** must be either **future** or **future perfect**, according to the sense (R. 40).

EXAMPLES OF CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

(A) Both clauses **indicative** mood and both clauses the **same tense** :—

If the soldier **is** brave the leader Si miles **est** fortis, dux laudat.
praises.

If the soldier **is** brave the leader Si miles **erit** (or *fuert*) fortis, dux laudabit.
will praise.

(B) Both clauses **subjunctive** and usually the same tense :—

If the soldier **were** brave the Si miles **sit** fortis, dux laudat.
leader **would praise.**

If the soldier **were** (now) brave the Si miles **esset** fortis, dux laudaret.
leader **would praise.**

If the soldier **had been** brave the Si miles **fuisset** fortis, dux laudavisset.
leader **would have praised.**

415. It will be noticed that *were* is used in English to put an **imaginary** case which is meant to be present or even future. Latin also uses the **imperfect subjunctive** in the same way to refer to the present, but never to the future. When, therefore, **were** refers to the future it must be translated by the Latin **present subjunctive**. *If he were present to-morrow I should praise, si cras adsit* (= suppose him to be present to-morrow)

laudem. When **were**, referring to the present, is emphatic, it will be translated by the imperfect subjunctive.

416. CAUTION.—**Si**, *if*, can never be used in a question in Latin. *Ask him if he will come* must be translated *Ask him whether (= num) he will come*.

417. The other conditional conjunctions, **nisi**, *unless*; **si nōn**, *if not*; **etsi**, *even if*; **sīn**, *but if*, and the word **ūtīnām**, *would that! O that*, all follow the same rules as **si**.

EXERCISE 154.

Viva voce. Translate:—

1. If you do this I blame.
2. If you do this I shall blame.
3. If you did this (now) I should blame.
4. If you did this I should blame.
5. If you had done this I should have blamed.
6. If you wish we will make peace with you.
7. If you had been willing we would have made peace with you.
8. If they give hostages the Romans will pardon them.
9. He is wretched if he is unjust.
10. He will be wretched if he is unjust.
11. He used-to-be wretched if he was unjust.
12. He would be wretched if he were unjust.

A. 1. Quid, si moriendum pro patria esset, faceretis? 2. Plura dicerem, si timidis virtutem verba adderent. 3. Si tot exempla virtutis non movent, nihil unquam movebit.¹ 4. Si qua in parte nostri laborare videbantur, eō signa inferri Caesar iubebat. 5. Nisi haec fecerint, Caesar civitatem bello prosequetur. 6. Naves propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant. 7. Si veneris ad me supplex, reddam tibi sine

¹This is only an apparent exception to § 412. It means, If these things do not move you *now*, nothing in the *future* will ever- etc.

pretio et matrem et coniugem et liberos. 8. Si populus Romanus nobiscum pacem facere volet, nos in eam partem ibimus, ubi nos constitueris; sin bello persequi perseveres,¹ ne oblitus sis¹ virtutis nostrae. 9. Alexander Babylone centum viginti milia talenta traxit, atque utinam non aliud gravius fecisset! 10. *Ferunt (they say) Pýthāgōrēos*, si quid *affirmarent** in disputando, cum ex eis *quaereretur*,* quare ita *esset*,* **respondere solitos esse**, "Ipse² dixit". 11. Salinator, qui Tarento amisso in arcem fugerat, Fabio dixit, "meā operā, Q. Fabi, Tarentum recepisti". "Certe," inquit ridens, "nam nisi tu amisisses, numquam recepissem."

* * Account for these subjunctives. See also §§ 197, 403, 412.

B. 1. If I had not been Alexander I should wish to be Diogenes. 2. O Demosthenes, if thou hadst had strength equal to thy mind, Alexander would not have conquered the Greeks. 3. Homer would not have attributed to Ulysses so much praise in speaking unless eloquence had then been held in honour (= there had been an honour of eloquence). 4. If I had known that you were here I would have come to you myself. 5. He promised³ the captain many things if he preserved his life. 6. He said that he would return to camp if Caesar would permit. 7. We shall soon come if we finish the war. 8. Unless he conquers the Gauls he will not return to Rome. 9. Leap-down from (*ex*) the ship unless you wish to surrender the standards to the enemy. 10. If Hamilcar had lived longer he would have led the Carthaginians against the Romans.

¹ *Ne oblitus sis* is imperative and therefore we should expect the indicative in the if-clause. But it is only an apparent violation of the rule, for the conditional clause expresses a purely imaginary condition, and the principal clause, though imperative, really means *I should advise you not to forget*, etc.

² *I.e.*, Pythagoras said it, implying that that was sufficient.

³ This means, *He would give if*, etc.

CLAUSES OF CONCESSION, CAUSE AND COMPARISON.

418. A **concessive** clause *concedes* or *admits* a fact, real or imaginary, while the statement of the principal clause is insisted on as true in spite of that concession.

Clause of concession	Although the rod was made of iron
Principal clause	he broke it.

419. **Quamquam**, *although*, used in dealing with **facts** takes the **indicative**.

Quamvis, *although*, used with imaginary facts, requires the **subjunctive**.

Although he is clever, he has been deceived.	Quamquam callidus est, tamen deceptus est.
--	---

Although he overcame all, yet he is dear to all.	Quamvis omnes superaret, omnibus tamen carus est.
--	--

420. *Etsi*, *even if*, has the same construction as *si* (§§ 410-17).

421. Clauses of **cause** are introduced by **quod**, or **quia**, *because*; **quoniam**, *since*; they take the **indicative** mood.

Non longius prosequi poterant **quod** equites cursum tenere non **potuerant**.

422. But all **clauses of cause** may be in the **subjunctive** (especially after verbs of *complaining* or *accusing*) whenever it is desired to make it clear that the **cause** stated is merely the **opinion** of the speaker and may or may not be true.

Caesar complained because they had waged the war without a cause.	Caesar questus est quod bellum sine causâ intulissent.
--	---

423. They may have had a cause for the war, but Caesar states it as his *opinion* that they had fought without cause. Hence the **subjunctive**. This is often called **virtual oratio obliqua** because such a sentence is equivalent to *Caesar said that they had warred*, etc. (§ 461).

424. **Comparative** clauses take the **indicative** except where the comparison is regarded as imaginary, *i.e.*, as a mere conception of the mind.

sunt velut foedo omine incipiendae rei. 8. Consul, impavidus, turbatos ordines instruit ut tempus locusque patitur. 9. Quo timoris minus est, eo minus periculi. 10. Eo tempore Minucius exercitui praeerat, profecto, sicut ante dictum est, ad urbem dictatore. 11. Hi longe alia ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coeperunt. 12. Planities patebat tantum in latitudinem, quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat.

B. 1. Themistocles was walking in a public-place because [he said] he could not get-to-sleep. 2. Adherbal, although he had sent ambassadors to Rome, nevertheless, relying on the great-number of his soldiers, was preparing to struggle with arms. 3. They accused him in-his-absence (= absent) because [they said] he had made an alliance with the king of the Persians. 4. Not more swiftly than I feared has fortune checked his rashness. 5. Never was I different (= other) than I now am. 6. He ordered as many skin-bags [as possible] to be prepared. 7. The Aedui complained because these men were ravaging their lands. 8. The richer a man is, the more money can he give to the poor. 9. As has been said before, the consul remained at Rome all that winter. 10. Xerxes led against the Greeks such great forces as no one ever had before.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.

431. It has been already pointed out (§ 92) that the chief use of the relative clause is to qualify some noun in another clause. Thus: *The fire which burnt the bridge destroyed some shipping.* In this case the clause *which burnt the bridge* merely tells which fire is meant and is exactly like an adjective in its use.

432. A relative pronoun introducing a clause of this kind can be changed into a personal pronoun and a co-ordinate conjunction. Thus: *The fire destroyed some shipping and it burnt the bridge.*

433. Whenever a relative clause is merely adjectival it takes the indicative mood.

434. Sometimes, however, the relative clause is more than merely adjectival. Thus: *I want a gardener who can look after a horse* = *I want such a gardener that he can also look after a horse.* In this case the

relative clause clearly expresses **consequence** and as such would take the subjunctive (§ 387).

435. RULE.—When the relative clause expresses **purpose, consequence, cause or concession**, it takes the **subjunctive**.

(a) **Purpose** :—

They sent ambassadors to consult Legatos miserunt qui Apol-
Apollo (= *who might consult*). linem **consulerent**.

(b) **Consequence** :—

There are some men who always Sunt qui semper ducem cul-
blame the leader (= *such that* pent.
they always blame).

(c) **Concession** :—

I praise you who are poor (= *tho' you* Te, qui pauper sis, ego
are poor). laudo.

436. The subjunctive of consequence is used in relative clauses, especially after phrases like *There are some who, there is no one who, who is there who?* (= there is no one who).

437. After **nemo, nullus**, and the interrogative **quis** (when used to virtually mean *nemo*), if the relative clause is negative, the negative particle is joined on to the relative pronoun and is written **quīn** (= *quī-nē*).

There is no one **who** does **not** Nemo est **quīn** nos culpet.
blame us.

438. The subjunctive of consequence is also used after **dignus** and **indignus**, and comparatives with **quam**.

The river is too deep **to be crossed** Fluvius altior est **quam** qui
= the river is deeper than that (or ut) **transeatur**.
it may be crossed.

EXERCISE 156.

A. 1. Xerxes proposuit praemium ei qui invenisset novam voluptatem. 2. Hortensius nullum diem esse patiebatur quin aut in foro diceret aut meditaretur extra forum. 3. Sunt certa

vitia quae nemo est quin effugere cupiat. 4. Fuere quos pavor nando etiam capessere fugam impulerit. 5. "Num litteras," inquit, "ab senatu affers quae rem gerere vetent?" 6. Darius pontem fecit in Istro Flumine qua copias traduceret. 7. Omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenire iussit. 8. Alexander iussit Perdiccam navigia facere quibus in altiora transportari posset exercitus. 9. In eis copiis erant sagittarii, sicuti ante dictum est, gravioribus telis quam ut apte excuti possent. 10. Inventi multi sunt, qui non modo pecuniam, sed etiam vitam profundere pro patria parati essent. 11. Omnia quibus naves refici possent deerant, neque erant aliae naves quibus milites possent reportari.

B. 1. He sent the Lacedaemonians to seize Thermopylae. 2. There was not a town which defended itself with arms. 3. There is no defence (*munitio*) here to receive the terrified [soldiers]. 4. To Caesar come the Britons, promising (= who may promise) to give hostages. 5. He dug a harbour to contain *in-safety* (*tuto*) 1,000 triremes. 6. The Greeks used-to-put in the market-place the images of citizens who *had served* (*mereor de*) the fatherland well. 7. The swords are too heavy to be drawn. 8. These soldiers are unworthy to be praised (= who may be praised). 9. Who is [there] who would not fight for his native land? 10. There is no one who does not know that the Romans destroyed Carthage.

TIME, AGE.

439. Time when is put in the ablative; **time how long** in the accusative (sometimes with the preposition *per*).

In winter.

Hieme.

During the winter.

Hiemem.

Throughout three years.

Per tres annos.

440. How long before or after is expressed by the **ablative** with the words **ante** or **post** used as adverbs.

Two years after. **Duobus post annis.**

441. Within what time is expressed by the **ablative**.

They will send the hostages within (or *Obsides tribus diebus in*) three days. *mittent.*

442. How long ago is expressed by the **accusative** *preceded* by *abhinc*.

He died **two years ago**. *Abhinc duos annos excessit e vita.*

443. The time for which anything is prepared is expressed by **in** and the **accusative**.

They prepared corn **for the** *In hiemem frumentum*
winter. *comparaverunt.*

444. Age is expressed by the adjective *nātus, -a, -um* and the **accusative**.

* Thirty years of age. *Natus triginta annos.*

EXERCISE 157.

A. 1. Die ipso, quo facturus erat navale proelium, classarios convocat. 2. Agamemnon vix decem annis unam urbem cepit; ego die uno totam Graeciam liberavi. 3. Incidit Caesianum civile bellum, cum T. Pomponius Atticus haberet annos circiter sexaginta. 4. Tricesimo octavo imperii anno per Anci filios Tarquinius occisus est. 5. Quod Caesar in Gallia hiemare constituerat, frumentum in hiemem in his locis provisum non erat. 6. Britanni pollicentur se obsides duros esse paucis diebus. 7. Non multis post annis decessit Aratus. 8. Magi dixerunt Cyrum triginta annos regnaturum esse; quod ita contigit, nam ad septuagesimum pervenit, cum quadraginta natus annos regnare coepisset. 9. Spoliis ad multum diei lectis, Hannibal copias ad minora ducit castra oppugnanda. 10. Aristides decessit fere post annum quartum quam Themistocles Athenis erat expulsus.

B. 1. They think that the King will die within a few days. 2. Minucius had been master of the horse (= cavalry) the previous year and consul some years before. 3. On the same day that (= on which) Alexander was born three favourable things were

announced to his father. 4. For many years Caesar fought against the Gauls. 5. At the beginning of night he decided to set out for the camp. 6. As-soon-as-it-was dark (= in the first darkness) the camp was silently moved. 7. Ten years ago he was consul. 8. At dawn there was fighting close to the ridge of the mountain. 9. The Helvetians prepared corn [sufficient] for three years. 10. Romulus, [when] eighteen years old, founded a very small city on the Palatine Hill.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

445. Originally the Roman year contained ten months, beginning with March. Later January and February were added to the end of the year. Julius Caesar reformed the calendar, B.C. 46, by making the year consist of 365 days, the quarter of a day being added as a whole day¹ once every four years, thus making leap year. Pope Gregory, A.D. 1582, removed the small error in the Julian year by omitting one leap year in every century.

446. The Latin names of the months are **adjectives**, used in agreement with the noun **mensis** (m.). They are

Iānuārius	Māius	September (-bris)
Februārius	Iūnius	Octōber (-bris)
Martius	Quintīlis	Nōvem̄ber (-bris)
Aprīlis	Sextīlis	Dēcem̄ber (-bris)

447. Quintīlis and Sextīlis were afterwards called **Iūlius** and **Augustus** in honour of Julius and Augustus Caesar.

448. There were three important days in each month, from which other days were reckoned. These were the *Kalends*, the *Nones*, the *Ides*, or in Latin:—

- (a) **Kālendae, -ārum** the **first** of each month
- (b) **Nōnāe, -ārum** the **fifth** or **seventh** of the month
- (c) **Idūs, -ūm** the **eighth** day after the Nones, *i.e.*, the 13th or 15th of the month

¹This day was added by counting the 24th of February twice. In Roman phraseology the 24th of February was the 6th before the Kalends of March. Hence the French name for leap year—*l'année bissextile* (= twice sixth).

449. *Kālendae* means the **calling** days (from the old Latin *calare*, to call), the days on which the priest announced the new moon, *i.e.*, the first of the month. The **Nones** (*i.e.*, ninths) in Roman reckoning fell on the 9th day before the full moon. The **Ides** (from an Etruscan word meaning *to divide*) came about the middle of the month, originally always at the full moon.

450. In March, July, October, May the *Nones* were on the 7th, the *Ides* on the 15th; in all other months the *Nones* were on the 5th and the *Ides* on the 13th.

In March, July, October, May,
The *Nones* are on the seventh day.

451. All other days were reckoned *backwards* from the Kalends, Nones or Ides.

Days between Kalends and Nones are reckoned so many days **before the Nones**; between the Nones and Ides, so many days **before the Ides**; after the Ides, so many days **before the Kalends** of the next month. But in this reckoning backwards it must be remembered that the Romans always counted inclusively, *i.e.*, they reckoned both the first and last days of a period.

The following rules must be followed in translating English dates into Latin:—

452. (a) When the day occurs between the *first* and the *Nones*, or between the *Nones* and the *Ides*, **add one to the Nones or Ides and subtract the day.**

Thus, the 3rd of March; the *Nones* of March = 7, add 1, making 8; subtract 3, which gives the **fifth** day before the *Nones* of March.

The 11th of January; the *Ides* of January = 13, add 1, making 14; subtract 11, which gives the **third** day before the *Ides* of January.

453. (b) When the day is after the *Ides* **add two to the number of days in the month and subtract the day.**

Thus, the 26th of April; 30 days in April, add¹ 2 = 32, subtract 26 = the **6th** day before the Kalends of May.

¹ This addition of two will be seen if we remember the inclusive Roman counting. From the 26th of April to the end of the month, reckoning inclusively, is five days, *i.e.*, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30. But as the date is reckoned backwards from the next Kalends, one more must be added to the five, making six days.

454. The method of writing the date:—

(a) On the Kalends, Nones or Ides is put in the ablative. Thus, March 1st = **Kalendis Martiis**.

(b) The day before Kalends, Nones or Ides is translated by **prīdiē** and the accusative. The 31st March = **prīdiē Kālendās Aprīles**.

(c) The usual form for other days is as follows:—

On the 3rd ¹ of May	Ante diem quintum Nōnas Maías
On the 11th of April	Ante diem tertium Idus Aprīles
On the 19th of November	Ante diem tertium decimum Kālendās Dēcembres

455. Dates are often abbreviated, thus the three dates above would stand: a. d. V. Non. Mai; a. d. III. Id. Apr.; and a. d. XIII. Kal. Dec.

456. The year was indicated before the time of Augustus by the names of the consuls used in the ablative absolute. Afterwards it became the custom to reckon events as occurring so many years from the founding of the City, in Latin *ab urbe conditā*, abbreviated to **A.U.C.**, this event being placed by Varro in the year B.C. 753. To represent dates A.U.C. in those of the Christian era subtract the year A.U.C. from 753 + 1 (§ 452).

$$\text{A.U.C. } 699 = \text{B.C. } 55.$$

457. The day, from sunrise to sunset, was divided into twelve equal parts named *prīma hōra*, *sēcunda hōra*, etc. It follows that the length of the hour varied with the season of the year, and thus any particular hour, e.g., *tertia hōra*, did not mean the same time every day. The seventh hour however, always began at midday.

458. The night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches (*vigiliae*), which varied in length according to the season. The third watch always began at midnight.

¹ Another form is also found, thus, *quinto die ante Nonas Maías*, etc.

EXERCISE 158.

- 1.
- Viva voce*
- . Put into Latin. (For numbers see p. 138):—

Jan. 4th	Feb. 5th	May 1st	June 2nd
Aug. 4th	Feb. 15th	July 15th	Sept. 13th
Dec. 21st	Feb. 28th	Oct. 27th	Nov. 29th

2. Put into English:—

Kal. Ian.	a. d. IV. Non. Febr.
a. d. VII. Kal. Febr.	a. d. XII. Kal. Mart.
a. d. III. Kal. Jan.	a. d. VI. Kal. Mart.
Non. Apr.	pridie Id. Sept.
pridie Non. Mai.	
quarto decimo a. Kal. Apr.	
tertio a. Kal. Apr.	
a. d. XV. Kal. Nov.	

A. 1. Romulus, octodecim annos natus, urbem exiguan in Palatino monte constituit, undecimo Kalendas Maias. 2. L. Cornelio Lentulo, Fulvio Flacco, consulibus (= B.C. 263) quibus¹ Hîero Romam venerat, contra Ligûres intra Italiam bellum gestum est. 3. Quingentesimo et quadragesimo anno A.U.C. L. Aemilius Paulus, P. Têrentius Varro contra Hannibâlem mittuntur. 4. Marius consul absens factus est, isque Kalendis Ianuariis magnâ gloriâ consul triumphavit. 5. Cn. Servilius consul Romae Idibus Martiis magistratum iniit. 6. Clodius profectus est Roma ante diem XIII. Kalendas Februarias.

REPORTED SPEECH.

459. There are two ways of reporting a speech:—

(a) The **actual words** may be given, using the **1st person** for the **speaker**, the **2nd person** for the person spoken to, etc. This is called **direct speech** or **oratio recta**.

¹ *I.e.*, at which time; literally, whom (being consuls), ablative absolute.

(b) Or some word like *he said* may be prefixed and the stance of what was said given; the **speaker** is then referred to in the **3rd person**. This is called **indirect speech**, **reported speech** or **oratio obliqua**.

(a) Oratio recta :—

will send ambassadors to Caesar," said Commius.
Cum Commius, legatos, inquit, ad Caesarem mitteret.

(b) Oratio obliqua :—

Commius said that he would send ambassadors to Caesar.
Commius dixit se legatos ad Caesarem missurum esse.

460. The only verb of *saying* which can be used with *oratio recta* is *quit* (§ 513), which always stands after the emphatic word of the sentence. All other verbs of *saying* require the *oratio obliqua*.

RULES FOR ORATIO OBLIQUA.

461. The **indicative mood** cannot be used in reported speech. Every verb must be either **infinitive** or **subjunctive**.

462. I. The **principal clause** of the speech becomes in reported speech a noun clause, the object of some verb like *dixit*, translated into Latin by the **accusative** and **infinitive**.

All **subordinate clauses** have their verb in the **subjunctive**.

Caesar said, "I will make peace with you if you give satisfaction to our allies".

Caesar said that he would make peace with them if they gave satisfaction to his allies.

"Ego," inquit Caesar, "pacem vobiscum faciam si nostris sociis satisfaciatis."

Caesar dixit se pacem cum illis facturum esse si suis sociis satisfacerent.

463. II. As speeches are usually reported as being in the past, the **tense** of verbs will be changed to **past**; similarly **adverbs** referring to the present will be represented by adverbs referring to the past.

Similarly adverbs of place like *here* will be changed to *there*, etc.

I see thee here lying on the ground.	He said that he saw him (= that man) there lying on the ground.
Te video hīc , humi iacentem.	Dixit se illum ibi , humi iacentem, videre.

464. III. The pronouns **ego** and **nos** become **se**; the adjectives **meus** and **noster** become **suus**.

Tu and **vos** become **ille** and **illi**; **tuus** and **vester** become **illius**, **illorum**. The person of the verb in each case is changed to correspond.

Se represents the speaker; occasionally *se* has to be used in a dependent clause for the person spoken to or of, and in that case *ipse* is used for the speaker.

465. IV. **Commands and prohibitions** are changed to the subjunctive in the imperfect tense.

Attack the enemy (when they are)	(He advised them) that they
disembarking; do not wait for	should attack the enemy
help.	disembarking, that they
	should not wait for help.

Aggredimini hostes egredientes ; **Aggredierentur** hostes
ne subsidium **expectaveritis**. egredientes ; ne subsidi-
um **expectarent**.

466. Real questions when reported naturally become dependent questions and are put in the subjunctive.

Will you allow your lands to be ravaged? (He asked) **whether they would allow** their lands to be ravaged.

Num agros vestros vastari Num agros suos vastari **pater-**
patiemini? **entur.**

What have you done?	(He asked) what they had done.
Quid fecistis?	Quid fecissent.

467. On the other hand **rhetorical questions** (§ 77) being merely emphatic ways of making statements are usually put in the **accusative and infinitive**.

Do slaves praise a cruel master? = He said (is it a fact) **that slaves praise a cruel master.**

Num servi dominum crudelem = Num **servos dominum crudelem laudant?**

468. NOTES.—1. In a long speech there will usually be several co-ordinate clauses; each of these will be in the **accusative and infinitive**.

469. 2. The verb on which the reported speech depends is often omitted (§ 241).

470. 3. When a verb is already in the subjunctive it will still be subjunctive in *oratio obliqua*, but its tense may be changed.

ORATIO RECTA.

The standard-bearer, turning to his companions, said, "**I am going to carry the standard against the enemy, and I exhort you to follow me. Why do you hesitate? Are you not Romans? Leap down, therefore, when you see me reach the shore, and soon we, who have never yet been conquered, will put to flight these cowardly barbarians.**"

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

The standard-bearer, turning to his companions, said **that he was going to carry the standard against the enemy and that he exhorted them to follow him.** (He asked) why they hesitated. (He asked) were they not Romans. (He urged) that they should leap down when they saw him arrived on the shore, and (said) **that soon they who had never yet been conquered would put to flight those cowardly barbarians.**

Aquilifer, ad comites conversus, dixit, **se in hostes aquilam laturum esse, eos hortari** ut se sequerentur. Cur cunctarentur? Nonne essent Romani? Desilirent igitur cum **se in litore perventum** vidissent; mox **ipsos** qui nunquam antea victi essent, **ignavos illos barbaros fugaturos esse.**

471. 4. *It is said that* is usually not translated by using accusative and infinitive. It is better to use a personal subject and an ordinary infinitive.

Homer is said to have been blind. Homērus dicitur **caecus** (*not caecum*) fuisse.

THE USE OF SE AND SUUS.

472. In simple sentences **se** and **suus** can only be used when the word they translate refers to the **subject** of the clause.

473. In clauses joined by **co-ordinate** conjunctions (§ 362) each clause is **grammatically independent**, and **se** and **suus** can only be used to refer to the subject of the clause in which they occur.

(a) The leader praises **his** men. . Dux **suos** laudat.

(b) The leader praises the men, Dux viros laudat, **eum** illi
and they praise **him**. laudant.

In (b) **se** would only refer to *they*, the subject of the clause in which it occurs.

474. In **dependent clauses** (§ 382) it is not easy to give a hard and fast rule.

In **relative clauses** **se** usually refers to the subject of the relative clause.

But in all other dependent clauses **se** is used to refer to the subject of the **principal clause**, especially if the dependent clause reports the words or the thoughts of the subject of the principal clause.

He advised me to give **him** Me monuit ut **sibi** haec
these things. darem.

475. NOTE.—In reported speech *se* has to be used sometimes for the person spoken to. In such a case *ipse* is used to refer to the speaker.

EXERCISE 159.

Turn into Latin :—

A. 1. He found that the Germans had crossed the Rhine and had driven-out the Gauls who inhabited those districts. 2. Tyrtæus said that to a brave man it was a beautiful thing to die in the first line while he was fighting for his country. 3. Aristides said that it was a most useful plan which Themistocles brought-forward, but not-at-all honourable. 4. The plan was that the fleet which the Lacedæmonians had brought to Gytheum should be secretly set on fire. 5. Sallust said that he was about to describe the war which the Roman people waged with Jugurtha, king of the Numidians. 6. Caesar wrote that Britain was inhabited partly by those who were born in the island and partly by those who had crossed *from* (*ex*) the Belgæ for-the-purpose-of waging war. 7. To the ambassadors he replied that he would take a day for deliberating ; if they wished let them return on 13th of April. 8. He says that those whom fear does not hold must be overcome by kindness. 9. To Darius Alexander said that he would restore to him without ransom both mother and wife and children if he came [as a] suppliant (for said he) he knew both [how-]to-conquer and to spare the conquered. 10. Maharbal said that the gods have not given all things to the same men ; Hannibal, [said he,] knew [how-]to-conquer, but he did not know [how-]to-use his victory.

Turn the following sentences into *oratio obliqua* and then translate : Thus, No. 1. *T. said that he had a plan*, etc. When the sentence does not begin with *he said*, or some similar expression, supply it.

B. 1. Themistocles said, "I have a plan beneficial to the State, but it is not necessary for it to be known". 2. Nothing is pleasant to him over (§ 211) whom some terror is hanging.

3. Many men who have received wounds and borne (them) bravely cannot bear the pain of disease. 4. We shall be able to conquer if you lead our forces into the territories of the Gauls. 5. He does not praise a man who has committed suicide. 6. Wage war, if you wish, with Jugurtha. I shall not cross the river which lies between me and him. 7. Never did I think that it would happen (= be) that the greatest king in this land and the richest of all that I know should owe a favour to a private individual. 8. If so many examples of valour do not move [you], nothing will ever move [you]; if so great a disaster has not made life of-no-value, nothing will. 9. In such misfortune we must do and dare, not make-plans; let those who wish the State [to be] safe come (= go in *orat. obl.*) armed with me at once. 10. A centurion of the third legion gave to the enemy the opportunity of entering through the rampart which had been given over to him (= he had received) for-the-purpose-of defending.

C. Translate the following, after reading § 471, Note 4 :—

1. The fox is said to have invited the stork to dinner. 2. It is thought that Balbus will speak wisely. 3. Epaminondas, [when] dying, is said to have asked whether his shield was safe. 4. It is said that Xerxes ordered¹ the temples of the Athenians to be set-on-fire because he considered it to be a sin to keep the gods, whose house is all this world, shut up by walls.

EXERCISE 160.

Turn the following speech into *oratio obliqua* and then translate :—

A. Hiero said, "I have felt the slaughter of your army so keenly that I could not have been touched more by the loss of my own kingdom. And so, although I know that the greatness of the Roman people is more admirable [in] adversity than in prosperity, nevertheless I have sent all things, with which wars

¹ Use *iubeo*, and remember that this verb always takes accusative and infinitive.

can be assisted by good and faithful allies; do not refuse to receive them. First of all, for the sake of the omen, I bring a golden [statue of] victory: receive it and keep [it] [for] your own¹ for-ever.¹"

Translate into Latin:—

B. "Their intention was," said they, "to make a march through the province without [doing] any harm, because they had no other route; they asked that they might be allowed to do it with his good-will. Why should he try to prevent them? They had always obeyed his commands and they were willing to give hostages. If he allowed them to make this march they would always be in the future his most faithful allies and friends."

PARTS OF VERBS.

476. The principal parts of a verb are the **present indicative, infinitive, perfect and supine.**

477. Two methods of forming the perfect demand attention.

(a) **Reduplication** means prefixing to the root the initial consonant with some vowel, generally *e*, thus:—

do	dē-dī	mordeo	mō-mordī
cādo	cē-cīdi	disco	dī-dīci

(b) The stem vowel is **lengthened** in the perfect.

āgo	ēgī	fāveo	fāvī
-----	-----	-------	------

Many lengthened-vowel perfects were originally reduplicated. Thus: āgo, ēgi (originally ē-āgi).

478. In the case of very few Latin verbs is the **supine** found in Latin writings; when, however, the passive participle or future participle is found, the supine has been inferred from these. When, in the following lists, a verb stands without supine it means that neither supine nor future or passive participle is found.

479. **Compound Verbs** are formed, as a rule, by prefixing a preposition to a simple verb. Then *rumpo*, to burst; *e-rumpo*, to burst out of; also *ir-rumpo*, *per-rumpo*, etc. In the compound verb the vowel of the simple verb, if *ā* or *ē*, is usually shortened to *ɛ* or *ĕ*, long *ē* remaining unchanged; e.g., *fācio*, *fēci*, *factum* becomes *con-fīcio*, *-fēci*, *-fectum*.

¹This word agrees as an adjective with *it* standing for victory.

480. A form preceded by a hyphen means that it only occurs in compounds.

481. In most cases compound verbs are conjugated like the simple verb. Exceptions will be noted as they occur.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

482.

crēpo	-āre	crēpūi	crēpitum	<i>to creak</i>
cūbo	-āre	cūbūi	cūbitum	<i>to lie down</i>
dōmo	-āre	dōmūi	dōmitum	<i>to tame</i>
plico	-āre	{plicāvi plicūi	{plicātum plicitum	} <i>to fold</i>
sōno	-āre	sōnūi	sōnitum	
tōno	-āre	tōnūi	tōnitum	<i>to thunder</i>
vēto	-āre	vētūi	vētītum	<i>to forbid</i>
mīco	-āre	{mīcūi mīcāvi	{mīcātum	} <i>to glitter</i>
ēnēco	-āre	ēnēcūi	ēnectum	
frīco	-āre	frīcūi	{frictum fricātum	} <i>to rub</i>
sēco	-āre	sēcūi	sectum	
dō	dāre ¹	dēdi	dātum ¹	<i>to give</i>
stō	stāre	stēti	stātum	<i>to stand</i>
iūvo	-āre	iūvi	iūtum	<i>to help</i>
lāvo	-āre	lāvi	{lautum lōtum	} <i>to wash</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

483.

arceo	-ēre	arcūi	—	<i>to ward off</i>
dōceo	-ēre	dōcūi	doctum	<i>to teach</i>
ferveo	-ēre	{fervi ferbūi	{—	} <i>to be hot</i>

¹ Notice the short ā. Some compounds of *dō*, e.g., *circumdo*, follow *dō*. Most, however, are of the third conjugation (§ 497).

misceo	-ēre	miscūi	{ mistum mixtum }	{ to mix
tēneo	-ēre	tēnūi	tentum	to hold
rētineo	-ēre	rētīnūi	rētentum	to hold back
torreo	-ēre	torrūi	tostum	to scorch
censeo	-ere	censūi	censum	{ to think (deem)
484.				
ābōleo	-ēre	ābōlēvi	ābōlitum	to destroy
cīleo ¹	-ēre	cīvi	cītum	to stir up
dēleo	-ēre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	to destroy
fleo	-ēre	flēvi	flētum	to weep
neo	-ēre	nēvi	—	to spin
-pleo	-ēre	-plēvi	-plētum	to fill ^a
485.				
augeo	-ēre	auxi	auctum	to increase
cōnīveo	-ēre	cōnīvi	—	to wink
frīgeo	-ēre	frixi	—	to freeze
lūgeo	-ēre	luxi	—	to mourn
fulgeo	-ēre	fulsi	—	to shine
indulgeo	-ēre	indulsi	—	to indulge
malgeo	-ēre	mulsi	—	to milk
torqueo	-ēre	torsi	tortum	to twist
ardeo	-ēre	arsī	[arsum]	to burn
haereo	-ēre	haesi	haesum	to stick
iūbeo	-ēre	iussi	iussum	to command
lūceo	-ēre	luxi	—	to shine
māneo	-ēre	mansi	mansum	to remain
mulceo	-ēre	mulsi	mulsum	to soothe
rīdeo	-ēre	rīsi	rīsum	to laugh
suādeo	-ēre	suāsi	suāsum	to advise
tergeo	-ēre	tersi	tersum	to wipe

¹ Compounds follow the fourth conjugation, e.g., accīre, to send for.

turgeo	-ēre	tursi	—	<i>to swell</i>
urgeo	-ēre	ursi	—	<i>to press</i>

486.

cāveo	-ēre	cāvi	cautum	<i>to beware</i>
fāveo	-ēre	fāvi	fautum	<i>to favour</i>
fōveo	-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	<i>to cherish</i>
mōveo	-ēre	mōvi	mōtum	<i>to move</i>
pāveo	-ēre	pāvi	—	<i>to quake</i>
vōveo	-ēre	vōvi	vōtum	<i>to vow</i>
sēdeo	-ēre	sēdi	sessum	<i>to sit</i>
vīdeo	-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	<i>to see</i>
prandeo	-ēre	prandi	pransum	<i>to dine</i>
strīdeq	-ēre	strīdi	—	<i>to creak</i>

487.

mordeo	-ēre	mōmordi	morsum	<i>to bite</i>
pendeo ¹	-ēre	pēpendi	pensum	{ <i>to hang</i> (in- transitive)
spondeo	-ēre	spōpondi	ꝛponsum	<i>to pledge</i>
tondeo	-ēre	tōtondi	tonsum	<i>to shear</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

488. CONSONANT STEMS AND I-STEMS.

cōquo	-ēre	coxi	coctum	<i>to cook</i>
dīco	-ēre	dixi	dictum	<i>to say</i>
dīligo	-ēre	dīlexi	dīlectum	<i>to love</i>
dūco	-ēre	duxi	ductum	<i>to lead</i>
pergo	-ēre	perrexi	perrectum	<i>to proceed</i>
surgo	-ēre	surrexi	surrectum	<i>to arise</i>
tēgo	-ēre	texi	tectum	<i>to cover</i>

¹ See pendo, § 496.² Compare dēligo, -lēgi, -lectum, *to choose*, and dēligāre, *to bind*.

trāhc	-ĕre	traxi	tractum	<i>to draw</i>
vĕho	-ĕre	vexi	vectum	<i>to carry</i>
vĭvo	-ĕre	vixi	victum	<i>to live</i>
strŭo	-ĕre	struxi	structum	<i>to build.</i>
flŭo	-ĕre	fluxi	fluxum	<i>to flow</i>

489.

carpo	-ĕre	carpsi	carptum	<i>to pluck</i>
nŭbo	-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	<i>to marry</i> ¹
rĕpo	-ĕre	repsi	reptum	<i>to creep</i>
sculpo	-ĕre	sculpsi	sculptum	<i>to carve</i>
scribo	-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	<i>to write</i>

490.

gĕro	-ĕre	gessi	gestum	<i>to carry on</i>
ŭro	-ĕre	ussi	ustum	<i>to burn</i>
dĕmo	-ĕre	dempsi	demptum	<i>to take away</i>
prŏmo	-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	<i>to bring out</i>
sŭmo	-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>to take</i>
temno	-ĕre	tempsi	temptum	<i>to despise</i>

491.

cingo	-ĕre	cinxi	cinctum	<i>to surround</i>
exstinguo	-ĕre	exstinxi	exstinctum	<i>to quench</i>
finġo	-ĕre	finxi	fictum	<i>to feign</i>
iungo	-ĕre	iunxi	iunctum	<i>to join</i>
pingo	-ĕre	pinxi	pictum	<i>to paint</i>
stringo	-ĕre	strinxi	strictum	<i>to bind</i>
tinguo	-ĕre	tinxi	tinctum	<i>to dye</i>
unguo	-ĕre	unxi	unctum	<i>to anoint</i>

492.

figo	-ĕre	fixi	fixum	<i>to fix</i>
mergo	-ĕre	mersi	mersum	<i>to drown</i>
spargo	-ĕre	sparsi	sparsum	<i>to sprinkle</i>

¹Literally *to veil*; only used of women; takes dative of person

cēdo	-ĕre	cessi	cessum	to yield
claudio	-ĕre	clausi	clausum	to shut
divīdo	-ĕre	divīsi	divīsum	to divide
laedo	-ĕre	laesi	laesum	to hurt
lūdo	-ĕre	lūsi	lusum	to play
mitto	-ĕre	mīsi	missum	to send
plaudo	-ĕre	plausi	plausum	to applaud
rādo	-ĕre	rāsi	rāsum	to scrape
rōdo	-ĕre	rōsi	rōsum	to gnaw
vādo	-ĕre	-vasi	-vasum	to go
prēmo	-ĕre	pressi	pressum	to press
flecto	-ĕre	flexi	flexum	to bend
necto	-ĕre	nexui, nexi	nexum	to bind
493.				
sēro	-ĕre	sēvi	sātum	to sow
cerno	-ĕre	crēvi	crētum	to discern
sperno	-ĕre	sprēvi	sprētum	to despise
sterno	-ĕre	strāvi	strātum	to strew
līno	-ĕre	lēvi, līvi	lītum	to smear
sīno	-ĕre	sīvi	sītum	to allow
cresco ¹	-ĕre	crēvi	crētum	to grow
nosco	-ĕre	nōvi	nōtum	to know
ignosco	-ĕre	ignōvi	ignōtum	to pardon
cognosco	-ĕre	cognōvi	cognītum	to know
pasco	-ĕre	pāvi	pastum	to feed
ābōlesco	-ĕre	ābōlēvi	—	to decay
ādōlesco ²	-ere	ādōlēvi	—	to grow up
obsōlesco	-ĕre	obsōlēvi	obsōlētum	{ to grow out of use
quiesco	-ĕre	quīēvi	quīētum	to rest

¹ Verbs ending in -sco denote the *beginning* of an action and are called *inceptives* or *inchoatives*.

² There is an adjective *ādultus*, *grown up*.

suesco	-ĕre	suēvi	suētum	{ to become ac- customed
arcesso	-ĕre	arcessīvi	arcessītum	to send for
lācesso	-ĕre	lācessīvi	laccessītum	to provoke
quaero	-ĕre	quaesīvi	quaesītum	to seek
tĕro	-ĕre	trīvi	trītum	to rub

494.

ālō	-ĕre	ālui	altum	to nourish
cōlo	-ĕre	cōlui	cultum	{ to till, to cherish
consūlo	-ĕre	consūlui	consultum	to consult
sĕro ¹	-ĕre	[sĕrui]	[sertum]	to join
texo	-ĕre	texui	textum	to weave

495,

frĕmo	-ĕre	frĕmui	frēmītum	to bellow
gĕmo	-ĕre	gĕmui	gēmītum	to groan
mōlo	-ĕre	mōlui	mōlītum	to grind
strĕpo	-ĕre	strĕpui	strĕpītum	to roar
trĕmo	-ĕre	trĕmui	—	to tremble
vōmo	-ĕre	vōmui	vōmītum	to vomit
gigno	-ĕre	gĕnui	gĕnītum	to produce
pōno	-ĕre	pōsui	pōsītum	to place
mĕto	-ĕre	messui	messum	to reap

496.

cāno	-ĕre	cēcīni	cantum	to sing
pango	-ĕre	pĕpĭgi	pactum	to fasten
pungo	-ĕre	pŭpŭgi	punctum	to prick
tango	-ĕre	tĕtĭgi	tactum	to touch
tendo	-ĕre	tĕtendi	tentum	to stretch
disco	-ĕre	dīdīci	—	to learn
posco	-ĕre	pōposci	—	to demand

¹ Compare sĕro, sĕvi, sātum, 3, to sow.

caĉdo	-ĕre	cĕcĭdi	cāsum	<i>to fall</i>
ocĉido	-ĕre	occĭdi	occāsum	<i>to fall, set</i>
caedo	-ĕre	cĕcĭdi	caesum	<i>to beat, kill</i>
occido	-ĕre	occidi	occisum	<i>to kill</i>
curro	-ĕre	cūcurri	cursum	<i>to run</i>
incurro	-ĕre	{ incūcurri (in- curri) ¹ }	incursum	<i>to run into</i>
fallo	-ĕre	fĕfelli	falsum	<i>to deceive</i>
parco	-ĕre	pĕperci	—	<i>to spare</i>
pello	-ĕre	pĕpŭli	pulsum	<i>to drive</i>
pendo	-ĕre	pĕpendi	pensum	<i>to hang (trans.)</i>
tundo	-ĕre	tŭtŭdi	{ tŭsum tunsum }	<i>to bruise</i>

497. Compounds of *āo*, *dāre*, *dĕdi*, *dātum*, to give, e.g., *circumdo*, *interdo*, *superdo*, follow *do*, but most of the compounds are 3rd conjugation as shown below.

abdo	-ĕre	abdĭdi	abdĭtum	<i>to hide</i>
addo	-ĕre	addĭdi	addĭtum	<i>to add</i>
condo	-ĕre	condĭdi	condĭtum	<i>to found, hide</i>
crĕdo	-ĕre	crĕdĭdi	crĕdĭtum	<i>to believe</i>
dĕdo	-ĕre	dĕdĭdi	dĕdĭtum	<i>to surrender</i>
ĕdo	-ĕre	ĕdĭdi	ĕdĭtum	<i>to give forth</i>
perdo	-ĕre	perdĭdi	perdĭtum	<i>to ruin, to lose</i>
prōdo	-ĕre	prōdĭdi	prōdĭtum	<i>to betray</i>
reddo	-ĕre	reddĭdi	reddĭtum	<i>to restore</i>
subdo	-ĕre	subdĭdi	subdĭtum	<i>to substitute</i>
trādo	-ĕre	trādĭdi	trādĭtum	<i>to deliver</i>
vendo ²	-ĕre	vendĭdi	vendĭtum	<i>to sell</i>

¹ When a simple verb forms its perfect by reduplication the compound verb frequently rejects a syllable, especially if the reduplication has three syllables. There are, however, some exceptions.

² *Pĕr-eo*, *-ire*, *-ii*, *-itum* is used as the passive of *perdo* and *vĕn-eo* for the passive of *vendo*. There is, however, a past participle *vendĭtus* and a gerundive *vendendus*.

498. Verbs from *sto* and *sisto* (a reduplicated form of *sto*).

<i>sto</i>	<i>stāre</i>	<i>stēti</i>	<i>stātum</i>	<i>to stand</i>
<i>consto</i>	<i>-āre</i>	<i>-stīti</i>	<i>-stātum</i>	<i>to consist</i>
<i>circumsto</i>	<i>-stāre</i>	<i>-stēti</i>	—	<i>to surround</i>
<i>obsto</i>	<i>-āre</i>	<i>obstīti</i>	<i>obstātum</i>	<i>to prevent</i>
<i>praesto</i>	<i>-āre</i>	<i>praestīti</i>	<i>praestitum</i>	<i>to fulfil</i>
<i>sisto</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>stīti</i>	[<i>stātum</i>]	<i>{ to make to stand</i>
<i>consisto</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>constīti</i>	<i>constitum</i>	<i>to halt</i>
<i>dēsisto</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>dēstīti</i>	<i>dēstitum</i>	<i>to cease</i>
<i>rēsisto</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>rēstīti</i>	—	<i>to resist</i>

499.

<i>ēmo</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>ēmi</i>	<i>emptum</i>	<i>to buy</i>
<i>lēgo</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>lēgi</i>	<i>lectum</i>	<i>to read, choose</i>

500. Three compounds of *lēgo* make *-lexi* in perfect: *diligō* (*to love*), *neglīgō* (*to neglect*), *intellīgō* (*to understand*), thus: *dilexi*, *neglexi*, *intellexi*. All others make *lēgi*, thus:—

501.

<i>collīgo</i>	<i>-ēr</i>	<i>collēgi</i>	<i>collectum</i>	<i>to collect</i>
<i>rumpo</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>rūpi</i>	<i>ruptum</i>	<i>to burst</i>
<i>vinco</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>vīci</i>	<i>victum</i>	<i>to conquer</i>
<i>linquo</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>liqui</i>	<i>lictum</i>	<i>to leave</i>
<i>āgo</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>ēgi</i>	<i>actum</i>	<i>to do, to drive</i>

Compound like *red-īgo*, *-ēgi*, *-actum*, *to drive back*.

<i>frango</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>frēgi</i>	<i>fractum</i>	<i>to break</i>
---------------	-------------	--------------	----------------	-----------------

502.

<i>fundo</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>fūdi</i>	<i>fūsum</i>	<i>to pour</i>
<i>rētundo</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>rettūdi</i>	<i>rētūsum</i>	<i>to beat back</i>
<i>ēdo</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>ēdi</i>	<i>ēsum</i>	<i>to eat</i>

503.

<i>bībo</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>bībi</i>	—	<i>to drink</i>
<i>īco</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>īci</i>	<i>ictum</i>	<i>to strike</i>
<i>cūdo</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>cūdi</i>	<i>cusum</i>	<i>to stamp</i>

consido	-ēre	consēdi	consessum	<i>to encamp</i>
The simple verb <i>sīdo</i> , -ēre, — is not much used. Compare <i>sēdeo</i> , p. 235.				

vīso	-ēre	vīsi	vīsum	<i>to visit</i>
verro	-ēre	verri	versum	<i>to sweep</i>
verto	-ēre	verti	versum	<i>to turn</i>
-cendo	-ēre	-cendi	-censum	<i>to kindle</i>
-fendo	-ēre	-fendi	-fensum	<i>to strike</i>
findo	-ēre	fidi	fissum	<i>to cleave</i>
mando	-ēre	mandi	mansum	<i>to chew</i>
pando	-ēre	pandi	pansum	<i>to open</i>
prēhendo	-ēre	prēhendi	prehensum	<i>to grasp</i>
scando	-ēre	scandi	scansum	<i>to climb</i>

Compound like *dē-scendo*, -scendi, -scensum, *to descend*.

504.

scindo	-ēre	scīdi	scissum	<i>to tear</i>
percello	-ēre	percūli	perculsum	<i>to strike</i>
vello	-ēre	vulsi	vulsum	<i>to rend</i>

505.

ācūo	-ēre	ācūi	acūtum	<i>to sharpen</i>
argūo	-ēre	argūi	argūtum	<i>to prove</i>
exūo	-ēre	exūi	exūtum	<i>to put off</i>
indūo	-ēre	indūi	indūtum	<i>to put on</i>
imbūo	-ēre	imbui	imbūtum	<i>to tinge</i>
lūo	-ēre	lūi	-lūtum	<i>to atone</i>
mētūo	-ēre	mētūi	—	<i>to fear</i>
mīnuo	-ēre	mīnūi	mīnūtum	<i>to lessen</i>
adnūo	-ēre	adnūi	—	<i>to nod</i>
plūit	-ēre	plūit (plūvit)	—	<i>to rain</i>
rūo	-ēre	rūi	rūtum	<i>to rush</i>
spūo	-ēre	spūi	spūtum	<i>to spit</i>
stātūo	-ēre	stātūi	stātūtum	<i>to set up</i>
constātūo	-ēre	constātūi	constātūtum	<i>to decide</i>
sūo	-ēre	sūi	sūtum	<i>to sew</i>

tribũo	-ĕre	tribũi	tribũtum	<i>to assign</i>
solvo	-ĕre	solvi	solũtum	<i>to loosen</i>
volvo	-ĕre	volvi	volutum	<i>to roll</i>

VERBS LIKE CĀPIO.

506.

cāpio	cāpĕre	cēpi	captum	<i>to take</i>
rēcĭpio	-cĭpĕre	-cēpi	-ceptum	<i>to take back</i>
quātio	quātĕre	quassi	quassum	<i>to shake</i>
concūtio	-cūtĕre	-cussi	-cussum	<i>to shake</i>
cūpio	cūpĕre	cūpīvi	cūpitum	<i>to desire</i>
sāpio	sāpĕre	sāpīvi	—	<i>to be wise</i>
rāpio	rāpĕre	rāpūi	raptum	<i>to snatch</i>
ērĭpio	-rĭpĕre	-rĭpūi	-reptum	<i>to snatch away</i>
pārio	pārĕre	pĕpĕri	{ partum fut. part. pāritūrus }	<i>to bring forth</i>
fūgio	fūgĕre	fūgi	fūgĭtum	<i>to flee</i>
fācio ¹	fācĕre	fĕci	factum	<i>to make</i>
rĕficio	rĕfĭcĕre	rĕfĕci	rĕfectum	<i>to make again</i>
iācio	iācĕre	iĕci	iactum	<i>to throw</i>
conicio	conĭcĕre	conĭĕci	coniectum	<i>to hurl</i>
fōdio	fodĕre	fōdi	fossum	<i>to dig</i>
aspicio ²	aspĭcĕre	aspexi	aspectum	<i>to look at</i>
allicio	allicĕre	allexi	allectum	<i>to entice</i>

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

507.

sĕpĕlio	-ĩre	sĕpĕlĩvi	sĕpultum	<i>to bury</i>
scio	-ĩre	scĩvi	scĩtum	<i>to know</i>
sālio	-ĩre	sālui	—	<i>to dance</i>

¹ Imperative fac (R. 43). The compounds, however, are regular, rĕfice, etc.

² The simple verb spĕcio only occurs in Plautus.

dēsilio	-īre	dēsīlūi	dēsultum	<i>to leap down</i>
āpērio	-īre	āpērūi	āpertum	<i>to open</i>
ōpērio	-īre	ōpērūi	ōpertum	<i>to cover</i>
āmicio	-īre	amicūi (-xi)	amictum	<i>to clothe</i>
fulcio	-īre	fulsi	fultum	<i>to prop</i>
haurio	-īre	hausi	haustum	<i>to drain</i>
saepio	-īre	saepsi	saeptum	<i>to hedge in</i>
sarcio	-īre	sarsi	sartum	<i>to patch</i>
sancio	-īre	sanxi	sanctum	<i>to hallow</i>
vincio	-īre	vinxi	vinctum	<i>to bind</i>
sentio	-īre	sensi	sensum	<i>to feel</i>
vēnio	-īre	vēni	ventum	<i>to come</i>
compērio	-īre	compēri	compertum	<i>to find</i>
rēpērio*	-īre	reppēri	repertum	<i>to discover</i>

IRREGULAR DEPONENT VERBS.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

508.

fātēor	fātēri	fassus sum	<i>to confess</i>
confīteor	-ēri	confessus sum	<i>to confess</i>
licēor	licēri	licitus sum	<i>to bid (at an auction)</i>
mēdēor	mēdēri	—	<i>to heal</i>
mērēor	mērēri	mēritus sum	<i>to deserve</i>
mīsēreor	mīsērēri	mīsērītus sum	<i>to have pity on</i>
tūēor	tūēri	tūītus sum	<i>to watch over</i>
vērēor	vērēri	vērītus sum	<i>to fear</i>
rēor	rēri	rātus sum	<i>to think</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

509.

amplector	amplecti	amplexus sum	<i>to embrace</i>
ādīpiscor	ādīpisci	ādeptus sum	<i>to obtain</i>
expergiscor	expergisci	experrectus sum	<i>to waken</i>

fātiscor	fātisci	—	to grow weary
frūor	frūi	frūitus sum	to enjoy
fungor	fungi	functus sum	to perform
grādiōr	grādi	gressus sum	to step
aggrēdiōr	aggrēdi	aggressus sum	to attack
īrascor	īrasci	īrātus sum	to be angry
lābor	lābi	lapsus sum	to slip
lōquor	lōqui	lōcūtus sum	to speak
mōrior	mōri	{ mortuus sum, fut. part. mōrītūrus }	to die
nanciscor	nancisci	nactus sum	to obtain
nascor	nasci	nātus sum	to be born
nītr	nīti	nisus (nixus) sum	to strive
oblīvīscor	oblīvīsci	oblītus sum	to forget
pāciscor	pācisci	pactus sum	to bargain
pātior	pāti	passus sum	to suffer
prōficiēscor	prōficiēsci	prōfectus sum	to set out
quēror	quēri	questus sum	to complain
sēquor	sēqui	sēcūtus sum	to follow
ulciscor	ulcisci	ultus sum	to avenge
ūtor	ūti	ūsus sum	to use
vescor	vesci	—	to feed on

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

510.

expērīor	expērīri	expertus sum	to try
oppērīor	oppērīri	oppertus sum	to wait for
ōrīor ¹	ōrīri	ortus sum	to arise
assentīor	assentīri	assensus sum	to agree
mētīor	mētīri	mensus sum	to measure
ordior	ordīri	orsus sum	to begin

¹The following parts of *ōrior* belong to the third conjugation. Indic. pres., *ōrēris*, *ōrītur*, *ōrīmur*, *ōrīmīni*; imperative, *ōrēre*, *ōrīmīni*. In the imperfect subjunctive both *ōrērer* and *ōrīrer* are found. *Adōrior*, to attack, is quite regular.

SEMI-DEPONENTS.

511.

audeo	audēre	ausus sum	<i>to dare</i>
gaudeo	gaudēre	gāvīsus sum	<i>to rejoice</i>
sōleo	sōlēre	sōlītus sum	<i>to be wont</i>
fido	fīdēre	fīsus sum	<i>to trust</i>

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

512. Defective verbs only occur in certain parts. Such are:—

Aio,¹ *I say*.

Indicative present, āio, āis, āit; āiunt.

„ imperfect, āiē-bam, -bas, -bāt; āiē-bāmus, -bātis, -bant.

Subjunctive present, āiās, āiāt; āiant.

513. Inquam, *say I* (§ 239).

Indicative present, inquam, inquīs, inquit; inquīmus, inquīunt.

„ imperfect, inquīebāt.

„ future, inquīēs, inquīēt.

„ perfect, inquīī, inquīstī, inquit.

Imperative, inque, inquīto, inquītē.

¹ Aio occasionally quotes the words used by the speaker, but usually it takes Accusative and Infinitive. See Ex. 135, A., No. 7

VERB FORMS.

These may be used orally or in writing. They should be used for all conjugations by substituting other verbs from the vocabularies.

ACTIVE.

1 we praise	let them not praise	he was praising
he has praised	I was praising	he might praise
I had been praising	we had praised	we shall praise
he may praise	I might praise	praise (sing.)
5 to have praised	40 to praise (supine)	75 we had praised
praising (part.)	I shall praise	thou mayst praise
thou hast praised	I may praise	about to praise
we were praising	you (sing.) praise	they praised
I shall praise	he praised	you were praising
10 he may praise	45 they may praise	80 let us not praise
he might praise	they would have praised	you had praised
to praise	praise	they may praise
we praised	do not praise	you are praising
you may praise	they have praised	praise (plural)
15 thou mightest praise	50 thou wilt praise	85 they had praised
we had praised	he must praise	he may have praised
they will have praised	in praising (supine)	they had praised
of praising	he might praise	we praised
I praised	thou wilt praise	you praised
20 they will praise	6 he might have praised	90 of praising
they must praise	you praise	they may have praised
by praising	thou hadst praised	they have praised
they praise	we may have praised	thou wast praising
let us praise	they may have praised	let him praise
25 we shall have praised	60 they are praising	95 to be about to praise
they will have praised	he was praising	they would have praised
do not praise	thou wilt have praised	we praised
of praising	I may have praised	do not praise
he is praising	I shall have praised	they may praise
30 they will be praising	65 give the perfect stem	100 to have praised
he may praise	we may praise	I may have praised
he will praise	they would have praised	you will praise
he was praising	he will praise	they might have praised
about to praise	he may praise	we are about to praise
35 let them praise	70 may he not praise	105 praising (participle)

PASSIVE.

1 praised	they may have been	thou mayst be praised
they were praised	praised	we shall be praised
he had been praised	to be about to be praised	he was praised
we shall be praised	35 you had been praised	he might have been
5 they are praised	they are being praised	praised
he will be praised	he might be praised	70 they are being praised
he may be praised	they may be praised	be praised
she has been praised	thou mayst be praised	I was being praised
you will have been	40 I was being praised	thou wilt be praised
praised	they will be praised	to be about to be praised
10 to be praised	they will have been	75 he is praised
I may be praised	praised	he is being praised
I shall be praised	we should have been	thou mayst be praised
they (fem.) had been	praised	to be praised
praised	you may be praised (pl.)	they will be praised
do not be praised	45 we had been praised	80 to be about to be praised
15 to have been praised	she will have been praised	thou art being praised
be ye praised	they are being praised	let us be praised
let them be praised	they are praised (§ 69)	thou wast being praised
we shall be praised	we may have been praised	thou hast been praised
thou art being praised	50 they (fem.) had been praised	85 he was being praised
20 I shall be praised	wemight have been praised	requiring to be praised
he is praised	I may have been praised	to be praised
he was praised	I shall have been praised	thou mightest be praised
he has been praised	I am being praised	may we be praised!
you may be praised	55 we might be praised	90 they (neut.) had been
25 you may have been	thou mayst be praised	praised
praised	thou wast being praised	thou hadst been praised
to have been praised	they (fem.) had been praised	we shall be praised
we are being praised	they (neut.) had been	having been praised
we were being praised	praised	they were being praised
we may be praised	60 he may have been praised	95 they are being praised
30 you (plural) are being	she may have been praised	thou wast being praised
praised	thou art praised	they were praised
be praised (plural)	thou art being praised	thou wouldst have been
he might have been	he will be praised	praised
praised	65 thou wilt be praised	to have been praised

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

1 he praises	requiring to be praised	you were praising
he is being praised	you praised	be ye praised
they will praise	you are being praised	75 be ye not praised
they will be praised	40 thou art praised	you were praising
5 to praise	we may be praised	you were being praised
to be praised	he may praise	they might praise
they have praised	let us praise	they might be praised
they have been praised	let us be praised	80 requiring to be praised
they had been praised	45 we (f.) had been praised	we are praising
10 thou wilt be praised	he had praised	we are praised
he may praise	they will have been praised	you were being praised
he may be praised	they may have been praised	requiring to be praised
I am being praised	to be praising	85 praised
to have been praised	50 to be praised	to praise
15 do not praise	they will praise	to be praised
do not be praised	they will have been praised	to have praised
he might praise	I might have been praised	to have been praised
he might be praised	let us praise	90 praised
let them be praised	55 let us be praised	do not praise (plur.)
20 they are praising	praising (partic.)	do not be praised (plur.)
they are being praised	praised	they will have praised
of praising (gerund)	we are praising	they (f.) will have been
praised	we are praised	praised
they praised	60 we are being praised	95 I might praise
25 they are praised	we were praised	I might be praised
they are being praised	you praised	thou wilt praise
you had been praised	you were praising	thou wilt be praised
they (f.) had been praised	you were praised	you are being praised
they (n.) had been praised	65 you had been praised	100 you will be praised
30 they may have praised	to have praised	you may be praised
I may have praised	I may praise	you might be praised
they will have praised	I may be praised	they must be praised
I may have praised	he will praise	he was praising
you may have praised	70 he will be praised	105 he was being praised
35 you may be praised	he will be praising	to have been praised
praising (gerund)	thou wast being praised	to be praised

APPENDIX I.

PRONUNCIATION—QUANTITY.

1. In Latin all letters are pronounced; thus *mă-rě* (two syllables).

2. When the voice dwells on a vowel in pronunciation the vowel is said to be **long**, *e.g.*, *făther*; when the voice passes rapidly over a vowel it is said to be **short**, *e.g.*, *fĭt*.

A **long vowel** is indicated by a straight line placed over the vowel; a **short vowel** is indicated by a curved line. Thus *Rōma*, *rōsa*.

3. Rules for the **quantity** (*i.e.*, length) of **vowels**.

(a) A vowel standing before another vowel in the same word but not in the same syllable is always **short**; *e.g.*, *rĕi*, *facĭo*.

(b) A vowel standing before two consonants¹ or *x* is **long**; *e.g.*, *mĕnsa*, *bĕllum*.

(c) All diphthongs are long; *e.g.*, *mansĕ*.

When two vowels are pronounced rapidly in succession so as to form only one sound they are called a **diphthong**.

4. Pronunciation of **vowels**.

ā (*fātum*) like *fāther*, not like *plāy*; *ă* (*răpit*) like *făt*.

ō (*mĕta*) like *māte*, not like *mĕre*; *ö* (*frĕta*) like *frĕt*.

ī (*fĭdo*) like *pĕer*, not like *fĭre*; *ĭ* (*plĭco*) like *fĭt*.

ō (*nōtus*) like *nōte*; *ö* (*nōta*) like *nōt*.

ū (*tūto*) like *fōol*, not like *acūte*; *ü* (*cūtis*) like *full*,
not like *accūrate*.

The sound of **diphthongs** is obtained by running together the two component vowel-sounds. Thus *ae* = *a* + *e*, *i.e.* like *ai* in *aisle*.

ae (*portae*) = *ā + ē* like *aisle*, not like *play*.

au (*aurum*) = *ā + ū* like *house*, not like *awful*.

oe (*poena*) = *ō + ē* like *boil*, not like *dean* or *play*.

¹ A vowel before two consonants is said to be long "by position". A vowel before a single consonant may be long or short (which it is must be learnt from a dictionary). Such a vowel is said to be long (or short, as the case may be) "by nature".

4 (a). When the letter *i* stands before a vowel in the same syllable it is a consonant, and is often called **consonantal I** (or semi-vowel), e.g., *iudex*. About the fifteenth century *J* was introduced to represent this consonantal *I*. Thus, *jūdex* for *iūdex*; *māior* for *māior*. But it seems preferable, seeing that the Romans never used *J*, to write *I* in all cases.

Consonantal *I* is pronounced like the English *y*.

5. Consonants *c, g, s, t* are always **hard**.

c (*cepi, accepi, scio*) like *cat*; *cc* like *Malacca*; *sc* like *scandal*; (not like *acid, accept, fascinate*).

g (*gero, agger*) like *get* and *ragged*, not like *gin* or *exaggerate*.

t (*fortis, fortia*) like *native*.

s (*rosa, res*) like *sit, this*; not like *rise*.

-ci, -si, -ti (*ocius, sponsio, natio*) not like *appreciate, respensions, nation*, but with the sounds of *c, s* and *t* shown above.

5 (a). Consonantal *i* and *u* (*v*).

i (*j*), e.g. *jacio*, like *y* in *you*, not like *jam*.

u (*v*), e.g. *volo*, like *w* in *we*, not like *very*.

5 (b). *r* is always trilled even in the middle or end of a word.

6. **Accentuation**.—Accent is the stress which is given to a syllable in pronunciation. Thus in *fāther* the first syllable has the stress, in *reṭurn* the second syllable has the accent.

6 (a). In **dividing** Latin words into syllables, as far as possible each syllable must **end with a vowel**.

Thus, *Ro-ma-ni, ma-ior, do-mi-nus*.

7. **Rules for the accentuation of Latin words**:—

(a) In words of two syllables the first syllable is accented; e.g., *mēa, tādēm*.

(b) In words of more than two syllables the accent is given to the last syllable but one if that syllable has a long vowel; e.g., *Romāni, emēndo*.

(c) In words of more than two syllables, when the last but one has a short vowel, the accent is given to the last syllable but two; e.g., *dōmīnus*.

The last syllable but one is called the **penultimate** or **penult**; the last syllable but two is called the **antepenultimate** or **antepenult**.

APPENDIX II.

IRREGULARITIES OF DECLENSION.

1. First Declension.—(a) The dative and ablative plural of *dea*, goddess; *fīlia*, daughter, end in *-ābus*, e.g., *deābus*, etc. This is to distinguish these words from the corresponding cases of the masculine, e.g., *filiis*, to the sons; *filiabus*, to the daughters.

The same rule is sometimes followed, especially when a distinction of sex is necessary, with a few other words, e.g., *liberta*, freed woman; *mūla*, she-mule.

(b) An old genitive singular in *-as* is found in *pāter fāmiliās*, father of a family; acc. *patrem familias*; plur. *patres familias*.

This form, which is sometimes written all in one word, is also used with *māter*, *filius* and *fīlia*, e.g., *mater familias*.

2. Second Declension.—(a) The genitive singular of words ending in *-ius* and *-ium* sometimes contracts *-ii* into *-i*.

(b) The genitive plural *-um* instead of *-orum* is sometimes used, especially with names of coins, weights and measures, e.g., *sestertius* (a coin = 2½d.), genitive plural *sestertium*; *dēcemvīr* (member of a committee of ten), *dēcemvīrum*.

(c) *Deus*, god, has vocative *deus*; nominative and vocative plural *deī*, *dīi*, *dī*; dative and ablative plural *deīs*, *dīs*, *dīs*; genitive plural *deōrum*, *deum*, *dīvum*, *dīvom*.

3. Third Declension.—(a) *Bōs* (masc. or fem.), *bōvis*, ox, has exceptional forms: genitive plural, *boum*; dative and ablative, *būbus* or *bōbus*.

(b) *Iupiter* (= *Iōv-pāter*), *Jupiter*, has acc *Iōvem*, gen. *Iōvis*, dat. *Iōvi*, abl. *Iōve*.

(c) *Vīs* (fem.), *violence*, in the singular has only accusative *vim*, ablative *vī*. In the plural it changes its meaning and is declined throughout: *vīrēs*, strength, *vīrēs*, *vīrium*, *vīribus*, *vīribus*.

4. **Fourth Declension.**—*Dŏmus* (fem.), *house*, is thus declined:—

Sing. *dŏmus*, *dŏmum*, *dŏmŭs*, *dŏmuī*, *dŏmŏ*

Plur. *dŏmŭs*, *dŏmŏs*, *dŏmuum*, *dŏmībus*, *dŏmībus*

5. **Fifth Declension.**—*Rēs publicā*¹ (fem.), *state*, is the noun *res* and the adjective *publica*; each word is separately declined: gen. *rei publicae*, etc.

A similar word is *iūs iŭrandum*¹ (neut.), *oath*, gen. *iŭris iŭrandi*, etc.

APPENDIX III.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

Masculine nouns in *thick* type; feminine in *italics*; neuter in ordinary type.

A. *Gender by meaning*:—

(1) Names of **males**,
months, **winds**, **mountains**
and **peoples** are masculine.

Exceptions. (a) *Mountains*:
Aetna, *Hybla*, *Īda*, etc., *Pelion*
and *Alpes* (plur.).

(b) *Rivers*: *Allia*, *Lēthē*,
Styx.

(2) Names of *females*, *plants*,
countries, *islands* and *cities* are
feminine.

Exceptions. (a) *Plants*:
ācanthus (a prickly plant),
cālāmus (reed), *ŏleaster* (wild
olive), etc. All in -um are
neuter, e.g., *ligustrum* (privet);
also many third declension
words in -er, e.g., *ācer*, -*ēris*
(maple), *pāpāver*, -*ēris* (poppy),
etc.

(b) *Cities*: Plurals in -i, as
Delphī; also **Cānŏpus**, etc.
All in -um are neuter. Third

¹ These words are sometimes written as one word, e.g., *respublica*.

declension in -e and -ur are neuter.

(3) Indeclinable words and verbs, etc., used as nouns are neuter, *e.g.*, *fas*, *alpha*, *amāre*.

B. *Gender by termination* :—

First Declension.— All *feminine*.

Exceptions. Names of men, *nauta*, *agricola*, *Belga*.

Second Declension.— Nouns in -us and -er are **masculine**. Nouns in -um are neuter.

Exceptions:—

Fem. : *alvus* (belly), *cŭlus* (distaff), *dŏmus* (house), *hŭmus* (ground), *vannus* (fan).

Neut. : *pĕlāgus* (sea), *vīrus* (poison), *vulgus* (sometimes masc.) (common people).

Third Declension.—

Exceptions:—

(a) **Masculine endings** :

er, or, os.

es, increasing in the genitive.

o, except *do*, *go*, *io*.

er. *Neut.* : *cādāver*, -*ĕris* (corpse), *īter*, *ītīnĕris* (journey), *pāpāver*, -*ĕris* (poppy), *tūber*, -*ĕris* (swelling), *ūber*, -*ĕris* (teat), *vĕr*, *vĕris* (spring), *verber*, -*ĕris* (lash). *Fem.* : *linter*, -*tris* (skiff).

or. *Neut.* : *aequor*, -*ōris* (sea), *marmor*, -*ōris* (marble), *cŏr*, *cordis* (heart). *Fem.* : *arbor*, -*ōris* (tree).

os. *Neut.* : *ōs* (ossis) (bone), *ōs* (ōris) (mouth). *Fem.* : *cōs*, *cōtis* (whetstone), *dōs*, *dōtis* (dowry).

es. *Neut.* : *aes*, *aeris* (brass). *Fem.* : *compēs*, -*ēdis* (fetter),

mercēs, -ēdis (pay), *mergēs, -ītis* (sheaf), *quies, -ētis* (rest), *requies, -ētis* (repose), *sēgēs, -ētis* (harvest), *tēgēs, -ētis* (mat).

o. Fem.: *cāro, carnis* (flesh).

(b) *Feminine endings:*

do, go, io.

as, is, aus, x.

es, not increasing in the genitive.

s, preceded by a consonant.

Exceptions:—

do. Masc.: *ordo, -īnis* (series), *cardo, -īnis* (hinge).

go. Masc.: *līgo, -ōnis* (mattock), *margo, -īnis* (edge).

*io. Common*¹ *nouns, e.g., pāpilio, -iōnis* (butterfly), *pūgio, -iōnis* (dagger), *stellio, -iōnis* (lizard).

as. Masc.: *as, assis* (pound), *ēlēphas, -ntis* (elephant), *vās*.² *Neut.:* *vās, fās* (indecl.) (right), *nēfās* (indecl.) (crime).

is. Masc.: *amnis* (river), *anguis (fem.)*³ (snake), *axis* (axle), *cassis* (gen. -is) (net), *collis* (hill), *cīnis, -ēris* (ashes), *crīnis* (hair), *ensis* (sword), *fascis* (bundle), *fīnis (fem.)* (end), *follis* (ball), *fūnis* (rope), *ignis* (fire), *lāpis, -īdis* (stone), *mensis* (month), *orbis* (circle), *pānis* (bread), *piscis* (fish),

¹ The feminine nouns in *io* are abstract.

² *Vās, vādis* (masc.), *a surety*; *vās, vāsis* (neut.), *vessel, dish*. In the plural *vās* makes *vāsa, vasorum*, etc., like a second declension neuter.

³ This means that in some authors the word is feminine, though it is usually masculine.

postis (doorpost), **pulvis**, **-ĕris** (dust), **sanguis**, **-ĭnis** (blood), **torris** (firebrand), **unguis** (nail of finger, etc.), **vectis** (lever), **vermis** (worm).

x. Masc. : **călix**, **-ĭcis** (goblet), **cōdex**, **-ĭcis** (book), **cortex**, **-ĭcis** (*fem.*) (bark of tree), **grex**, **grĕgis** (herd), **pollex**, **-ĭcis** (thumb), **sĭlex**, **-ĭcis** (*fem.*) (flint), **vertex**, **-ĭcis** (whirlpool).

s. Masc. : **mons**, **-ntis** (mountain), **pons**, **-ntis** (bridge), **fons**, **-ntis** (fountain), **dens**, **-ntis** (tooth), **quadrans**, **-ntis** (quarter), **rūdens**, **-ntis** (*fem.*) (rigging).

{c) Neuter endings :—

c, **a**, **t**, **e**, **i**, **n**.

ar, **ur**.

ūs (short).

Exceptions :—

l. Masc. : **săl**, **sălis** (salt), **sōl**, **sōlis** (sun).

n. Masc. : **lĭēn**, **-ĕnis** (spleen), **pectĕn**, **-ĭnis** (comb).

ur. Masc. : **fūr**, **fūris** (thief), **furfūr**, **-ŭris** (bran), **turtūr**, **-ŭris** (turtledove), **vultūr**, **-ŭris** (vulture).

us. Fem. : **pĕcus** (**-ŭdis**) (a head of cattle), and all with genitive **-ŭtis** or **-ŭdis** :—

incŭs, **-ŭdis** (anvil), **iŭventŭs**, **-tŭtis** (youth).

pālŭs, **-ŭdis** (marsh), **salŭs**, **-ŭtis** (safety).

sēnectūs, -ūtis (old age), *ser-*

vītūs, -ūtis (slavery).

tellūs, -ūris (earth).

Masc. : *lēpus, -ōris* (hare),

mūs, -ūris (mouse), *grūs,*

grūis (*fem.*) (crane), *sūs, sūis*

(*fem.*) (pig).

Fourth Declension.—us

masc., u neut.

Exceptions. *Fem. :* *ācus*

(needle), *mānus* (hand), *dōmus*

(house), *īdūs* (pl.) (ides), *portī-*

cus (porch), *tribus* (tribe).

Fifth Declension. — All

feminine.

Exceptions. *Masc. :* *diēs*

(*fem.* in poetry) (day), and

mēriēdiēs (midday).

APPENDIX IV.

PARSING.

The most important words, *verb* and *noun* (or pronoun), are set out in detail. Other parts of speech can be parsed on the plan shown in the examples. In all cases begin by stating the part of speech.

Verb.

(a) Give the parts of the verb.

(b) Person, number, tense, mood, voice.

(c) Agrees with subject and governs direct object (if a trans. v.).

(d) Explain the mood.¹

Noun.

(a) Give nominative and genitive singular.

(b) Case, number, with reason for case.

Examples of Parsing.

(a) *Magnus est dolor militum, comites sepelientium.* (b) *Instruite aciem, milites, ne hostes nos vincant.* (c) *In duce*

¹ This only applies to the subjunctive. If the verb is indicative or imperative (d) may be omitted.

erat *plus* audaciae quam sapientiae. (d) Proxima nocte socios in arcem clam duxit.

magnus . . . adjective, positive, masculine, nominative, agrees with *dolor*.

dolor . . . (a) noun from *dolor*, *doloris* (masc.).
(b) nominative singular, subject after *est*.

militum . . . (a) noun from *miles*, *militis* (masc.).
(b) genitive plural, governed by *dolor*.¹

sepelientium (a) verb from *sēpēlio*, -ire, -ivi, *sēpultum*, 4.
(b) present participle.
(c) genitive case, plural, agrees with *militum*.

ne conjunction joining *Instruite* . . . *mīlites* to *hostes* . . . *vincant*.

vincant . . . (a) verb from *vinco*, -ēre, *vici*, *victum*, 3.
(b) 3rd person plural, present subjunctive, active.
(c) agrees with subject *hostes*, and governs *nos* in accusative.
(d) it is subjunctive because it denotes negative purpose

dūce . . . (a) noun from *dux*, *dūcis* (masc.).
(b) ablative singular, governed by preposition *in*.

plus . . . adjective, comparative neuter of *multus*, used as a noun governing *audaciae*.

sapientiae . . . (a) noun from *sapientia*, -ae (fem.).
(b) genitive singular, governed by *plus* (understood).

nocte . . . (a) noun from *nox*, *noctis* (fem.).
(b) ablative singular, denoting time when.

in preposition governing accusative *arcem* (motion towards).

clam adverb, modifying *duxit*.

¹ A genitive is always governed by the noun denoting the thing possessed, e.g., a *dog's* collar, *dog's* governed by *collar*.

APPENDIX V.

RULES FOR QUANTITY.

A vowel is said to be **long** by **nature**, *e.g.*, *fēlix*, or by **position**, *mēnsa*. App. I., § 3.

General Rules.

1. (a) A vowel standing before another vowel in the same word but not in the same syllable is **short**, *e.g.*, *rēi*, *faciō*.

Exception: *fīo*.

(b) A vowel standing before two consonants or *x* is **long**, *e.g.*, *mēnsa*, *bēllum*.

(c) All diphthongs are **long**, *e.g.*, *mensē*.

(d) Derivatives are like the original word in quantity. Thus *ūter*, *ūsus*, *ūtīlis*.

There are some exceptions: *dūco* but *dūcis*; *vōx*, *vōcis*, but *vōco*.

(e) All vowels which have been contracted are **long**. Thus: *cōgo* for *cō-āgo*.

2. Final vowels **A, I, O, U**, generally **long**; **E** **short**.

Final **A** **long**, *trīgintā*, *laudā*.

Exceptions: Nominative and vocative of 1st declension, *rosā*.

Neuter plural of all words, *bellā*, also *itā*, *quidā*.

Final **I** **long**, *laudavī*, *patrī*.

Exceptions: *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ubi*, *ibi* (usually short).

quāsi and *nisi*, always short.

Final **O**, **long** *sermō*, *monēō*.

Exceptions: *egō*, *duō*, and the adverb *modō*.

Final **U** **long**, *manū*.

Final **E** **short**, *sermonē*, *laudatē*.

Exceptions: Long in ablative of 5th declension, *dīē*.

Long in adverbs derived from adjectives, *doctē* (but short in *bēnē*, *mālē*).

Long in imperative of 2nd conjugation, *monē*.

Long in the monosyllables *mē*, *nē*, *sē*, *tē*.

3. All enclitics are short, -quē, -vē, -nē.

4. Final syllables ending in any **consonant** but *s* are generally short, *laudāt, consūl, maiōr, laudatūr*.

5. Final syllables ending in -as, -os, -es are usually long, *rosās, populōs, vulpēs*.

Exceptions: *milēs, obsēs*, etc.

6. Final -is is **long** in the ablative or dative plural, in 2nd person singular of 4th conjugation; **short** in the genitive and in most verbs.

Long, *rosīs, dominīs, audīs*, also in *sīs, vīs* (verbs) and in *vīs* (violence).

Short, *avīs, patrīs, laudatīs*.

Final -us is usually short, *dominūs, manūs, corpūs*.

Exceptions: genitive singular and nominative plural of 4th declension, *manūs*, and in *salūs* (nominative), *ilūs* (nominative), etc.

APPENDIX VI.

ORDER OF WORDS IN A LATIN SENTENCE.

1. Latin words being inflected, their meaning does not depend on their **position** as in languages like English. But **rhythm**—which exists in good prose just as much as in good poetry—and **emphasis** depend entirely on the position.

2. The **two emphatic places** in a Latin sentence are the **first** and the **last**. Any word therefore is made emphatic by being placed either first or last.

General Rules.

3. The **normal order** is Nominative, Accusative, Verb.

Caesar Gallos vicit.

4. A **governed word** usually stands **before** the governing word, *regis filius*.

5. **Adjectives**, except demonstratives like *hic*, usually stand after the noun, *hortus pulcher*, but *hic hortus*.

6. If, however, demonstratives like *hic*, *ille*, *iste*, are attached to a noun which has another adjective, the demonstrative usually stands between adjective and noun, *magna haec urbs*.

7. **Nouns in apposition**, like adjectives, generally follow the name, *Leōnidas, Lacedaemoniorum rex*.

8. When an adjective qualifies a noun which has a **genitive** attached to it the genitive is placed between the adjective and noun, *anno regni tertio*.

9. **Adverbs** and adverbial phrases stand before the verbs modified. The negatives **non**, **haud** stand before the word modified, *e.g.*, **haud facile**.

10. The following words can **never stand first** in a clause, **enim**, **vero**, **autem**, **quoque**, **quidem** (§ 372). The enclitics **-quē**, **-vē** and **-nē** are affixed to the word which they introduce.

11. We have now seen what is the **normal order of words** in a Latin sentence. It follows that if any word is placed in an **unusual position** attention is attracted to it, and it then becomes emphatic. Thus the verb may, for emphasis, be placed first, or the subject removed from its first position, or an adverb may be put at the end of the sentence, or the object may stand first of all, as will be seen from these examples from Cicero:—

(a) **Condiunt** Aegyptii mortuos et eos servant **domi**.

(b) Mesopotamiam fertilem efficit **Euphrates**.

(c) **Hunc** Aegyptii Theuth appellant.

(d) Aegyptorum mores **quis** ignorat?

VOCABULARIES.

* * In these vocabularies the quantity (Appendix I., § 3, p. 299) of a vowel is not marked as a rule in the following cases:—

- (a) A vowel standing before two consonants, which is always long.
- (b) A vowel standing before another vowel, which is always short.
- (c) Diphthongs, which are always long.

VOCABULARY 77.

Viva voce:—

frāter, -tris (m.), <i>brother.</i>	vir, vīri (m.), <i>man.</i>
hortus, -i (m.), <i>garden.</i>	exemplum, -i (n.), <i>example.</i>
servus, -i (m.), <i>slave.</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best.</i>
dōminus, -i (m.), <i>master, lord.</i>	bōnus, -a, -um, <i>good.</i>
ēquus, i (m.), <i>horse.</i>	tīmeo, 2, <i>to fear.</i>
ūtīlis, -ē, <i>useful.</i>	praebeo, 2, <i>to set.</i>
A. amicus, -i (m.), <i>friend.</i>	exercitus, -ūs (m.), <i>army.</i>
dux, dūcis (m.), <i>leader.</i>	nōmen, -inis (n.), <i>name.</i>
frūmentum, -i (n.), <i>corn.</i>	hābeo, 2, <i>to have.</i>
pauper, paupēris, <i>poor.</i>	fortior, -ius, <i>braver.</i>
lex, lēgis (f.), <i>law.</i>	quam, <i>than.</i>
Lycurgus, -i (m.), <i>Lycurgus, a</i>	Hannibal, -bālis, <i>Hannibal.</i>
<i>Grecian law-giver.</i>	Rōmānus, -i (m.), <i>Roman.</i>
āsīnus, -i (m.), <i>ass.</i>	sūpēro, 1, <i>to overcome.</i>
cēlērīor, -ius, <i>swifter.</i>	multus, -a, -um, <i>many.</i>
ūbi? <i>where?</i>	proelium, -ii (n.), <i>battle.</i>
audio, 4, <i>to hear.</i>	patria, -ae (f.), <i>native land.</i>
miles, -ītis (m.), <i>soldier.</i>	sāpiens, -entis, <i>wise.</i>
undē, <i>whence.</i>	ūtīlior, -ius, <i>more useful.</i>
do, dāre, dēdi, dātum, 1, <i>to give.</i>	
contemno, -ēre, contempsi, contemptum, 3, <i>to despise.</i>	
vēnio, vēnire, vēnī, ventum, 4, <i>to come.</i>	
B. facilis, -e, <i>easy.</i>	cēler, cēlērīs, cēlērē, <i>swift.</i>
lābōro, 1, <i>to labour.</i>	consīlium, -i (n.), <i>plan.</i>
aestas, -ātis (f.), <i>summer.</i>	agrīcōla, -ae (m.), <i>farmer.</i>
ira, -ae (f.), <i>anger.</i>	āro, 1, <i>to plough.</i>

crūdēlis, -ē, *cruel.*semper, *always.*filius, -ii (m.), *son.*omnis, -ē, *all.*Caesar, -āris (m.), *Caesar.*histōria, -ae, *story.*cervus, -i (m.), *stag.*āger, -gri (m.), *field.*Gallus, -i, *a Gaul.*hābitō, 1, *to dwell.*āmo, 1, *to love.*pōmum, -i (n.), *apple.*narro, 1, *to relate.*bellum, -i (n.), *war.*video, vidēre, vidi, visum, 2, *to see.*

VOCABULARY 78.

taurus, -i (m.), *bull.*grāvis, -e, *heavy.*ūnus (§ 100, p. 131), *one.*campus, -i (m.), *field.*cibus, -i (m.), *food.*sūbito, *suddenly.*leo, -ōnis (m.), *lion.*inquit (§ 239, p. 215), *says (he).*quōmōdō, *how.*tantus, -a, -um, *so great.*pēricūlum, -i, *danger.*nōs, *us, ourselves.*impētus, -ūs (m.), *attack.*eius (§ 51), *his.*ūnā (adv.), *together.*autem, *however.*hic, haec, hoc, *this.*mihī, *to me.*plāceo, 2 (gov. dat.), *to please.*nōn aequus, *unequal.*cum (gov. abl.), *with.*primum, *first.*cursus, -ūs (m.), *running.*mē, *me, myself.*sustīneo, -ēre, -tīnuī, -tentum, *to withstand.*respondeo, -ēre, respondi, responsum, *to reply.*quaero, -ēre, quaesīvi, quaesītum, *to seek.*committo, -ēre, -mīsi, -misum, *to commit.*proelium committo, *to fight a battle.*

VOCABULARY 79.

arbor, -ōris (f.), *tree.*consilium, -i (n.), *plan.*dōnum, -i (n.), *gift.*tempus, -ōris (n.), *time.*rēgio, -iōnis (f.), *region.*causa, -ae (f.), *cause.*

VOCABULARY 80.

accūso, 1, *to accuse.*paucus, -a, -um, *few.*dico, -ēre, dixi, dictum, *to say.*verbum, -i (n.), *word.*

VOCABULARY 81.

dūco, -ēre, duxi, ductum, *to lead.*māneo, -ēre, mansi, mansum, *to remain.*dēfendo, -ēre, defendi, defensum, *to defend.*mittō, -ēre, mīsi, misum, *to send.*

imp̄r̄ator, -ōris (m.), *general*.
 exercitūs, -ūs (m.), *army*.
 Galli, -ōrum (m.), *the Gauls*.
 Gallia, -ae (f.), *Gaul*.
 glōria, -ae (f.), *glory*.
 sālus, -ūtis (f.), *safety*.
 flūmen, -inis (n.), *river*.
 Rhōdānūs, -i (m.), *the Rhone*.
 vito, 1, *to avoid*.
 inītiūm, -i (n.), *beginning*.
 ānimus, -i (m.), *mind*.
 plāceo, 2 (gov. dat.), *to please*.
 laudo, 1, *I praise*.
 laus, -dis (f.), *praise*.

socius, -i (m.), *ally*.
 causa, -ae (f.), *cause*.
 clārus, -a, -um, *distinguished*.
 strēnūē, *vigorously*.
 mēmōr, -ōris, *mindful* (§ 34 (a), n.).
 pristīnus, -a, -um, *former*.
 virtus, -ūtis (f.), *valour*.
 āvāritia, -ae (f.), *avarice*.
 castrā, -ōrum (n. plur.), *camp*.
 fuga, -ae (f.), *flight*.
 pōtestas, -tātis (f.), *power*.
 finis, -is (m.), *end*.
 campus, -i (m.), *plain*.
 iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant*.

VOCABULARY 82.

ignis, -is (m.), *fire*.
 pāro, 1, *to prepare*.
 dēlecto, 1, *to delight*.
 glādius, -i (m.), *sword*.
 pugno, 1, *to fight*.
 fortiter, *bravely*.
 vita, -ae (f.), *life*.
 servo, 1, *to preserve*.
 lux, lūcis (f.), *light* (noun).

monstro, 1, *to show*.
 hostis, -is (m.), *enemy*.
 pāter, -tris (m.), *father*.
 civitas, -tātis (f.), *state*.
 multus, -a, -um, *many*.
 filia, -ae (f.), *daughter*.
 rēgina, -ae (f.), *queen*.
 vox, vōcis (f.), *voice*.
 aurum, -i (n.), *gold*.

VOCABULARY 83.

vinco, -ēre, vici, victum, *to conquer*.
 ad-iungo, -ēre, -iunxi, -iunctum, *to join to*.
 gēro, -ēre, gessi, gestum, *to wage*.
 cāpio, -ēre, cēpi, captum, *to capture, to take*.
 dēleo, -ēre, delēvi, delētum, *to destroy*.
 consul, -ilis (m.), *consul*.
 dōmus, -ūs (§ 4, p. 302), *house*.
 hābito, 1, *to dwell*.
 aedifico, 1, *to build*.
 flōs, flōris (m.), *flower*.
 pastor, -ōris (m.), *shepherd*.
 appello, 1, *to call*.
 situs, -a, -um, *situated*.
 septem (indecl.), *seven*.
 mons, montis (m.), *mountain, hill*.

templum, -i (n.), *temple*.
 semper, *always*.
 Rōma, -ae (f.), *Rome*.
 Rōmulus, -i (m.), *the founder of Rome*.
 dea, -ae (f.), *goddess*.
 tēneo, 2, *to hold*.
 nāvis, -is (f.), *ship*.
 portus, -ūs (m.), *harbour*.
 classis, -is (f.), *fleet*.

VOCABULARY 84.

Tiva voce :—

āro, 1, to plough.
regno, 1, to reign.
terreo, 2, to terrify.
nuntio, 1, to announce.

praemium, -ii (n.), reward.
pēcūnia, -ae (f.), money.
opto, 1, to desire.
ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3, to buy.

A. B. castigo, 1, to punish.
vasto, 1, to lay waste.
narro, 1, to relate.
coerceo, 2, to restrain.
prōditor, -ōris (m.), traitor.

finis, -is (m.), end (pl. territories).
significo, 1, to mean.
nimis (adv.), too much.
factum, -i (n.), deed.
praeda, -ae (f.), booty.

VOCABULARY 85.

instruo, -ēre, instruxi, instructum, 3, to draw up.
lēgo, -ēre, lēgi, lectum, 3, to read.

creo, 1, to create.
prudentia, -ae (f.), prudence.
libero, 1, to set free.
mors, -tis (f.), death.
turpis, -e, disgraceful.
lūdus, -i (m.), game.
ripa, -ae (f.), bank (of a river).

cōpiae (f. pl.), forces.
Hercūles, -is (m.), Hercules.
mox, soon.
pōtens, -entis, powerful.
scūtum, -i (n.), shield.
subiectus, -a, -um, subject.
cāput, -itis (n.), head.

VOCABULARY 87.

occido, -ēre, occīdi, occisum, 3, to kill.
conscribo, -ēre, conscripsi, conscriptum, 3, to enrol.
vendo, -ere, vendīdi, venditum, 3, to sell.

currus, -ūs (m.), chariot.
Mārius, -ii (m.), a Roman general.
Iūgurtha, -ae (m.), an African king.
miser, -ēra, -ērum, wretched.
talentum, -i (n.), a talent (£243 15s.).

obses, -idis (m.), hostage.
captivus, -i (m.), captive.
ēlēphantus, -i (m.), elephant.
Miltiādes, -is (m.), a Greek general.
victor, -ōris (m.), conqueror.

VOCABULARY 88.

mensis, -is (m.), month.
regnum, -i (n.), reign.
mātrīmōnium, -ii (n.), marriage.
Pūnicus, Pūnic (Carthaginian).
aetas, -ātis (f.), age.

pervēnio, 4, to arrive.
prior, -ōris, the former.
scriptor, -ōris (m.), writer.
dēsīdēro, 1, to long for.
impērium, -ii (n.), rule.

vīvo, -ēre, vixi, victum, 3, to live.

VOCABULARY 89.

1. *condo*, -ēre, *condidī*, *conditum*, 3, to found.
ēligo, -ēre, *ēlēgi*, *ēlectum*, 3, to choose.
āgo, -ēre, *ēgi*, *actum*, 3, to do.
- voco*, 1, to call.
sēnior, -ōris, older, elder.
sēnātor, -ōris (m.), senator.
2. *postea*, afterwards.
quidem, indeed.
mīnus (adv.), less.
- nōmīno*, 1, to name.
propter (gov. acc.), on account of.
sēnectus, -ūtis (f.), (old) age.
- profuit*, from *prosum*, to be service-
 able.
morbus, -i (m.), disease.
- dēcēdo*, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, to die.
- 3-5. *succēdo* (like *dēcēdo*), to succeed
 (= to follow).
Albānus, -i (m.), an Albanian.
mīliārium, -ii (n.), milestone.
nēpos, -ōtis (n.), grandson.
ostium, -ii (n.), mouth (of river).
Tībēris, -is (m.), the Tiber.
- dēindē*, next.
accipio, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, to
 receive.
nūmērus, -i (m.), number.
duplico, 1, to double.
etiam, also.
Sābīni, -ōrum, the Sabines.
- 6-8. *quōquē*, also.
subīgo, -ēre, -ēgi, -actum, to sub-
 due.
scēlus, -ēris (n.), crime.
gēner, -ēri (m.), son-in-law.
itā, thus.
fūgio, 3 (Voc. 90), to flee.
- atque*, and.
ultimus, -a, -um, last.
Tusci, -ōrum, the Tuscans.
Iuppiter, *Iōvis*, Jupiter.
imprōbus, -a, -um, wicked.
impēro, 1, to rule.
uxor, -ōris (f.), wife.

VOCABULARY 90.

- cāpio*, *cāpēre*, *cēp-i*, *captum*, to take, to capture.
cūpio, *cūpēre*, *cūpiv-i*, *cūpitum*, to desire.
fācio,¹ *fācēre*, *fēc-i*, *factum*, to make, to do.
fūgio, *fūgēre*, *fūg-i*, *fūgitum*, to flee.
iācio, *iācēre*, *iēc-i*, *iactum*, to throw.
quātio, *quātēre*, —, *quassum*, to shake.
- impētus*, -ūs (m.), a rush, an attack.
lignum, -i (n.), wood (in plur. firewood).
flūmen, -inis (n.), river.
glōriā, -ae (f.), glory, renown.
- barbārus*, -i (m.), barbarian.
sociūs, -i (m.), ally.
sociētās, -ātis (f.), alliance.
dīvitiāe, -ārum (f. pl.), wealth.

¹ For passive voice of *facio* see §§ 179-80.

LATIN COURSE.

VOCABULARY 91.

accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptum, to receive.	
suscipio, suscipere, suscepī, susceptum, to undertake	
diripio, diripere, dirīpui, direptum, to plunder.	
inter-ficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, to kill.	
con-icio, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, to throw, to hurl	
de-icio, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, to throw down.	
fēliciter (adv.), happily, successfully.	rēliquus, -a, -um, remaining.
ingens, -ntis, very great, enormous.	Helvētīi, -orum, Helvetii.
cottidie (adv.), daily	saxum, -i (n.), rock, stone.
facile (adv.), easily.	tēlum, -i (n.), weapon.

VOCABULARY 92.

respondēo, -ēre, respond-ī, responsum, 2, to reply.	
curro, -ere, cūcurr-ī, cursum, 3, to run.	
disco, -ere, didic-ī, —, 3, to learn.	
invado, -ere, invās-ī, invāsum, 3, to enter, invade.	
cōlo, -ere, cōlū-ī, cultum, 3, to cultivate.	
cēdo, -ere, cess-ī, cessum, 3, to yield.	
ars, -tis (f.), art.	causā, ae (f.), cause.
signum, -i (n.), signal.	causā, on account of, for the sake of.
mōra, -ae (f.), delay.	cūpīdūs, -ā, -um, desirous.
quies, -ētis (f.), rest.	nāvigo, 1, to sail.
sensūs, -ūs (m.), sense.	vōluptās, -ātis (f.), pleasure
fessus, -a, -um, weary.	sāpienter (adv.), wisely.

VOCABULARY 93.

pūto, 1, to think.	nuntius, -i (m.), a messenger.
scio, 4, to know.	nuntio, ¹ 1, to relate.
lūpus, -i (m.), wolf.	rēnuntio, ¹ 1, to bring back word, to report.
saevus, -a, -um, fierce.	

VOCABULARY 94.

sātis ² (adv.), enough.	nēgo, 1, to deny.
āvaritia, -ae (f.), avarice.	vērū, -a, -um, true.
nīmīs ² (adv.), too much.	aeger, -grā, -grum, ill, sick.
vītium, -ii (n.), vice.	saevus, -a, -um, fierce.

¹ Remember that a few verbs of the first conjugation have -io; they are perfectly regular: *nuntio, nuntiare, nuntiavi, nuntiatum*. They must be carefully distinguished from words like *cipio, 3*, and *audio, 4*.

² Adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions are not declined.

VOCABULARY 95.

dōmī (§ 815), *at home*.Carthāgo, -inis (f.), *Carthage*.pōno, -ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, 3, *to place*.

VOCABULARY 96.

āgo, -ēre, ēgi, actum, *to do, to act, to drive*.intellēgo, -ēre, intellexi, intellectum, *to understand*.explōrātor, -ōris (m.), *spy, scout*.dūco, 3, *to lead*.trādūco, *to lead across*.ad-dūco, 3, *to lead to, to bring*.caecus, -a, -um, *blind*.servo, 1, *to keep, to preserve*.tempus āgo, *to pass time*.sācerdos, -ōtis (m.), *priest*.praeceptor, -ōris (m.), *teacher*.Hōmērus, -i (m.), *Homer*.¹Cicēro, -ōnis (m.), *Cicero*.²Livius, -i (m.), *Livy*.³Aegyptius, -i (m.), *an Egyptian*.Aegyptus, -i (f.), *Egypt*.iniūria, -ae (f.), *injury, wrong*.nihil (indecl.), *nothing*.et . . . et, *both . . .*

VOCABULARY 98.

lūdo, -ēre, lūsi, lūsum, 3, *to play*.ostendo, -ēre, ostendi, ostensum, *to show*.Poenus, -i (m.), *a Carthaginian*.ingens, -entis, *huge, enormous*.inquit, *says he*.tum (adv.), *there*.ēlūdo, 3, *to jeer at*.ignāvia, -ae (f.), *cowardice*.tam (adv.), *so*.prētiosē (adv.), *richly*.armātus, *armed*.plānē, *plainly, clearly*.ētiamsi, *even if*.āvārus, -a, -um, *greedy*.

NOTES.—1. Hannībal (gen. Hannībālīs), the leader of the Carthaginians, after the second Punic war fell into disfavour with his countrymen and fled to the court of Antiōchus III., king of Syria, who was then preparing to make war on the Romans (B.C. 193).

The Carthaginians were originally a colony of Phoenicians from Tyre, and so they are often called Poenī and Pūnicī. Hannibal especially is often called Poenus, *i.e.*, the Carthaginian.

2. Inquit, a defective verb (§ 513, p. 295), is only used parenthetically, like the English *says he*.

¹ Homer, the earliest Greek poet, author of *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey*.

² Marcus Tullius Cicero (§ 269), the most celebrated Roman orator and writer.

³ Titus Livius Pātāvīnus, celebrated Roman historian.

LATIN COURSE.

VOCABULARY 99.

quaero, -ĕre, quaesivī, quaesitum, 3, to ask (for).	
cognosco, -ĕre, cognōvī, cognitum, 3, to recognise.	
crĕdo, -ĕre, crĕdidi, crĕditum, 3, to believe (gov. dat.).	
iānua, -ae (f.), door.	impudens, shameless.
ancilla, -ae (f.), maid.	iussū (abl. c.), by order of.
tāmen (conj.), nevertheless, however.	intus, within, indoors.
paucis post diēbus, a few days after.	exclāmo, 1, to cry out.
hic (adv.), here, hereupon.	rōgo, 1, to ask.

NOTES.—1. Publius Scipio Nāsica was the son of the consul Scipio, who was killed in Spain in 191. Ennius, the earliest Roman poet, B.C. 239-169.

2. Iūssu, the ablative case of iussus, -ūs, is the only case of the word used.

3. In paragraph 5 of the story supply *said* after Nāsica, and notice that such an omission is very common in Latin.

4. In paragraphs 4 and 5, the sentences "Ego . . . tuam?" and "Tu . . . ipsi?" are questions without the interrogative particle (§ 75). This is sometimes found in conversational Latin, but of course the pupil must not imitate it in exercises.

VOCABULARIES 100 AND 101.

tēno, -ĕre, tēnuī, tentum, 2, to hold.	
continĕo, -ĕre, continui, contentum, 2, to hold together.	
iūbeo, -ĕre, iussi, iussum, 2, to command.	
armo, 1, to arm.	complĕo, 2 (see vocab.), to fill.
fossa, -ae (f.), ditch.	lāpis, -idis (m.), stone.
Sōlon, -ōnis (m.), Solon, an Athenian	sāpientĕr (adv.), wisely.
law-giver.	clādēs, -is (f.), defeat.
poena, -ae (f.), penalty, punishment.	exsul, -ūlis (c.), an exile.
Athēniensis, -is (c.), Athenian.	Carthāgo, -gīnis (f.), Carthage.

NOTE.—Impĕro, 1, and iūbeo, 2, both mean to command; *impero* takes *ut* and subjunctive (§ 66), *iubeo* accusative and infinitive.

VOCABULARY 102.

explōrātor, -ōris (m.), spy.	ostendo, -ĕre, -di, -entum, to show.
captus, -a, -um, having been captured.	postĕā (adv.), afterwards.
dūco, 3, to lead.	prandium, -i (n.), a meal.

circumdūco, 3, to lead round.
per (prep. with acc.), through.

dī-mitto, 3 (see *mitto*), to send away.
rēnuntiō, 1, to report.

NOTE.—*Prandium*, a late breakfast or luncheon taken about noon, consisting of bread, fish, hot and cold meats, etc.

VOCABULARY 103.

DEPONENTS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

hortor, *hortārī*, *hortātus sum*, to exhort.
miror, *mirārī*, *mirātus sum*, to admire.
mōror, *mōrārī*, *mōrātus sum*, to linger (delay).
vāgor, *vāgārī*, *vāgātus sum*, to wander.
pōpūlor, *pōpūlārī*, *pōpūlātus sum*, to ravage.
arbitror, *arbitrārī*, *arbitrātus sum*, to think (judge).
īmītor, *īmītārī*, *īmītātus sum*, to imitate.

ōrātor, -ōris (m.), orator.

fūtūrus, -a, -um, future.

dignus, -a, -um (gov. abl.), worthy.

tandem (adv.), at length.

diligentia, -ae (f.), diligence.

industria, -ae (f.), industry.

impēdimentum, -i (n.), impediment.

nātūra, -ae (f.), nature.

Bābŷlon, -ōnis (f.), Babylon.

magnitūdo, -inis (f.), size, magnitude.

pulchritūdo, -inis (f.), beauty.

Dēmōsthēnēs, -is (m.), Demosthenes,
 a Greek orator.

sinē (prep. with abl.), without.

NOTE.—With the deponents above compare *mirus*, wonderful; *mōra*, delay; *arbitr*, umpire.

VOCABULARY 104.

DEPONENTS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

vērēor, *vērērī*, *vērītus sum*, to fear.

pollicēor, *pollicērī*, *pollicītus sum*, to promise.

tūēor, *tūērī*, *tūītus sum*, to watch over.

mīsērēor, *mīsērērī*, *mīsērītus sum*, to pity (gov. genitive).

fātēor, *fātērī*, *fassus sum*, to confess.

servāre or *conservāre*, to preserve.

insidiæ, -ārum (f. plur.), ambush.

cruciātus, -ūs (m.), torture.

diligentēr (adv.), carefully, diligently.

pānis, -is (m.), bread.

exemplum, -i (n.), example.

inūtilis, -ē, useless.

hōra, -ae (f.), hour.

NOTES.—1. *Vērēor*, to fear, is not so strong in meaning as *timēo*. *Vereor* frequently means to look upon with respect or awe. Compare reverence in English.

2. *Tūtus, safe*, is derived from *tueor*; it means having-been-watched over and therefore *safe*.

3. *Miser, wretched*; *miserēor, I make myself wretched* on account of some one, and so *I pity* some one.

VOCABULARY 105.

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtus sum, 3, to follow.	
lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtus sum, 3, to speak.	
prōficiscor, prōficiscī, prōfectus sum, 3, to set out.	
ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, 3, to avenge.	
nascor, nasci, nātus sum, 3, to be born.	
obliviscor, oblivisci, oblītus sum, 3, to forget (with gen. case).	
rēmīniscor, rēmīniscī, —, 3, to remember (with gen. case).	
ānūlus, -i (m.), ring.	circīter (adv.), about.
vīgīlia, -ae (f.), watch.	Lābiēnus, -i, a Roman general.
fāma, -ae (f.), reputation.	libērē (adv.), freely.
ēquitātus, -ūs (m.), cavalry.	Graecē (adv.), Greek.
vētus, -ēris, old.	Lātinē (adv.), Latin.
iniūria, -ae (f.), injury.	Āthēnae, -arum (plur.), Athens.

NOTE.—The Roman night, from 6 P.M. to 6 A.M., was divided into four watches (§ 45S).

VOCABULARY 106.

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION (continued).

fungor, fungī, functus sum, to discharge (a duty, etc.).	
frūor, frūī, fructus (fruitus) sum, to enjoy.	
ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, to use.	
vescor, vescī, —, to feed on.	
Iphicrātes, -is, a Greek general.	mūnus, -ēris (n.), office, duty.
pēdestēr, -tris, -trē (adj.), of foot-soldiers.	ōvum, -i (n.), egg.
mūto, 1, to change.	Gallīcus, -a, -um, Gallic.
clīpēs, -i (m.), a shield.	de (prep. with abl.), concerning.
autēm (conj.), however.	Britannus, -i (m.), Briton.
mōdus, -i (m.), measure, size.	aut . . . aut, either . . . or.
duplicō, 1, to double.	aes, aerīs (n.), copper.
Hēlōtēs, -um (m. plur.), Helots (slaves of the Spartans).	aerēs, -a, -um (adj.), copper.
	ferreūs, -a, -um (adj.), iron.
	nummus, -i (m.), coin.

Lăcēdaemōnius , -i, <i>Spartan</i> .	tālēa , -ae (f.), <i>bar, stick</i> .
cōlo , -ere, <i>cōlui, cultum</i> , 3, <i>to till</i> .	prō (prep. with abl.), <i>for, in place of</i> .

NOTE.—**Clīpēus**, a round brazen shield; **scūtum**, an oval or oblong shield covered with hide.

VOCABULARY 107.

DEONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION ENDING IN -IOR.

mōrior , <i>mōri, mortuus sum</i> , 3, <i>to die</i> .	
pātor , <i>pāti, passus sum</i> , 3, <i>to suffer, to allow</i> .	
ag-grēdior , <i>ag-grēdi, ag-gressus sum</i> , 3, <i>to attack</i> .	
ē-grēdior , <i>ē-grēdi, ē-gressus sum</i> , 3, <i>to go out, to march out</i> .	
in-grēdior , <i>in-grēdi, in-gressus sum</i> , 3, <i>to go into, to enter</i> .	
prō-grēdior , <i>prō-grēdi, prō-gressus sum</i> , 3, <i>to advance, to march forth</i> .	
ad (prep. with acc.), <i>to, towards</i> .	igītūr (adv.), <i>therefore</i> .
e or ex ¹ (prep. with abl.), <i>out of</i> .	ānima , -ae (f.), <i>soul</i> .
in (R. 7) (prep.), <i>in or into</i> .	pompa , -ae (f.), <i>pomp</i> .
prō (prep. with abl.), <i>in front of, for</i>	passus , -ūs (m.), <i>step, a pace</i> .
(= <i>on behalf of</i>).	mōra , -ae (f.), <i>delay</i> .
fortiter (adv.), <i>bravely</i> .	longius (adv.), <i>farther, too far</i> .

NOTES.—1. In connection with the last four verbs notice that there is a simple verb **grādior**,² *to step, to walk* (compare **grādus**, *a step*), which is not much used. Thus, **ag-grēdior**² (= **ad-gredior**) means *to step towards* and then *to attack*; **ē-grēdior**, *to step out of*; **in-gredior**, *to step into*; **prō-grēdior**, *to step forth*.

2. **Passus**. The Roman step was reckoned from one foot till the same foot was put down again; thus a Roman step was about twice an English step. Hence,

mille passūs	= about an English mile.
duo milia passuum	= two English miles, etc.

VOCABULARY 108.

Diōgēnes , -is, <i>a Greek</i> .	permagnus , -a, -um, <i>very large</i> .
ālīquando , (once) upon a time.	permultus , -a, -um, <i>very much</i> .

¹ Ex before a vowel.

² For the change of a in **grādior** to e in **aggrēdior** see § 479.

VOCABULARY 109.

DEPONENTS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

mētiōr, mētirī, mensus sum, *to measure.*mentīor, mentirī, mentitus sum, *to lie, to tell lies.*partīor, partirī, partitus sum, *to divide, to share.*pōtiōr, pōtirī, pōtitus sum, *to get possession of (gov. abl.).*inter (prep. with acc.), *between.*Āgēsīlāus, -i (m.), *a Spartan king.*sēmel (adv.), *once, a single time.*Ēpāmīnondas, -ae (m.), *a Theban*iōcus,¹ -i (m.), *joke.**general.*signum, -i (n.), *signal.*centūriō, -ōnis (m.), *a centurion.*dōlor, -ōris (m.), *grief, sorrow.*lac, lactis (n.), *milk.*

VOCABULARIES 110 AND 111.

pons, pontis (m.), *bridge.*displiceo (gov. dat.), *to displease.*vincio, -ire, vinxi, vinctum, 4, *to bind.*festino, 1, *to hasten.*custōdiō, 4, *to guard.*nōceo, 2 (gov. dat.), *to injure.*mōneo, 2, *to warn.*fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch.*sēpeliō, 4, *to bury.*

VOCABULARY 112.

rētīnēo, 2, *to hold.*hic (adv.), *here*insīdiāe, -ārum (f. pl.), *ambush.*it̄erum (adv.), *again, a second time.*cēlērīter (adv.), *quickly.*sāpīenter (adv.), *wisely.*prūdentiā, -ae (f.), *prudence.*audacter (adv.), *boldly.*dico, 3, *to say, to tell.*vērus, -a, -um, *true.*displicēo, 2 (gov. dat.), *to displease.*ignāvus, -a, -um, *cowardly.*

VOCABULARY 113.

circīter (adv.), *about.*antēa (adv.), *formerly.*Zāma, -ae (f.), *a town in Numidia.*haud (adv.), *not.*Mŷcēnae, -ārum (f. pl.), *Mycenae, a city in Greece.*prōcul (adv.), *far.*Carthāgīniensis, *Carthaginian.*quīdem (adv.), *indeed (see § 372).*libēro, 1, *to free.*mīnus (adv.), *the less.*cunctor, 1, *to delay.*clārus, -a, -um, *distinguished.*sēmel (adv.), *once.*

NOTES.—1. Some names of towns are plural, e.g., Athēnae, *Athens*; Mŷcēnae, *Mycenae*.

¹ This word is sometimes neuter in the plural, iōcā, -ōrum.

2. Trebia, a small tributary of the River Po in North Italy, near to which Hannibal defeated the Romans B.C. 218.

3. Haud is used to modify adjectives and adverbs: *haud multus*, *not much*.

VOCABULARY 114.

<i>hēri</i> (adv.), <i>yesterday</i> .	<i>classis</i> , -is (f.), <i>fleet</i> .
<i>vix</i> (adv.), <i>scarcely</i> .	<i>spēro</i> , 1, <i>to hope</i> .
<i>rēgiō</i> , -ōnis (f.), <i>region</i> .	<i>neque</i> . . . <i>neque</i> , <i>neither</i> . . . <i>nor</i> .
<i>Persae</i> , -ārum (f. pl.), <i>Persians</i> .	<i>nec</i> (or <i>neque</i>), and <i>not</i> (§ 367).
<i>mōdus</i> , -i (m.), <i>manner</i> , <i>means</i> .	<i>lātē</i> (adv.), <i>widely</i> .
<i>libertas</i> , -tātis (f.), <i>liberty</i> .	<i>fātigo</i> , 1, <i>to fatigue</i> .
<i>cōlo</i> , <i>cōlēre</i> , <i>cōlūi</i> , <i>cultum</i> , 3, <i>to cultivate</i> .	
<i>sustīnēo</i> , -ēre, -tīnūi, -tentum, 2, <i>to withstand</i> .	
<i>contīneo</i> , -ēre, -tīnūi, -tentum, 2, <i>to bound</i> , <i>to hold</i> .	

VOCABULARY 115.

<i>mētūo</i> , <i>mētūēre</i> , <i>mētūi</i> , <i>mētūtum</i> , <i>to fear</i> .	
<i>cēdo</i> , <i>cēdēre</i> , <i>cessi</i> , <i>cessum</i> , <i>to yield</i> .	
<i>princeps</i> , -cīpis (c.), <i>chief</i> .	<i>Sōcrātes</i> , -is, <i>Socrates</i> .
<i>pālaestra</i> , -ae (f.), <i>wrestling-school</i> , <i>gymnasium</i> .	<i>carcer</i> , -ēris (m.), <i>prison</i> .
	<i>quam</i> (conj.), <i>rather-than</i> , <i>than</i> .
<i>týrannus</i> , -i (m.), <i>a tyrant</i> .	

NOTES.—1. Sōcrātes was an Athenian philosopher; put to death B.C. 399.

2. Tyrannus means not a tyrant in the modern sense, but merely a despotic ruler.

VOCABULARY 116.

<i>quiesco</i> , -ēre, <i>quiēvi</i> , <i>quiētum</i> , 3, <i>to rest</i> .	
<i>āmitto</i> , -ēre, <i>amīsi</i> , <i>amissum</i> , 3, <i>to lose</i> .	
<i>aufēro</i> , <i>to carry (away)</i> .	<i>circā</i> (prep. with acc.), <i>around</i> .
<i>confēro</i> , <i>to carry</i> .	<i>plērīquē</i> , ¹ <i>many</i> .
<i>affēro</i> , <i>to bring (to)</i> .	<i>lignum</i> , -i (n.), <i>wood</i> , <i>firewood</i> .
<i>antēfēro</i> , <i>to prefer</i> .	<i>morbus</i> , -i (m.), <i>disease</i> .
<i>impēdimentum</i> , -i (n.), <i>hindrance</i> .	<i>lūmen</i> , -inis (n.), <i>light</i> , <i>sight</i> .
<i>impēdimentā</i> , -ōrum (n.), <i>baggage</i> .	<i>cālāmītas</i> , -ātis (f.), <i>calamity</i> .
<i>rūmor</i> , -ōris (m.), <i>report</i> , <i>rumour</i> .	<i>aequō ānīmō</i> , <i>with resignation</i> .

¹ Plērīque, plēraequē, plērāque is declined like the plural of bonus, *que* being appended to the cases of *plēri*, etc.; gen. plērōrumque, etc.

diū (adv.), *a long time, long.*
noctū (adv.), *by night.*
ōra, -ae (f.), *shore, coast.*

pestis, -is (f.), *plague.*
infesto, 1, *to infest, to attack.*
pätienter (adv.), *patiently.*

VOCABULARY 117.

somnus, -i (m.), *sleep.*
similis, -e (gov. dat.), *like* (adj.).
sensus, -ūs (m.), *sense.*
omnino (adv.), *altogether.*
placatus, -a, -um, *quiet.*
quies, -ētis (f.), *rest.*
campus, -i (m.), *field.*
ferax, -ācis, *fruitful.*
adiacens, -ntis, *near to.*
messis, -is (f.), *harvest.*
vis, § 3 (c), *p. 301.*

refēro, to carry back.
offēro, to offer.
perfēro,¹ to bear.
infēro, to carry (into).
Naxus, -i (f.), *Naxos, an island near Greece.*
Xerxes, -is, *king of Persia.*
Agēsilaus, -i, *king of Sparta.*
Sparta, -ae, *a town in Greece.*
vigil, vigīlis, *a watchman or sentinel.*
se confēro, to betake oneself.

NOTE. *Confero* has a more emphatic meaning than *fero*.

Perfero means to bear (right through) (see *per* in General Vocabulary).

VOCABULARY 118.

- dē* (prep. with abl.), *concerning.*
contendo,¹ 3, *to strive.*
autem (§ 372), however.
statura, -ae (f.), *stature, size.*
humilis, -e, *low.*
exiguus, -a, -um, *small.*
- ibi* (adv.), *there.*
Tissaphernes, a famous Persian.
Sardes, -ium, *the capital of Lydia*
= Asia Minor.
intērior, -ōris, *inner.*
- fuga, -ae,* *flight.*
conicio,¹ 3, *to throw.*
etsi . . . tamen, *although . . .*
nevertheless.
iratus, -a, -um (with dat.), *angry.*

dēformitas, -ātis (f.), *deformity.*
intūēor,¹ 2 (dep.), *to gaze upon.*
contemno,¹ 3, *to despise.*
nōvi, (1) *to know.*
admiror, 1 (dep.), *to admire.*
sātis, *enough.*
claudus, -a, -um, *lame.*
pēnetro, 1, *to penetrate.*
postēā (adv.), *afterwards.*
Cōrōnēa, -ae (f.), *a town in Greece.*
vēro (§ 372), however.
atrox, atrōcis, *severe.*
adversus (prep. or acc.), *against.*
rēligio, -ōnis (2) (f.), *conscientiousness.*
violāre, to violate.
vēto, -āre, vētūi, vētitum, 1, *to for-*
bid.

¹ For parts of these verbs see General Vocabulary.

4. Tachus, -i (m.), a king of Egypt. unguentum, -i (n.), perfume.
 fama, -ae (f.), report, fame. nihil (indecl.), nothing.
 mūnus, -ēris (n.), a present, a praeter (prep. or acc.), except.
 service. dēsīdēro, 1, to require.
 quisque (gen. cuiusque), every. cēterī, -tērae, -tērā, (S) (pl.), the other.
 5. rēvertor, 3 (dep.), to return. cērā, -ae (f.), wax.
 Mēnēlāus (m.), a town in lower circumfundo,¹ 3, to cover, to surround.
 Egypt. atque (conj.), and.
 mēl, mellis (n.), honey. itā (adv.), thus.

NOTES.—1. Nōvi (§ 247) is a perfect tense with a present meaning. Thus, *noveram* means *I knew*, not *I had known*.

2. Rēligiō has many meanings. In this passage it means that the fugitives had taken sanctuary, and Agesilaus preferred the obligation of respecting that sanctuary to his anger.

3. The singular cēter, -ēra, -ēum is not used at all in the masculine nominative singular. The other forms of the singular are used, but are rare.

VOCABULARY 119.

rēdēo, -īre, rēdīi, rēdītum, to return.
 transēo, -īre, transīi, transītum, to cross.
 exēo, -īre, exīi, exītum, to go out.
 pērēo, -īre, pērīi, pērītum, to perish.
 ādeo, -īre, adīi, ādītum, to approach, to visit.
 īneo, -īre, īnīi, īnītum, to enter.
 excēdo, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, to leave, to go out.
 vēto, -āre, vētīi, vētītum, to forbid.
 cresco, -ēre, crēvi, crētum, to increase.

nēmo (see note, p. 131), no one. currus, -ūs (m.), chariot.
 mercātor, -ōris (m.), trader. nīsi, unless, except.
 nuntio, 1, to announce. pērēgrē (adv.), abroad, away from
 Victōria, -ae (f.), Victory. home.
 morbus, -i (m.), disease. vestimentum, -i (n.), garment.
 princeps, -ipīs, first. rēliquus, -a, -um, the rest, the re-
 ultīmuš, -a, -um, last. mainder.
 fāmēs, -is (f.), hunger. vādum, -i (n.), ford.
 noctu, by night. omnino, at all, altogether.

¹ For parts of this verb see General Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY 120.

divido, -ĕre, divisi, divisum, 3, to divide.	
efficio, -ĕre, -feci, -fectum, 3, to effect, to work.	
rĕpo, -ĕre, repsi, reptum, 3, to creep, to crawl.	
frango, -ĕre, frēgi, fractum, 3, to break.	
constituo, -ĕre, -stitui, -stitutum, 3, to establish, to erect.	
cādo, -ĕre, cecidi, -cāsum, 3, to fall.	
ornātus, -a, -um, equipped.	transfuga, -ae, deserter.
quā (adv.), where.	callis, -is (m.), path.
inermis, -ĕ, unarmed.	sēcrētus, -a, -um, secret.
Lēonidas, -ae (m.), a Spartan king.	lātus, -ĕris (n.), side.
Xerxes, -is (m.), a Persian king.	a tergo, from behind.
Thermōpylae, -ārum (f. pl.), a pass in Greece.	lāpideus, -a, -um (adj.), stone.
trēcenti, -ae, -ā, three hundred.	mōnūmentum, -i (n.), monument.
expecto, 1, to await.	tūmulus, -i (m.), mound.
Spartāni, -orum, the Spartans.	tītulus, -i (m.), inscription.
dūnec, until.	viātor, -ōris (m.), traveller.
quidam, a certain (§ 336).	Sparta, -ae, Sparta, a town in Greece.

* * * From this point the student must look up the words which occur in the exercises in the General Vocabularies, pp. 327-364.

GENERAL VOCABULARIES.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH.

a, ab, <i>by</i> (R. 13).	admoneo, 2, <i>to warn</i> .
abdo, -ère, -didi, -ditum, 3, <i>to hide</i> .	adölescens, -ntis (m.), <i>a youth</i> .
abeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, <i>to go away</i> .	adsum, -fui, -esse (gov. dat.), <i>to be present, to help</i> .
abicio, -ère, -ieci, -iectum, 3, <i>to throw away</i> .	adventus, -üs (m.), <i>arrival</i> .
absens, -ntis, <i>absent</i> .	adversus, -a, -um, <i>bad, adverse, poor, ill</i> .
absolvo, -ère, -vi, -sölütum, <i>to discharge, to free</i> .	adversus (prep., gov. acc.), <i>against</i> .
abstülisse, <i>from aufëro</i> .	aedës, -is (f.), <i>temple</i> (§ 273); <i>in plural, house</i> .
abstülit, <i>from aufëro</i> .	aedifico, 1, <i>to build</i> .
absum, afui, -esse, <i>to be distant</i> (§ 165), <i>to be absent</i> (§ 163).	Aedüi, -örum (m. pl.), <i>a Gallic tribe</i> .
äbundans, -ntis (gov. abl.), <i>abounding in</i> .	aeger, -gra, -grum, <i>ill, sick</i> .
ac = <i>atque, and</i> (see § 364).	aegrë, <i>with difficulty</i> .
accidit, <i>it happened</i> .	aegröto, 1, <i>to be ill</i> .
accipio, -ère, -cëpi, -ceptum, 3, <i>to receive</i> .	Aegyptii (m. plur.), <i>Egyptians</i> .
accüratë, <i>carefully</i> .	Aegyptus, -i (f.), <i>Egypt</i> .
accüso, 1, <i>to accuse</i> (see cäpitis).	Aemilius, -i (m.), <i>a Roman name</i> .
äcer, -cris, -crë, <i>keen</i> .	aequë, <i>equally</i> .
äcies, -ei (f.), <i>line of battle</i> .	aequus, -a, -um, <i>equal, favourable</i> .
äcriter, <i>keenly</i> .	aequum (used as a noun) = <i>plain</i> .
äcus, -üs (f.), <i>needle</i> .	aerëus, -a, -um, <i>of copper</i> .
äcütus, -a, -um, <i>sharp</i> .	aes, aeris (n.), <i>copper</i> .
äd (gov. acc.), <i>at, to, towards</i> (§ 126).	aestas, -ätis (f.), <i>summer</i> .
addo, -ère, -didi, -ditum, 3, <i>to add</i> .	aetas, -ätis (f.), <i>age</i> .
addüco; 3, <i>to lead (to)</i> .	affectus, -üs (m.), <i>feeling</i> .
adeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, <i>to approach</i> .	affëro, -ferre, attüli, allätum, <i>to bring (to)</i> .
adeo (adv.), <i>to such an extent, so</i> .	afficio, -ère, -fëci, -fectum, 3, <i>to afflict</i> .
ädeptus, <i>see ädipiscor</i> .	affirmo, 1, <i>to assert</i> .
adiäceo, -ère, -ui, <i>to be near to, to lie near to</i> .	affulgeo, -ère, -fulsi, <i>to shine</i> .
adicio, -ère, -ieci, -iectum, 3, <i>to add</i> .	Africa, -ae (f.), <i>Africa</i> .
ädipiscor, -i, ädeptus, 3 (dep.), <i>to obtain</i> .	Agämemnon, -önis, <i>king of Mÿcënae</i> .
adit, <i>from ädeo</i> .	äger, -gri (m.), <i>field</i> .
adiungo, -ère, -nxi, -nctum, 3, <i>to join to</i> .	Agësilaus, -i, <i>a Greek general</i> .
admiror, 1 (dep.), <i>to admire</i> .	aggrëdior, -grëdi, -gressus, 3 (dep.), <i>to attack</i> .
	ägito, 1, <i>to move, to row about</i> .
	agmen, -inis (n.), <i>column, army (on the march)</i> .

agnus, -i (m.), *lamb*.
 āgo, -ēre, -ēgi, -actum, 3, to do, to manage, to drive, to spend (time).
 agricōla, -ae (m.), *farmer*.
 agricultūra, -ae (f.), *agriculture*.
 āit, says he (§ 512).
 āla, -ae (f.), *wing*.
 ālācer, -cris, -crē, *brisk*.
 Albāni, -ōrum (m. plur.), *Albanians*.
 albus, -a, -um, *white*.
 Alexander, -dri, *Alexander*.
 āliēnus, -a, -um, *belonging to another, out of place, unsuitable*.
 āliquando, *once (upon a time)*.
 āliquis, -quā, -quid (§ 322), *some (one), some (thing)*.
 āliquot (indecl.), *a few*.
 ālius (§ 99), *other*.
 ālii . . . ālii, *some . . . others*.
 allātus, from affero.
 ālo, -ēre, ālui, altum, 3, to nourish, to keep up.
 Alpēs, -ium (f. plur.), *the Alps*.
 alter (§ 99), *other, second*.
 altiōra, *higher parts (up river)*.
 altum, -i (n.), *the sea*.
 altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*.
 āmat, *he loves*.
 ambūlo, *I walk*.
 āmicūlum, -i (n.), *mantle, cloak*.
 āmicus, -i (m.), *friend*.
 āmitto, -ēre, -misi, -missum, to lose.
 amnis, -is (m.), *river*.
 āmo, 1, *I love*.
 āmor, -ōris (m.), *love*.
 amplius, *more*.
 ancilla, -ae (f.), *maid*.
 ancōra (f.), (often plur.) *anchor*.
 angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.
 ānima, -ae (f.), *soul*.
 ānimal, -ālis (n.), *animal*.
 ānimus, -i (m.), *mind, courage, spirits*.
 annus, -i (m.), *year*.
 anser, -eris (m.), *goose*.
 antē (prep. with acc.), *before*.
 ante (§ 440, adv.), *before*.
 antea (adv.), *before*.
 ante-eo, -īre, -īi, -itum, to excel.
 antēfēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, to prefer.
 antiquus, -a, -um, *ancient*.
 ānūlus, -i (m.), *ring*.

Ap. = Appius, a Roman name.
 āper, -pri (m.), *wild boar*.
 appello, 1, to call.
 apprōpinquo (gov. dat.), to approach.
 Aprilis, -e, April (§ 446).
 aptē, suitably.
 aptus, -a, -um, fit, suitable.
 apud (gov. acc.), among, in (with the name of an author).
 āqua, -ae (f.), *water*.
 āquila, -ae (f.), *eagle*.
 Arātus, -i (m.), a Greek poet.
 arbitror, 1 (dep.), to think.
 arbor, -ōris (f.), *tree*.
 arcus, -ūs (m.), *bow*.
 ardens, -ntis, *burning*.
 ardor, -ōris (m.), *ardour, eagerness*.
 ārena, -ae, sand; in plur., desert.
 argentum, -i (m.), *silver*.
 Argi, -ōrum (m. plur.), a town in Greece.
 Aristides, -is (m.), a noted Athenian.
 armā, -ōrum (n. plur.), *arms*.
 armātus, -a, -um, *armed*.
 armo, 1, to arm.
 āro, 1, to plough.
 ars, artis (f.), *art*.
 arx, arcis (f.), citadel (§ 29 (2)).
 āsinus, -i (m.), *ass*.
 asper, -ēra, -ērum, *rough*.
 Athēnae, -arum (f. plur.), Athens (§ 817).
 Athēniensis, -is, *Athenian*.
 atque (§ 364), and.
 atrociter, *fiercely*.
 ātrox, -ōcis, *severe*.
 Atticus, T. Pompōnius, a friend of Cicero's.
 A. U. C. (§ 456).
 auctōritas, -ātis (f.), *influence*.
 auctus, from augeo.
 audācia, -ae (f.), *boldness*.
 audax, -ācis, *bold*.
 audeo, -ēre, ausus (semi-dep., § 144), to dare.
 audio, 4, to hear.
 aufēro, -ferre, abstūli, ablātum, to take away.
 augeo, -ēre, auxi, auctum, 2, to increase.
 aurīga, -ae (m.), *charioteer*.
 auris, -is (f.), *ear*.

aurum, -i (n.), gold.

aut, or (§ 369).

aut . . . aut, either . . . or.

autem, on the other hand, however (§ 372).

auxilium, -ii (n.), help.

āvarē, greedily, from greed.

āvaritia, -ae (f.), avarice.

āverto, -ēre, -ti, -sum, 3, to turn aside.

āvidus, -a, -um, greedy.

avis, -is (f.), bird.

Bābŷlon, -ōnis, Babylon.

Bactriani, -ōrum (m.), the Bactrians.

Balventius, -i (m.), a name.

barbārus, -i (m.), barbarian.

Belgae, -ārum, the Belgians.

bellum, -i, war.

bēnē (adv.), well.

bēnēficiūm, -ii (n.), benefit.

bēnēvolus, -a, -um, benevolent.

biduum, -i (n.), two days.

binī, -ae, -ā, two (each), (§ 326).

bōarius, -a, -um (adj.), cattle.

bōnus, -a, -um, good.

bōnā, -ōrum (n. plur.), goods, property.

bōs, bōvis (c.) (§ 3, App. II, p. 801), ox.

brēvior, -ius, shorter.

brēvis, -e, short.

Britannia, -ae, Britain.

Britannus, -i (m.), Briton.

cādo, -ēre, cēcidi, cāsum, to fall.

caecus, -a, -um, blind.

caedes, -is (f.), slaughter.

caedo, -ēre, cēcidi, caesum, to kill.

caelum, -i (n.), sky.

Caesāriānus, -a, -um, Caesarian, of Caesar.

cālāmitas, -ātis (f.), calamity.

calcar, -āris (n.), spur.

calcēus, -i (m.), boot.

calcūlus, -i (m.), a little stone, pebble.

Callicrātes, -is (m.), a Greek.

callis, -is (m.), path.

calvus, -a, -um, bald.

Campāni, -ōrum (m.), the Campanians.

campus, -i (m.), field.

candidus, -a, -um, white.

cānis, -is (c.), dog.

Cannae, -ārum (f. plur.), a village in Italy, where Hannibal defeated the Romans, B.C. 216.

cāno, -ēre, cēcini, cantum, 3, to sing.

cantus, -ūs (m.), song.

cāpresso, -ēre, -ivi, -itum, 3, to seize.

cāpio, -ēre, cēpi, captum, 3, to take, capture, to feel (grief, etc.).

cāpitis accusātus, accused on a capital charge.

captivus, -i (m.), captive, prisoner.

cāput, -itis (n.), head.

carcer, -ēris (m.), prison.

cāreo, 2, to lack (gov. abl.).

carmen, -inis (n.), song, poem

cāro, carnis (f.), flesh.

carrus, -i (m.), cart.

Carthāgīniensis, -is (m.), Carthaginian.

Carthāgo, -inis (f.), Carthage, a town in Africa.

cārus, -a, -um, dear.

cāsa, -ae (f.), cottage.

cāsēus, -i (m.), cheese.

castra, -ōrum (n. plur.), camp.

casus, -ūs, case, condition, chance.

catēna, -ae (f.), chain.

Cāto, -ōnis (m.), a Roman name.

causa, -ae (f.), cause.

causā, for the sake of.

cautus, -a, -um, cautious.

cēcēdisse, from cādo.

cēler, -ēris, -ērē, swift, speedy.

cēlērītas, -ātis (f.), speed.

cēlērīme, very swiftly.

cēlo, 1, to keep secret, to hide.

censeo, -ēre, -ui, -sum, 2, to think.

centēni, -ae, -ā, a hundred (each) (§ 326).

cēra, -ae (f.), wax.

certē, certainly.

certior facio, to inform (§ 183).

certus, -a, -um, certain, sure.

cervix, -icis (f.), (generally pl.) neck.

cervus, -i (m.), stag.

cēteri, -ērae, -ērā, other, the rest (see note, Voc. 118).

Chabrias, -ae, a Greek.

Chersōnēsus, -i (f.), a peninsula in Greece.

cibāriā, -ōrum (n. plur.), *provisions, victuals.*

cibus, -i (m.), *food.*

Cicēro, -ōnis (m.), *a Roman orator and writer.*

Cilīcia, -ae (f.), *a province in Asia Minor.*

Cimon, -ōnis (m.), *a Greek.*

circa (gov. acc.), *around.*

circiter (adv.), *about (of time).*

circum (prep., gov. acc.), *around.*

circumdo, -dāre, -dēdi, -dātum, *to surround (§ 213).*

circumdūco, 3, *to lead round, to build.*

circumfundo, -ēre, -fūdi, -fūsum, *to cover.*

cis (gov. acc.), *on this side.*

citērior, -ius (adj.), *hither.*

civilis, -e, *civil.*

civis, -is (c.), *citizen.*

civitas, -ātis (f.), *state.*

clādes, -is (f.), *destruction, defeat.*

clam (adv.), *secretly.*

clāmo, 1, *to proclaim.*

clāmor, -ōris (m.), *shout.*

clārus, -a, -um, *distinguished.*

classiārī, -ōrum (m. plur.), *naval forces.*

classis, -is (f.), *fleet.*

Claudia, *a girl's name.*

Claudius, -ii (m.), *a Roman name.*

claudio, -ēre, -si, -sum, 3, *to close, to bring up.*

claudus, -a, -um, *lame.*

cliens, -entis (m.), *dependant.*

clipeus, -i (m.), *shield.*

Clōdius = *Claudius.*

Cn. = *Cneius, a Roman name.*

coctus, -a, -um, *cooked.*

coepi (§ 245).

coeptus (see coepi, §§ 243-6).

cōerceo, 2, *to restrain.*

cognōmen, -inis (n.), *surname.*

cognosco, -ēre, -nōvi, -nitum, *to ascertain, to learn, to perceive (§ 247).*

cognōvi, *to know.*

cōgo, -ēre, cōēgi, cōactum, 3, *to collect, to bring together.*

cohors, -rtis (f.), *cohort = the 10th part of a legion.*

collēga, -ae (m.), *colleague.*

colligo, -ēre, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, *to collect.*

collis, -is (m.), *hill.*

collōquor, -i, -lōcūtus, 3 (dep.), *to talk (with).*

cōlo, -ēre, -ui, cultum, *to cultivate, to worship.*

cōlōnus, -i (m.), *colonist.*

cōlor, -ōris (m.), *colour.*

cōlumba, -ae (f.), *dove.*

cōmēs, -itis (c.), *companion.*

commēātus, -ūs (m.), *supplies, provisions.*

committo, -ēre, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *to commit.*

committo proelium, *to fight a battle.*

se commōveo, *to move (intrans.).*

compāro, 1, *to prepare.*

compello, -ēre, -puli, -pulsum, 3, *to drive, to collect.*

complēo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *to fill.*

complēt, *he fills.*

complūres, -ium, many (very).

concido, -ēre, -cidi, 3, *to fall.*

conclāmo, 1, *to cry out.*

concurro, -ēre, concurre, -cursum, 3, *to run.*

condo, -ēre, -dīdi, -dītum, *to found, to establish.*

condūco, 3, *to assemble.*

confēro, -ferre, -tūli, collātum, *to carry.*

se confēro, *to betake oneself.*

confestum, *immediately.*

conficio, -ēre, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *to finish, to complete.*

confido, -ēre, -fīsus, 3 (semi-dep.), *to trust, to rely on.*

confisus, *from confido.*

confitēor, -ēri, -fessus, 2 (dep.), *to confess.*

confligo, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *to fight, to be in conflict.*

congrēdior, -i, -gressus, 3 (dep.), *to fight.*

conicio, -ēre, -iēci, -iectum, 3, *to hurl, to throw.*

coniux, -iſis (m. and f.), *wife, husband.*

VOCABULARY.

Cōnon, -ōnis, an *Athenian general*.
cōnor, 1 (dep.), to attempt.
consēdo, -ēre, -ndi, -nsum, to mount (a horse).
conscribo, -ēre, -psi, -ptum, to enrol.
consector, 1 (dep.), to pursue.
consēquor, -i, -sēcūtus, to pursue.
conservo, 1, to preserve.
consido, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, 3, to sit down.
consilium, -i (m.), plan, counsel, judgment, advice.
consimilis, -e, very like.
consisto, -ēre, -stiti, -stitum, 3, to stand, to halt, to consist.
conspēctus, -ūs (m.), sight, view.
constantia, -ae (f.), constancy.
constituo, -ēre, -tūi, -tūtum, 3, to appoint, to establish, to decide, to draw up.
consto, -āre, -stiti, -stātum, 1, to consist of.
consuetudo, -inis (f.), custom.
consul, -ūlis (m.), consul.
consūlo, -ēre, -ui, -sultum, 3, to consult (see § 286).
consultus, more wisely.
consūmo, -ēre, -impsi, -imptum, to spend, to consume, to take.
contemno, -ēre, -tempsi, -temptum, 3, to despise.
contendo, -ēre, -di, -tūm, to hasten, to strive.
contentio, -ōnis (f.), strife, discussion.
contentus, -a, -um, contented.
contignatio, -ōnis (f.), story (of a house).
contineo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, 2, to bound, to contain.
contingo, -tigi, -tactum, 3, to happen.
contrā (gov. acc.), against.
controversia, -ae, dispute.
convēnio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, 4, to come together, to assemble, to meet (intrans.).
convoco, 1, to call together.
cōrior, -iri, -ortus, to arise (§ 510).
cōpia, -ae (f.), a quantity.
copiae (f. pl.), forces.
cōram (gov. abl.), in the presence of.
Corcȳra, -ae (f.), a Grecian island.
Cornēlius, a Roman name.

cornū, -ūs (n.), horn, wing of an arm.
cōrona, -ae (f.), crown, garland.
corpus, -ōris (n.), body.
Cortōna, -ae (f.), a town in Italy.
corvus, -i (m.), raven.
cottidīē (adv.), daily.
crās (adv.), to-morrow.
Crassus, -i, a Roman name.
crēber, -bra, -brum, frequent, many.
crēdo, -ēre, -dīdi, -dītum, 3, to believe.
creo, 1, to create, to make.
creco, -ēre, -crēvi, -crētum, 3, to grow, to increase.
Crēta, -ae (f.), an island in the Mediterranean Sea.
Crētenses, -ium (m. pl.), the Cretans.
crūdēlis, -e, cruel.
crūdēlitas, -ātis (f.), cruelty.
crūdēliter, cruelly.
crūs, -crūris (n.), leg.
cui, from qui (rel.), or quis (inter.), or quis = any (§ 333).
cuique, from quisque.
cullēus, -i (m.), sack.
culpo, 1, to blame.
culter, -tri (m.), knife.
cum (gov. abl.), together-with, with (§ 358).
cum (R. 61), (conj.), when.
cunctus, -a, -um, the whole, all.
cūpiditas, -ātis (f.), desire.
cūpio, -ēre, -ivi, -itum, to desire.
cūr, why.
cūra, -ae (f.), care, trouble, solicitude.
cūria, -ae (f.), senate-house.
cūro, 1, to take care of (with acc.).
currit, he runs.
curro, -ēre, -cūcurri, -cursum, 3, to run.
currunt, they run.
currus, -ūs (m.), chariot.
cursus, -ūs (m.), course, running.
custodia, -ae (f.), custody, keeping.
custodio, 4, to guard.
custos, -ōdis (m.), a guard.
Cyclādes, -um (f. pl.), islands near Greece.
Cyprus, -i, an island in the Mediterranean.
Cȳrus, -i, Cyrus, a Persian king.
Dārius, -i, a king of Persia.
dāt, he gives.

Dātis, -is, a Persian commander at Marathon.

dē (gov. abl.), down from, concerning.

dēa, -ae (f.), goddess.

dēbeo, 2, to owe, ought.

dēcēdo, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, to die, to go down.

dēcerno, -ēre, -crēvi, -crētum, to see, to make out.

dēcet (impers.), to become, to be becoming to (§ 251).

dēcimus, -a, -um, tenth.

dēclāro, 1, to make known.

dēditio, -ōnis (f.), surrender.

dēfendo, -ēre, -di, -nsum, 3, to defend.

dēfero, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, to carry (down).

dēformitas, -ātis (f.), deformity.

dēfunctus, -a, -um, dead.

dēicio, -ēre, -iēcī, -iectum, 3, to throw down.

dēindē, then, next.

dēlectāt, he delights.

dēlecto, 1, to delight.

dēlectus, -ūs (m.), recruiting.

dēleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, to destroy.

Delphī, -ōrum (m. pl.), a town in Greece.

dēmigro, 1, to move, to go.

dēmīto, -ēre, -misi, -missum, to send away.

dēmōstro, 1, to show.

Dēmōsthēnes, -is (m.), Demosthenes.

dēmum, at length.

dens, -ntis (m.), tooth.

densus, -a, -um, dense.

dēpono, -ēre, -pōsui, -positum, to place (down).

dēscendo, -ēre, -di, -sum, 3, to descend.

dēsīdēro, 1, to require, to want, to demand, to long for.

dēsilio, -īre, -ui, -sultum, 4, to leap down.

dēsisto, -ēre, -stīti, -stītum, 3, to stop, to cease.

dēsūm, -fūi, -esse, to be wanting.

dētrāho, -ēre, -traxi, -tractum, to pull down (§ 211), to take off.

dēus, -i (m.), God.

dēvōlo, 1, to fly down.

dēvolvō, -ēre, -volvi, -vōlūtum, to throw down.

dexter, -tra, -trum, right (opposed to left).

Diāna, -ae (f.), Diana.

dico, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, 3, to say, to speak.

dicere causam, to plead a cause.

dictātor, -ōris (m.), dictator.

dictu, from dico.

difficilis, -e, difficult.

digītus, -i (m.), finger.

dignitas, -ātis (f.), dignity.

dignus, -a, -um (gov. abl.), worthy.

diligens, -ntis, industrious.

diligenter, carefully.

diligentia, -ae (f.), diligence.

dimico, 1, to fight.

dimitto, -ēre, -misi, -missum, to send away.

Diōgēnes, -is (m.), a Greek philosopher.

Dion, -ōnis, a Greek writer.

diripio, -ēre, -ripui, -reptum, 3, to plunder.

discēdo, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, 3, to depart.

discerno, -ēre, -crēvi, -crētum, 3, to see, to discern.

disco, -ēre, -didici, —, to learn.

discrimen, -inis (n.), crisis.

dispertior, 4 (dep.), to divide.

dispertitus, -a, -um, divided, distributed.

displīceo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, 3, to displease.

dispōno, -ēre, -posui, -positum, 3, to post, to place.

disputo, 1, to discuss.

dissensio, -ōnis (f.), dissension.

dissimilis, -ē, unlike.

disto, -āre, —, —, 1, to be distant.

dīu, long, a long time.

dīum (or **divum**), sky.

sub dīo, in the open air.

dīutius (adv.), longer.

dives, -itis, rich.

divido, -ēre, -divisi, -divisum, to divide.

do, **dāre**, **dēdi**, **dātum**, to give, to pay.

dōceo, -ēre, -ui, -ctum, 2, to teach, to explain.

dōlor, -ōris (n.), pain, grief.

dōmīno, 1, to rule.

dōmīnus, -i (m.), lord, master, captain.

VOCABULARY.

dōmus, -ūs (f.), house (§ 4, p. 302, App. II.).
dōnēc, until.
dōnum, -i (n.), gift.
Druidēs, -um (m. plur.), Druids.
dūceni, -ae, -a, two hundred (at a time).
dūcenti, -orum, two hundred.
dūcit, he leads.
dūco, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, 3, to lead, to protract.
dulcior, -ius, sweeter.
dulcis, -e, sweet.
dum, while (§ 408).
duōdecim, -a, -um, twelfth.
duōdecim, -a, -um, twelfth.
dūcenti, -orum, two hundred.
dūplico, 1, to double.
dūrus, -a, -um, hard.
dux, dūcis (m.), leader.
duxit, he led.

ē, ex (gov. abl.), out of, of.
ēandem, from idem, eadem, idem.
effemīno, 1, to make effeminate.
efficio, -ēre, -feci, -fectum, 3, to effect, to bring to pass.
effugio, -ēre, -fūgi, -fūgitum, 3, to escape, to flee, to avoid.
effundo, -ēre, -fūdi, -fūsum, to pour, to throw (of a horse).
ēgo (§ 82).
ēgrēdior, -grēdi, -gressus, 3 (dep.), to march out, to disembark, to go out.
ēi (§ 82).
ēicio, -ēre, ēiēcī, ēiectum, to throw (out).
eius (§ 82, R. 28 (b)).
elātus, -a, -um, elated.
ēlēphantus, -i (m.), elephant.
ēligo, -ēre, -lēgi, -lectum, to choose.
ēlūdo, -ēre, -lūsi, -lūsum, to jeer at.
ēmitto, -ēre, -misi, -misum, to drive out.
ēmo, -ēre, ēmi, emptum, 3, to buy.
ēmōrior, -i, -mortuus, 3 (dep.), to die, to pass away.

ēnim, for (App. VI. (10)), (p. 310).
ēnitor, -i, -nixus, 3 (dep.), to try.
Ennius, -i, a Roman po.
ēnuntio, 1, to announce.
eō, there (§ 348).
eo (verb, § 176).
eōdem, to the same place.
ēpistōla, -ae (f.), letter.
ēquēs, -itis (m.), horse-soldier.
ēquester, -tris, -trē, equestrian.
ēquitātus, -ūs (m.), cavalry.
ēquus, -i (m.), horse.
ergā (gov. acc.), towards (of conduct).
ēripio, -ēre, -rūi, -reptum, 3, to snatch away.
se ēripio, to escape.
ērūdīo, 4, to train.
ērumpo, -ēre, ērūpi, ēruptum, 3, to burst out (of) (ex), to burst forth.
ēscendo, -ēre, -ndi, -nsum, 3, to climb up.
esse, to be (see sum).
essēdārius, -ii (m.), charioteer (British).
essēdum, -i (m.), chariot.
est, is.
et, and.
et . . . et, both . . . and.
ētiam, also, even.
ētiamsi, even, if (§ 417).
etsi, even if, although.
Eurōpa, -ae (f.), Europe.
ex (gov. abl.), out of.
excēdo, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, to go out, to withdraw, to depart from.
excellens, -ntis, excellent.
exclāmo, 1, to call out.
excūtio, -ēre, -cussi, -cussum, 3, to send forth.
exemplum, -i (n.), example.
exēo, -ire, -ii, -itum, to go out (of = ex).
exerceo, -ēre, -xi, -itum, 2, to exercise.
exercitus, -ūs (m.), army.
exiguus, -a, -um, small, very small.
existimo, 1, to think.
expecto, 1, to await.
expēdio, 4, to prepare, to get ready.
expello, -ēre, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, to drive out, to expel.

¹ Exercitus = the army drawn up for exercise (exerceo); agmen, the army on the march (ago); āciēs, the army in line of battle (from a root word meaning sharp, keen)

expērior, -īri, expertus, 4 (dep.), to find out.

explōrator, -ōris (m.), spy.

explōro, 1, to scout, to explore.

explico, 1, to extend, to spread out.

expugno, 1, to take by storm.

exsequor, -i, -secutus, 3 (dep.), to follow up.

extinguo, -ēre, -nxi, -nctum (in pass.), to be dead.

exsul, -ilis (m.), exile.

exterior, -ius, outer.

extrā (gov. acc.), outside.

extrāho, -ēre, -traxi, -tractum, to extract.

extrēmus, -a, -um, extreme, most serious, last, outermost.

extrūo, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, 3, to build, to rear.

fāber, -bri (m.), workman.

Fābius, -i, a Roman name.

facies, -ei (f.), face.

fācile (adv.), easily.

fācilior, -ius, easier.

fācilis, -ē, easy.

fācilis, more easily.

fācio, -ēre, feci, factum, 3, to make, to do, to esteem, to cause, to give.

fācit, he makes, he does.

factum, -i (n.), deed.

fācultas, -ātis (f.), opportunity.

fallo, -ēre, fēfelli, falsum, 3, to escape (the attention of).

falsus, -a, -um, false.

fāma, -ae (f.), reputation.

fāmēs, -ei (f.), hunger.

fāmilīa, -ae (f.), family.

fāmilīaris, -ē (adj.), family.

fāteor, -ēri, fassus, 2, to confess

fātigo, 1, to tire.

Februārius, -a, -um, February.

fēlicitas, -ātis (f.), good fortune.

fēliciter, happily, prosperously.

fēlix, -icis, happy, fortunate.

fēmina, -ae (f.), woman.

fēmur, -ōris (n.), thigh.

fēnestra, -ae (f.), window.

fērax, -ācis, fruitful.

fērē, nearly, almost.

fērio, 4, to strike.

fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, to carry (§ 174) to bear, to pass (a law).

fērōcius, more fiercely.

fērox, -ōcis, fierce.

ferrent, from fero.

ferreus, -a, -um (adj.), iron.

ferrum, -i (n.), iron, sword.

fertilior, -ius, more fertile.

fertilis, -ē, fertile.

ferunt (from fero) = they say.

fērus, -a, -um, wild, uncivilised.

fessus, -a, -um, weary.

festino, 1, to hasten.

fidelis, -e, faithful.

filia, -ae (f.), daughter.

filius, -ii (m.), son.

finēs, -ium (m. pl.), territories.

finio, 4, to finish.

finis, -is (m.), end (in pl., territories).

fio, fieri, factus (§ 179), to be done, to be made, to become.

firmus, -a, -um, strong.

flāgito, 1, to ask for.

flēo, -ēre, flēvi, flētum, 2, to weep.

flos, -ōris (m.), flower.

flūmen, -inis (n.), river.

flūvius, -ii (m.), river.

foedus, -a, -um (adj.), terrible, horrible.

foedus, -ēris (n.), treaty.

fōrē, from sum.

fore ut (§ 234).

fōris (adv.), out of doors.

fortē, by chance.

fortior, -ius, braver.

fortis, -ē, brave.

fortius (adv.), more bravely.

fortūna, -ae (f.), fortune.

fōrum, -i, Forum, market place.

fossa, -ae (f.), ditch.

frango, -ēre, frēgi, fractum, 4, to break.

frāter, -tris (m.), brother.

frētus, -a, -um, relying on (§ 293).

frigidus, -a, -um (adj.), cold.

frigus, -ōris (n.), cold.

frons, -ntis (f.), forehead.

fructus, -ūs (m.), fruit.

frūges, -um (f. plur.), produce.

frūmentum, -i (n.), corn.

fruor, 3 (dep.), to enjoy.

fūere = fūerunt.

fūga, -ae (f.), flight.

fūgio, -ēre, fūgi, fūgitum, 3, to flee.

fūgo, 1, to put to flight.

fuisse, from sum.

VOCABULARY.

fulmen, -inis (n.), *lightning*.
Fulvius Flaccus, a Roman consul.
fungor, -i, functus, 3 (dep.), to discharge (a duty).
futūrus, -a, -um, *future*.

gālĕa, -ae (f.), *helmet*.
Gallia, -ae (f.), *Gaul*.
gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallie*.
Gallus, -i (m.), a Gaul.
gaudium, -i (n.), *joy*.
gēner, -ēri (m.), son-in-law.
gēnu, -ūs (n.), *knee*.
gēnus, -ēris (n.), *kind, race, sort*.
Germāni, -ōrum, *Germans*.
Germāni, -ae (f.), *Germany*.
gĕro, -ĕre, gessi, gestum, 3, to wage, to carry on.
gestūrus, from gĕro, to carry on.
gestus, from gĕro, to manage.
glādius, -ii (m.), *sword*.
glōria, -ae (f.), *glory*.
glōrior, 1 (dep.), to boast.
glōriōsus, -a, -um, *boastful*.
grādus, -ūs (m.), a step.
Graecē, in Greek.
Graecia, -ae (f.), *Greece*.
Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek*.
grātia, for the purpose of.
grātulor, 1 (dep.), to congratulate.
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing*.
grāvior, -ius, worse, more serious.
grāvis, -e, heavy, severe, serious.
grex, grēgis (m.), *flock*.
Gythium, -i (n.), a port in Greece.

hābēbāt, he had.
hābeo, -2, to have, to hold.
hābēt, he has.
hābitātor, -ōris (c.), inmate, inhabitant.
hābitō, 1, to dwell.
Hannibal, -ālis, a Carthaginian general.
Hasdrūbal, -ālis (m.), a Carthaginian.
hasta, -ae (f.), *spear*.
haud (§ 849), not.
Hector, -ōris (m.), a Trojan hero.
Hellas, -ōris (m.), the Hellespont (now the Dardanelles).
Hēlotēs, -um (m. plur.), *Helots* (Voc. 106).

Helvētīi, -ōrum (m. plur.), *Helvetians*.
Helvētius, -i (m.), *Helvetian*.
hibernā, -ōrum (n. plur.), *winter quarters*.
hic (adv.), here, hereupon.
hiemo, 1, to winter.
hiems, -ēmis (f.), *winter*.
Hiĕro, -ōnis, king of Syracuse.
hinc, hence, from here.
Hispania, -ae (f.), *Spain*.
histōria, -ae (f.), *story*.
histōricus, -i (m.), *historian*.
hōc (n.), this.
hōdiē, to-day, now.
Hōmērus, -i (m.), *Homer*.
hōmo, -inis (m.), man, human being.
hōra, -ae (f.), *hour*.
Hortensius, -ii, a Roman name.
hortor, 1 (dep.), to exhort.
hortus, -i (m.), *garden*.
Hostilius Mancinus, a Roman consul.
hostis, -is (m.), enemy, foe.
hūc, here, hither.
hūmanus, -a, -um, *human*.
hūmērus, -i (m.), *shoulder*.
hūmilis, -e, low, small.

i, from eo (p. 186).
iācio, -ĕre, iēcī, iactum, 3, to throw.
iam, now, already.
iānuā, -ae (f.), *door*.
Iānuārius, -a, -um, *January*.
Iāson, -ōnis (m.), Jason, the hero of the Argonauts.
ibant, from eo, ibat, from eo.
Ibērus, -i (m.), a river in Spain (now the Ebro).
ibi (adv.), there.
ibimus, from eo.
ictus, struck, from ico (§ 508).
idem (§ 87).
idōnēus, -a, -um, fit, suitable.
Idūs, -ūum (f. plur.) (§ 449), *Ides*.
igitur, therefore.
ignāvia, -ae (f.), cowardice.
ignāvus, -a, -um, slothful.
ignis, -is (m.), *fire*.
ii = ei (from is, ea, id).
ille, -a, -ud, that (§ 86), pl., those.
imāgo, -inis (f.), *image*.
imber, -bris (m.), *shower*.
imitor, 1 (dep.), to imitate.

- impāvidus, -a, -um, *fearless*.
 impēdimenta (n. pl.), -ōrum, *baggage*.
 impēdimentum, -i (n.), (compare § 273), *impediment, hindrance*; pl., *baggage*.
 impēdō, 4, *to prevent*.
 impello, -ēre, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, *to impel*.
 impērator, -ōris (m.), *general*.
 impērīum, -i (n.), *rule, guidance, ruling power*.
 impēro, 1, *to rule, to give orders to* (§ 66).
 impētus, -ūs (m.), *attack*.
 impōno, -ēre, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3, *to lay upon, to impose, to place on* (§ 209).
 importo, 1, *to bring in, to import*.
 imprōbus, -a, -um, *wicked*.
 imprūdēns, -ntis, *imprudent*.
 impūdēns, -ntis, *shameless*.
 incēdo, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, 3, *to walk, to go*.
 incendium, -i (n.), *fire, conflagration*.
 incendo, -ēre, -cendi, -censum, *to set fire to, to burn*.
 incertus, -a, -um, *uncertain*.
 incido, -ēre, -cidi, -cāsum, *to happen*.
 incipio, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *to begin*.
 incōla, -ae (m.), *inhabitant*.
 incōlo, -ēre, -ui, -cultum, 3, *to dwell, to inhabit*.
 incōlūmis, -ē, *safe, uninjured*.
 incredibīlis, -ē, *incredible*.
 indē, thence, from there, from that place.
 Indī, -ōrum (m. plur.), *Indians*.
 indico, 1, *to point out*.
 industria, -ae (f.), *industry*.
 de industriā, *purposely*.
 inēo (from eo), *to enter upon*.
 inermis, -e, *unarmed*.
 infans, -ntis (c.), *infant*.
 infelix, -icis, *unhappy*.
 inferior, -ius, *lower*.
 inēro, -ferre, -tūli, illātum, *to bring into, to carry* (gov. dat.).
 infesto, 1, *to attack, to trouble*.
 infimus, -a, -um, *lowest*.
 infōdio, -ēre, -fōdi, -fossam, 3, *to bury*.
 infrā (gov. acc.), *beneath, under*.
 ingens, -ntis, *great, huge*.
 ingrēdior, -grēdi, -gressus, 3 (dep.), *to enter*.
 inimicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile*.
 initium, -i (n.), *beginning*.
 iniūria, -ae (f.), *injury*.
 iniustus, -a, -um, *unjust*.
 inōpia, -ae (f.), *lack, want*.
 inquit, *says he*.
 inscius, -a, -um, *unaware, not knowing, ignorant*.
 insidiae, -arum (f. pl.), *ambush*.
 insignis, -e, *great*.
 insolens, -ntis, *arrogant*.
 instructus, -a, -um, *drawn up*.
 instrūo, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *to draw up*.
 insūla, -ae (f.), *island*.
 insūo, -ēre, -sūi, -sūtum, 3, *to sew up*.
 intellectu, *from intelligo*.
 intelligō, -ēre, -lexi, -lectum, *to perceive*.
 intendo (iter), -ēre, -di, -tum, *to push on*.
 inter (gov. acc.), *among, between*.
 intēro, -ire, -ii, -itum, *to perish*.
 interest (§ 305), *to concern, to be of importance*.
 interficio, -ēre, -feci, -fectum, 3, *to kill*.
 interfuit, *from intersum*.
 intērim, *meanwhile*.
 intērior, -ōris, *inner, interior*.
 intērītūrus, *from intereo*.
 interrōgo, 1, *to ask*.
 intersum, -fui, -esse (gov. dat.), *to take part in, to be between*.
 intimus, -a, -um, *inmost*.
 intrā (gov. acc.), *within*.
 intro, 1, *to enter*.
 intueor, -eri, -tuitus, 2 (dep.), *to look upon*.
 intus (adv.), *in, within*.
 inussus, -ūs (only used in abl.).
 inussu suo, *without his permission*.
 invādo, -ēre, -si, -vāsum, 3, *to attack*.
 invēnio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *to discover, to find*.
 invisus, -a, -um, *invisible*.
 iocus, -i (m.), (see Vocab. 109. n. 322), *joke*.

Iphicrātes, -is, a Greek.

ipse (§ 88), self, himself, very.

ira, -ae (f.), anger.

irācundus, -a, -um, angry.

irātus, -a, -um, angry.

irent, from eo.

iri, from eo.

is, ea, id (§ 82).

Ister, -tri (m.), the Danube.

itā, so, thus.

Itaque, and so, therefore.

Itālia, -ae (f.), Italy.

iter, itineris (n.), march, way, journey.

iter facio, to march.

itērum, again, a second time.

iūbeo, -ere, iussi, iussum, 2, to order.

iūcundus, -a, -um, pleasant.

iūdex, -icis (m.), judge.

iūdicium, -i (n.), judgment.

iūdico, 1, to judge.

Iūgurtha, -ae (m.), an African king.

iumentum, -i (n.), beast of burden.

iungo, -ere, -ixi, -nctum, 3, to join.

ponte iungo, to bridge.

iūnior, -ius, younger.

Iūno, -ōnis (f.), Juno.

Iūpiter, Iōvis (m.), Jupiter.

iūs, iūris (m.), right, law.

ius dico, to pronounce judgment.

iussum, -i (n.), order.

iustus, -a, -um, just.

iūvenis, -is (m.) (§ 29), young man.

iuxtā (gov. acc.), next to, beside.

Kālendae, -arum (§ 449), the Kalends.

L. = Lucius.

Lābiēnus, -i, Caesar's lieutenant.

lābor, -ōris (m.), labour.

lābōro, 1, to be in difficulty, hard pressed.

Lācēdaemōniū, -ōrum (m. pl.), Spartans.

lacrima, -ae (f.), a tear.

lacrimo, 1, to shed tears, to bewail.

lācus, -is (m.), lake.

laedo, -ere, laesi, laesum, to hurt.

laetitia, -ae (f.), joy.

laetus, -a, -um, glad, abundant.

Lānūvium, -i (n.), a town in Italy.

lāpideus, -a, -um, made of stone.

lāpis, -idis (m.), stone.

largus, -a, -um, plentiful.

lātē, widely, far and wide.

lātītudo, -inis (f.), width, breadth.

latro, -ōnis (m.), robber.

lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad.

lātus, -ēris (n.), side.

laudat, he praises.

laudo, 1, to praise.

laus, laudis (f.), praise.

lēgātus, -i (m.), ambassador, lieutenant.

lēgio, -ōnis (f.), legion.

lēgo, -ere, lēgi, lectum, 3, to read, to seize, to collect.

Lentulus, a Roman name.

leo, -ōnis (m.), lion.

Lēōnidas, -ae (m.), king of Sparta.

Lesbōs, -i (f.), a Greek island.

lēvis, -e, light, a small matter, unimportant.

lex, lēgis (f.), law.

liber, -bri (m.), book.

liber, -era, -erum, free.

liberalitas, -ātis (f.), liberality.

liberaliter, liberally, freely.

liberi, -ōrum (m. pl.), children.

libero, 1, to liberate, to set free, to deliver.

libertas, -ātis (f.), liberty.

licet (v. impers.) (§ 251), to be allowed.

lignēus, -a, -um, wooden.

lignum, -i (n.), wood (for burning).

Ligūres, -um, a people of Northern Italy.

lingua, -ae (f.), tongue, language.

litterae, -arum (f. pl.), an epistle.

litus, -ōris (n.), shore.

Livius, -i (m.), Livy, a Roman historian.

lōcā, -ōrum (n. pl.), places, district.

lōcus, -i (m.), place.

longē, by far.

longinquus, -a, -um, far-distant.

longius (adv.), too far, too long.

¹ The pl. of lōcus is lōcā (n.), when it means places in geography; meaning places or passages in a book the pl. is lōci.

longus, -a, -um, *long*.
 loquor, -i, locūtus, 3 (dep.), *to speak*.
 luctus, -ūs (m.), *grief*.
 lūmen, -inis (n.), *light* (in pl., *sight*).
 lūna, -ae (f.), *moon*.
 lūpus, -i (m.), *wolf*.
 lux, lucis (f.), *light*.
 Lūcūrgus, -i (m.), *a Grecian law-giver*.
 Lysander, -dri, *a Spartan general*.

M. = *Marcus* (§ 270).
 mācer, -ra, -rum, *thin*.
 māgi, -ōrum (m. pl.), *magi, philosophers* (among the Persians).
 māgis (adv.), *more*.
 māgistrātus, -ūs (m.), *magistrate, magistracy*.
 magnitūdo, -inis (f.), *size*.
 magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*.
 maior, -ius, *greater*.
 Māius, -a, -um (§ 446), *May*.
 mālē (adv.), *badly*.
 mālō, mālle, mālui (§ 172), *to prefer*.
 mālum, -i (n.), *an evil*.
 mālus, -a, -um, *bad, unkind*.
 māneo, -ēre, -nē, -nsum, 2, *to remain*.
 mānus, -ūs (f.), *hand*.
 Mārāthōn, -ōnis (f.), *a village in Greece*.
 Marcellus, -i (m.), *a Roman name*.
 māre, -is (n.), *sea*.
 mārītīmus, -a, -um, *maritime*.
 Mārius, -i (m.), *a Roman general*.
 Mars, -rtis (m.), *Mars, the god of war*.

Martius, -a, -um (§ 446), *March*.
 māter, -tris (f.), *mother*.
 māter-fāmilias, *mother* (of a family).
 mātēria, -ae (f.), *timber*.
 matrīmōnium, -i (n.), *marriage*.
 maximē (adv.), *most, very greatly*.
 maximus, -a, -um, *very great*.
 mēdicus, -i (m.), *doctor*.
 mēdītor, 1 (dep.), *to meditate*.
 mēdius, -a, -um, *middle, midst*.
 mel, mellis (n.), *honey*.
 mēlior, -ius, *better*.
 mēmīni (§ 243), *to remember*.
 mēmōr, -ōris, *mindful*.
 mēmōria, -ae (f.), *memory*.
 mens, mentis (f.), *mind*.
 mensa, -ae (f.), *table*.
 mensis, -is (m.), *month*.

mentior, 4 (dep.), *to lie, to tell lies*.
 Mercūrius, -i (m.), *the god Mercury*.
 mēreor (v., § 508).
 messis, -is (f.), *harvest*.
 mētūo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, 3, *to fear*.
 mētus, -ūs (m.), *fear*.
 meus (§ 50), *my*.
 mīhi, *to me*.
 miles, -itis (m.), *soldier*.
 milia (§ 109).
 miliārium, -i (n.), *milestone*.
 militāris, -e, *military*.
 militia, -ae (f.), *military affairs*.
 militiae, *on military service*.
 Miltiādes, -is (m.), *a Greek general*.
 minae (f. pl.), *threats*.
 Minerva, -ae (f.), *a goddess*.
 mīnimē (adv.), *least*.
 minimus, -a, -um, *least, smallest*.
 minister, -tri (m.), *servant*.
 minor, -us, *smaller, less*.
 Minos, -ōis (m.), *a king of Crete*.
 Mnūcius, -i (m.), *a Roman name*.
 minus (adv.), *less*.
 minūtus, -a, -um, *small*.
 mīror, 1 (dep.), *to admire*.
 mirus, -a, -um, *wonderful*.
 miser, -ēre, -erum, *wretched*.
 misērabīliter, *wretchedly, pitifully*.
 misēreor, 2 (dep.), (gov. gen.) *to pity*.
 mitto, -ēre, mīsi, missum, *to send*.
 mittit, *he sends*.
 mittunt, *they send*.
 mōdus, -i (m.), *measure, size*.
 mōdus, -i (m.), *means*.
 non mōdo, *not only*.
 moeniā, -iūm (n. plur.), *walls* (of a city).
 mōlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*.
 mōnēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, 2, *to advise, to warn*.
 mons, montis (m.), *mountain, hill*.
 monstrāt, *he shows*.
 monstro, 1, *to show*.
 mōnūmentum, -i (n.), *monument*.
 mōra, -ae (f.), *delay*.
 morbus, -i (m.), *disease*.
 mōres, -um (m. plur.), *conduct*.
 mōrior, mōri, mortuus, 3 (dep.), *to die*.
 mors, mortis (f.), *death*.
 mortuus, -a, -um, *dead*.
 Mōsa, -ae (f.), *the Meuse*.

mōtus, -ūs (m.), movement.

mōtus terrae, earthquake.

mōveo, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 2, to move

mox (adv.), soon.

mūlier, -ēris (f.), woman.

multitudo, -inis (f.), number (great).

multo (§ 348), much (degree).

multo, 1, to punish (by fine or death).

multus, -a, -um (§ 42, R. 22), much, many.

ad multum dīei, till late.

mūnio, 4, to fortify.

mūnitio, -ōnis (f.), fortification.

mūnus, -ēris (n.), office, duty, gift.

mūrus, -i (m.), wall.

mūto, 1, to change.

Mycēnae, -ārum (f. plur.), a town in Greece.

nactus, from nanciscor.

nam, for.

nanciscor, -i, nactus, 3 (dep.), to obtain.

nando, from no, 1, to swim.

narre, 1, to relate, to tell.

nascor, -i, nātus, 3 (dep.), to be born.

nātū (§ 45 (-)), by birth.

nātūra, -ae (f.), nature.

nātus, having been born, aged.

nauta, -ae (m.), sailor.

nāvālis, -ē, on sea, naval.

nāvīgium, -ii (n.), vessel.

nāvigo, 1, to sail.

nāvis, -is (f.), ship.

Naxus, -i (f.), Naxos, a Greek island.

-nē (see § 75).

nē . . . quidem (§ 148), not . . . even.

nec = nequē (§ 367), and not.

necessārius, -a, -um, necessary

necessē (indecl.), necessary.

neque (§ 206), or not.

nēco, -āre, nēcāvi, nēcātum, 1, to kill.

nēmo, -inis, no one (see p. 181, n.).

nēpos, -ōtis (m.), grandson.

Neptūnus, -i, the god of the sea.

nēquāquam, by no means.

nēquē, and not.

nēquē . . . nēquē, neither . . . nor.

Nērēidēs, -um (f.), sea-nymphs.

Nervī, -ōrum, a Germanic tribe.

nescio, 4, not to know.

nescio an, I rather think (§ 203).

neuter (§ 99), neither.

nēvē, and not, nor (§ 10, p. 310).

niger, -gra, -grum, black.

nihil (indecl.), nothing.

nimis, too much.

nisi, unless, except, if not.

nix, nivis (f.), snow.

nōceo, 2, to injure (gov. dat.).

nocturnus, -a, -um (adj.), during the night.

Nōla, -ae (f.), a town in Italy.

nōlo, nōlle, nōlui, to be unwilling.

nōmen, -inis (n.), name.

nōmino, 1, to call, to name.

nōn, not, no.

Nōnae, -ārum (f. plur.) (§ 449), Nones.

nondum, not yet.

nonnē (see §§ 76, 197), whether . . . not.

nonnullus, -a, -um, some.

nōs, we, us.

noster, -tra, -trum, our.

nostri, -ōrum, our men.

nōtus, -a, -um, known.

November, -bris, November.

nōvi (§ 247), to know.

nōvissimum agmen, the rear.

nōvitas, -ātis (f.), novelty.

nōvus, -a, -um, new.

nox, noctis (f.), night.

nūbēs, -is (f.), cloud.

nullus (§ 99) (adj.), no.

num (see § 78), whether.

nūmērus, -i (m.), number.

nummus, -i (m.), coin.

nunc (adv.), now.

nunquam, never.

nuntio, 1, to announce.

nuntius, -ii (m.), messenger.

nūtrio, 4, to nourish.

nux, nūcis (f.), nut.

ob (gov. acc.), on account of.

obēdio, 4 (gov. dat.), to obey.

obitus, -ūs (m.), downfall.

oblitus, from obliviscor.

obliscor, -i, oblitus, 3 (dep.), (gov. gen.) to forget.

obsēs, -idis (c.), hostage.

obsto, -āre, -stāti, -stātum, 1, to oppose.

obviam (gov. dat.), towards.
 ire obviam, to go to meet.
 occāsus, -ūs (m.), setting.
 occido, -ēre, -cidi, -cisum, to kill, to slay.
 occisus, -a, -um, slain.
 occūpo, 1, to seize, to fill.
 octāvus, -a, -um, eight.
 octingenti, -ae, -ā, eight hundred.
 octōdecim, eighteen.
 octōgēsīmus, eightieth.
 octoginta, eighty.
 octōni, -ae, -a, eight (at a time).
 ōcūlus, -i (m.), eye.
 ōdi (§ 243), to hate.
 ōdor, -ōris (m.), smell.
 offensio, -fōnis (f.), offence.
 offero, -ferre, obtūli, oblātum, to offer.
 ōlim (adv.), formerly.
 ōlitorius, -a, -um, vegetable (adj.).
 ōmen, -inis (n.), omen.
 ōmitto, -ēre, -misi, -missum, to lose.
 omnino, altogether, at all.
 omnino nōn, not at all.
 omnis, -e, all.
 ōnēro, 1, to load.
 ōnus, -ēris (n.), burden.
 ōpera, -ae (f.), attention, agency.
 ōpinio, -ōnis (f.), opinion.
 ōpinor, 1 (dep.), to think.
 ōportet (impers.) (§ 281), to behave.
 oppidum, -i (n.), town.
 oppōno, -ēre, -pōsui, -pōsūtum, to oppose.
 oppressus, -a, -um, overcome.
 opprimo, -ēre, -pressi, -pressum, to overcome, overpower.
 oppugno, 1, to besiege.
 ops, ōpis (f.), (nom. sing. not used), help.
 optāmus, -a, -um, best.
 ōpūlens, -ntis, rich.
 ōpus, -ēris (n.), work.
 ōpus (indecl.), need (with abl.) (§ 294).
 ōra, -ae (f.), shore.
 ōrātio, -ōnis (f.), speech.
 ōrator, -ōris (m.), speaker, orator.
 ordo, -inis (m.), row, rank.
 ōrgētōrix, -igis (m.).
 ōrior, -iri, ortus (§ 510), to arise.

ornāmentum, -i (n.), adornment.
 ornāt, he adorns.
 ornātus, -a, -um, adorned, accoutred.
 orno, 1, to adorn.
 ōro, 1, to beg.
 ōs, ōris (n.), mouth.
 os, ossis (n.), bone.
 ostendo, -ēre, -di, -tentum, to show.
 ostium, -i (n.), mouth (river).
 Ōtācilius, -ii, a Roman name.
 ōvum, -i (n.), egg.

P. = Publius.
 pāciscor, -i, pactus, 3 (dep.), to stipulate.
 paenitet (impers.) (§ 251), it repents.
 pālaestra, -ae (f.), gymnasium.
 pallium, -i (n.), cloak.
 pānis, -is (m.), bread.
 pār, pāris, equal.
 pārāt, he prepares.
 parco, -ēre, pēperci, fut. part., par-surus (gov. dat.), to spare.
 pārens, -entis (c.), parent.
 pāreo, 2 (gov. dat.), to obey.
 pārō, 1, to prepare.
 parricida, -ae, parricide.
 pars, -rtis (f.), part, side.
 partior, 4 (dep.), to divide.
 pārūm (adv.), too little, not enough.
 parvus, -a, -um, small.
 passim, in all directions, hither and thither.
 passus, from pātior.
 passus, -ūs (m.), step, pace.
 pastor, -ōris (m.), shepherd.
 pāteo, -ēre, -ūi, 2, to lie, to extend.
 pāter, -tris (m.), father.
 pāterne = pāter-nē (§ 75).
 pātientia, -ae (f.), patience.
 pātior, pāti, passus, 3 (dep.), to suffer, to allow.
 patria, -ae (f.), fatherland.
 paucus, -a, -um, few.
 paulatim, by degrees.
 paulō (adv.), a little.
 Paulus, a Roman name.
 pauper, -ēris, poor.
 Pausānias, -ae (m.), the name of a Spartan leader.
 pāvor, -ōris (m.), fear.

similis, -e, like, similar.
simul atque, as soon as.
sīn, but if.
sinē (gov. abl.), without.
singūlaris, -ē, singular, wonderful.
singūli (§ 326).
sinister, -tra, -trum (adj.), left.
sīno, -ēre, *sīvi*, *sītum*, 3, to allow.
sītis, -is (f.), thirst.
sītus, -ūs (m.), situation, position.
sivē . . . *sivē*, whether . . . or (not in questions, § 371).
sōcer, -ēri (m.), father-in-law.
sociētās, -ātis (f.), alliance.
socius, -iī (m.), ally.
Sōcrātes, -is (m.), an Athenian philosopher.
sōl, *sōlis* (m.), sun.
sōlēō, -ēre, *sōlitus*, 2 (semi-dep.), to be accustomed.
Sōlōn, -ōnis (m.), an Athenian law-giver.
sōlum, -i (n.), soil.
sōlum (adv.), only.
nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.
sōlus (§ 99), alone.
solvo, -ēre, -vi, *solūtum*, 3, to loosen, to set sail.
somnus, -i (m.), sleep.
sōror, -ōris (f.), sister.
sors, *sortis* (f.), lot.
Sparta, -ae, *Sparta*, a Greek town.
Spartāni, -orum, the Spartans.
spātium, -i (n.), space.
spēciēs, -ēi (f.), sort, kind, appearance.
specto, 1, to look at.
spēcūla, -ae (f.), watch-tower.
spēcūlor, 1 (dep.), to spy, to examine, to scout.
spēs, -ei (f.), hope.
spīna, -ae (f.), thorn.
splendīdus, -a, -um, magnificent.
spōlia, -ōrum (n. pl.), spoils.
sponte sua, of one's own accord.
stātīm, immediately.
stātiō, -ōnis (f.), position, station, post, outpost.
stātūa, -ae (f.), statue.
stātūō, -ēre, -ui, -ūtum, 3, to decide.
stātūra, -ae (f.), stature.
stella, -ae (f.), star.

sto, *stāre*, *stēti*, *stātum*, to stand.
strātus, -a, -um, stream.
strēnū, vigorously.
strēpitus, -ūs (m.), clattering.
stūdeo, -ēre, -ui, —, 2, to be zealous for, to give one's attention (gov. dat.) to busy oneself with.
stultus, -a, -um, foolish.
sub (gov. abl. and acc.), (§ 359), under, towards (of time).
sūbēō, -īre, -iī, -itum (§ 176), to undergo.
sūbigo, -ēre, -ēgi, -actum, to subdue.
sūbito, suddenly.
sūbitus, -a, -um, sudden.
sublāta, see *tollo*, to take away.
subsīdium, -i (n.), support, help.
succēdo, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum (gov. dat.), to succeed.
succurro, -ēre, *succurri*, *succursum*, 3, to help.
sum, *esse*, *fui*, to be.
summus, -a, -um, greatest, highest.
sūmo, -ēre, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*, 3, to take (up).
sumptus, -ūs (m.), expense.
sūper (gov. acc. and abl.), over.
sūperāt, he overcomes.
sūpērior, -ius, upper, superior, greater.
sūpēro, 1, to overcome.
sūpersum, -fui, -esse (gov. dat.), to survive.
supplex, -icis, suppliant.
suprā (adv.), above, previously.
suprā (prep. gov. acc.), above.
suprēmus, -a, -um, last.
susceptus, from *suscipio*.
suscipio, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, to hold up, to take up, to support, to undertake.
sustīneo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, 2, to sustain.
suas, R. 28 and §§ 472-475.

T. = *Titus*, a name.
tācītē, silently, in silence.
taedet (v. impers.), it wearies (§ 251).
tālea, -ae (f.), bar.
tālentum, -i (n.), talent.
tālis, -e, of such a kind, such.
tam (adv.), so.

tāmen, nevertheless.
 Tāmesis, -is, the Thames.
 tandem, at length.
 tango, -ere, tēgi, tactum, 3, to touch.
 tantus, -a, -um, so great.
 tantum . . . quantum (§ 427).
 Tarentum, -i (n.), a town in Italy.
 Tarquinius, -i, a Roman king.
 taurus, -i (m.), bull.
 tēgo, -ere, -xi, -ctum, 3, to cover
 tēlum, -i (n.), weapon, dart.
 tēmēre, rashly.
 tempestas, -ātis (f.), tempest.
 templum, -i (n.), temple.
 tempus, -ōris (n.), time.
 tēnēbrae, -ārum (f. plur.), darkness.
 tēneo, -ere, -ui, -tentum, 2, to hold.
 tēner, -era, -erum, tender.
 tento, 1, to attempt, to try.
 tēnus (prep. gov. abl.), up to (§ 358 (6)).
 Tērentius, a Roman name.
 tergum, -i (n.), back.
 a tergo, from behind.
 terni, -ae, -ā, three at a time (§ 826).
 terra, -ae (f.), earth, land.
 terreo, 2, to terrify.
 terrēt, he terrifies.
 terrētur, he is terrified.
 terribilis, -ē, terrible.
 territus, from terreo.
 terror, -ōris (m.), terror.
 tertius, -a, -um, third.
 testis, -is (m.), witness.
 testor, 1 (dep.), to make a will.
 tēgi, from tango.
 Thēmistōcles, -is, a celebrated Greek.
 Thermōpylae, -ārum (f. plur.), a pass
 in Greece.
 Thrācia, -ae (f.), Thrace.
 Tibēris, -is (m.), Tiber.
 timeo, 2, to fear.
 timēt, he fears.
 timidus, -a, -um, timid.
 timor, -ōris (m.), fear.
 Timōtheus, -i (m.), an Athenian
 leader.
 titulus, -i (m.), inscription.
 Titus, -i, a Roman name.
 tōlērō, 1, to bear.
 tollo, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, to re-
 move.
 tōt (indecl.), so many (§ 338).

tōtīdem (indecl.), just as many.
 tōtus (§ 99), whole, all.
 trabs, trābis (f.), beam.
 tracto, 1, to treat.
 trādo, -ere, -didī, -ditum, 3, to give up.
 trāditor, -ōris (m.), traitor.
 trādītus, -a, -um, betrayed.
 trādūco, 3, to lead (across).
 trāgūla, -ae (f.), a javelin.
 trāho, -ere, traxi, tractum, to carry,
 to take.
 trāicio, -ere, -iēcī, -sectum, 3, to pierce,
 to cross, to throw across.
 trans (gov. acc.), across.
 transfūga, -ae (m.), deserter.
 transigo, -ere, -egi, -actum, 3, to pass
 (time).
 transitu, from transeo.
 transitus, -ūs (m.), crossing.
 transporto, 1, to bring (over).
 Trāsīmēnus, -i, a lake in Italy.
 Trēbia, -ae (f.), a river in north Italy.
 trēcēai, -ae, -ā, three hundred (each).
 trēcēti, three hundred.
 trēs, tria, three.
 tribūo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, 3, to pay, to get.
 tricēsīmus, -a, -um, thirtieth.
 trigintā, thirty.
 trirēmis, -ē, trireme, having three
 banks of oars.
 tristis, -ē, sad.
 triumpho, 1, to have a triumphal
 procession.
 triumphus, -i (m.), triumph.
 Trōia, -ae (f.), Troy.
 Trōianus, -i, a Trojan.
 tu (§ 82).
 tueor, 2 (dep.), to watch, to guard.
 tum, then.
 tumultus, -ūs (m.), tumult, noise.
 tūmulus, -i (m.), mound.
 tunc, then.
 turbātus, -a, -um, thrown into con-
 fusion.
 turpis, -e, disgraceful.
 turris, -is (f.), tower.
 Tuscus, -i (m.), Tuscan.
 tūtō (adv.), in safety, safely.
 tūtus, -a, -um, safe.
 tūus (§ 50).
 tyrannus, -i (m.), (see Vocab. 115),
 tyrant.

ubi, *where, when.*

ubique, *everywhere.*

ulciscor, -i, ultus, 3 (dep.), *to avenge.*

ullus (§§ 99, 103), *any.*

ulterior, -ius, *further.*

ultimus, -a, -um, *last.*

ultrā (gov. acc.), *beyond.*

ūnā (adv.), *together.*

undē, *whence, from where.*

undecimus, -a, -um, *eleventh.*

unguentum, -i (n.), *perfume.*

unquam (adv.), *ever.*

ūnus (§ 99), *one.*

urbs, -is (f.), *city.*

urna, -ae (f.), *urn.*

usquam, *anywhere.*

usque ad, *up to.*

ūsus, -ūs (m.), *use.*

*ex usu esse, *to be beneficial, to be a good thing.*

ūt, *that, so that, in order that; (with indic.) as, when.*

ūter, utra, utrum (§ 99), *which (of two).*

ūterquē, utraqūē, utrumquē. *both, each (of two).*

ūtilior, -ius, *more useful.*

ūtilis, -ē, *useful.*

ūtinam, *would that.*

ūtor, -i, ūsus, 3 (gov. abl.), *to use.*

utrum . . . an, *whether . . . or.*

uxor, -ōris (f.), *wife.*

vādum, -i (n.), *ford.*

vāgīna, -ae (f.), *sheath.*

vāgor, 1 (dep.), *to wander.*

vālētūdo, -inis (f.), *health, ill health.*

vālidus, -a, -um, *strong.*

vallis, -is (f.), *valley.*

vallum, -i (n.), *rampart.*

vārius, -a, -um, *various.*

Varro, -ōnis, P. Tērentius, a celebrated scholar.

vasto, 1, *to lay waste.*

vaticinatio, -ōnis (f.), *prophesying.*

-ve (enclitic), *or.*

vectigal, -ālis (n.), *tax.*

vel (§ 370), *or.*

vel . . . vel, *either . . . or.*

velle, *see vōlo.*

vellent, *from vōlo.*

vēlut, *as if, like, as.*

vēnātor, -ōris (m.), *hunter.*

vendo, -ēre, -didi, -ditum, *to sell.*

vēnio, -īre, vēni, ventum, 4, *to come.*

vēnor, 1 (dep.), *to hunt.*

ventus, -i (m.), *wind.*

verbum, -i (n.), *word.*

verba facio, *to speak, plead.*

vēreor, 2, *to fear.*

vērītus, *from vēreor.*

vēro, *however.*

vescor, -i, —, *to live (on).*

vesper, -ēris and -ēri (m.), *evening.*

vester, -tra, -trum, *your.*

vestibulum, -i (n.), *the entrance-court.*

vestimentum, -i (n.), *garment.*

vestio, 4, *to clothe.*

vestis, -is (f.), *dress.*

vēto, -āre, vētūi, vētītum, 1, *to forbid.*

vētus, vētēris, *old.*

via, -ae (f.), *way.*

viātor, -ōris, *traveller.*

vicēsīmus, -a, -um, *twentieth.*

victor, -ōris (m.), *conqueror.*

victor, -ōris (adj.), *victorious.*

victōria, -ae (f.), *victory.*

victus, -ūs (m.), *food, victuals.*

victus, -a, -um, *conquered.*

vīcus, -i (m.), *village.*

vīdeo, -ēre, vīdi, vīsum, 2, *to see.*

vīdeor, -ēri, vīsus, *to be seen, to seem.*

vīdēt, *he sees.*

vīgil, -ilis (m.), *sentry.*

vīgīlia, -ae (f.), *watch.*

vīginti, *twenty.*

vīncio, -īre, vīnxi, vīnctum, 4, *to bind.*

vīnco, -ēre, vīci, vīctum, 3, *to conquer.*

vīnum, -i (n.), *wine.*

vīolēns, -ntis, *violent.*

vīolo, 1, *to violate.*

vīr, -i (m.), *man.*

Vīrgīnius, -i, *a Roman name.*

vīrgo, -inis (f.), *maiden, virgin.*

vīrtus, -ūtis (f.), *virtue, valour.*

vīs (f.), (§ 3, App. II.), *force, violence.*

vīsu, *from video.*

vīsūrus, *from video.*

vīsus, *from video.*

vīta, -ae (f.), *life.*

vītūm, -ii (n.), *vice.*

vīto, 1, *to avoid.*

vīvidus, *animated.*

vīvīt, *he lives.*

vīvo, -ēre, vīxi, vīctum, 3, *to live.*

vīvus, -a, -um, *living, alive.*

vix, *scarcely.*

vixerunt, *see vivo.*

vōco, 1, *to call.*

vōlo, velle, vōlui, *to wish.*

vōluptas, -tātis (f.), *pleasure.*

Volusēnus, *a Roman name.*

vox, vōcis (f.), *voice.*

vulnĕro, 1, *to wound.*

vulnus, -ĕris (n.), *wound.*

vulpēs, -is (f.), *fox.*

vult, vultis, *from vōlo.*

Xerxes, -is (m.), *a king of Persia.*

Zāma, -ae (f.), *a town in Africa.*

II. ENGLISH-LATIN.

able, to be, *possum* (§ 166).
 abound in, to, *abundo*, 1 (gov. abl.).
 about, to be (§ 203).
 about, *circiter* (of time).
 abroad (adv.), *fōris*.
 absence, in his = him absent (§ 193).
 absent, *absens*, -ntis.
 absent, to be, *absum*, -fui, -esse.
 account, on his own, *sua sponte*.
 account of, on, *propter* (gov. acc.).
 accuse, to, *accuso*, 1.
 across, *trans* (gov. acc.).
 Adherbal, -ālis (m.), a Numidian prince.
 admirable, *admīrābilis*, -e.
 admire, to, *mīror*, 1 (dep.).
 adorn, to, *orno*, 1.
 advance, to, *prōgrēdior*, -i, -gressus, 3 (dep.).
 adverse, *adversus*, -a, -um.
 adversity, *res adversae* (f. plur.).
 advise, to, *mōneo*, 2.
 Aedua, the, *Aeduī*, -ōrum.
 affair, *rēs, rei* (f.).
 affairs, military, *mīlitia*, -ae (f.).
 afraid, to be, *timeo*, 2 (no supine).
 Africa, *Āfrica*, -ae (f.).
 after (prep.), *post* (gov. acc.).
 after (conj.), *postquam*.
 against, *contrā* (gov. acc.), *adversus*, (gov. acc.).
 age, *aetas*, -ātis (f.).
 Agēsilaus, -i, a king of Sparta.
 ago (§ 442).
 aim, *consilium*, -i (n.).
 Alcibiades, *Alcibiādes*, -is.
 Alexander, *Alexander*, -dri.
 alive, *vivus*, -a, -um.
 all, *omnis*, -ē, *totus*, -a, -um.
 alliance, *societas*, -ātis (f.).
 allow, to, *pātor*, -i, *passus*, 3 (dep.), *laet* (§ 251).

ally, *socius*, -i (m.).
 Alps, *Alpēs*, -ium (f. plur.).
 already, *iam*.
 also, *etiam*.
 altar, *āra*, -ae (f.).
 although, *quamvis* (§ 419), *quamquam*.
 always, *semper*.
 am, I, *sum*.
 ambassador, *lēgātus*, -i.
 ambush, *insidiae*, -arum (f. plur.).
 among, *apud* (gov. acc.), *inter* (gov. acc.) (= being one of).
 anchor, *ancōra*, -ae (f., often plur.).
 ancient, *antiquus*, -a, -um.
 and, *et*, -que (R. 39).
 and so, *itāque*.
 anger, *ira*, -ae (f.).
 angry, *iracundus*, -a, -um.
 animal, *animal*, -ālis (n.).
 announce, to, *nuntio*, 1.
 another, *alius* (§ 99).
 any (§ 103).
 any one (at all), (see § 333).
 any (one), *quisquam*, *ullus* (only used after negatives, § 334).
 anything (after a negative) = *quidquam* (§ 334).
 anywhere in the world, *usquam terrarum*.
 Apelles, -is, a Greek painter.
 Apollo, -inis (m.), son of Jupiter.
 appearance, *species*, -ei (f.).
 appease, to, *plāco*, 1.
 apple, *pōmum*, -i (n.).
 appoint, to, *constitūo*, -ēre, -ui, -tūtum, 3.
 approach, to, *ad-eo*, -īre, -ii, -itum (§ 176).
 April (§ 446).
 are, they, *sunt*.
 arise, to, *orior*, -īri, *ortus*, 3 and 4 (dep., § 570).

Aristides, *Aristīdes*, -is.

arm (= limb), *brāchium*, -i (n.).

arms, *armā*, -ōrum (n. pl.),
(= weapons).

arm, to, *armo*, 1.

armed, *armātus*, -a, -um.

armed-men, *armāti*, -ōrum (m. pl.).

army, *exercitus*, -us (m.).

arrange, to, *instruo*, -ere, -xi, -ctum, 3.

arrival, *adventus*, -us (m.).

arrive, to, *pervenio*, -ire, -veni, -ventum, 4.

arrow, *sagitta*, -ae (f.).

art, *ars*, *artis* (f.).

artifice, *dolus*, -i (m.).

as, *sicut*.

as-far-as, *tēnus* (§ 358) (6).

as-many-as (see § 427).

as much . . . as, *tam . . . quam*.

ashamed, to be, *pudet* (§ 251).

Asia, *Asia*, -ae (f.).

ask, to, *rogo*, 1.

ass, *āsīnus*, -i (m.).

assemble, to (intrans.), *convēnio*, 4.

assist, *iūvo*, -āre, *iūvi*, *iūtum*, 1.

at, ad (gov. acc.). See also § 314.

Athens, *Āthēnae*, -arum (f. pl.).

attack, to, *oppugno*, ~~aggrēdi~~ *aggrēdi*, *aggressus*, 3 (dep.).

attack, *impētus*, -us (m.).

attention, *ōpera*, -ae (f.).

attribute, to, *tribuo*, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, 3.

August (§ 446).

avarice, *avaritia*, -ae (f.).

avenge, to, *ulciscor*, -i, *ultus*, 3 (dep.).

avoid, to, *vito*, 1.

back (with verbs) translated by re-
(see *reduco*).

bad, *mālus*, -a, -um.

badly, *mālē*.

baggage, *impēdimentā*, -ōrum (n. pl.).

baggage-animal, *iumentum*, -i (n.).

bank (of a river), *rīpa*, -ae (f.).

barbarian, *barbārus*, -a, -um.

base, *turpis*, -e.

battle, *proelium*, -i (n.).

beach, *litus*, -ōris (n.).

beam, *trabs*, -bis (f.).

bear, to, *fēro*, *ferre*, *tūli*, *lātum*;
tōlērō, 1.

beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.

beauty, *pulchritūdō*, -inis (f.).

because, *quod*, *quia*.

become, to, *fio*, *fiēri*, *factus* (§ 179).

before (of time), *antē* (gov. acc.), *prō*
(gov. abl.) (= in front of).

before (adv.), *antea* (§ 440).

beg, to, *oro*, 1.

begin, to (§§ 243-7), *coepi*.

begin battle, to, *proelium committere*.

beginning, *initium*, -i (n.).

behove, to, *oportet* (§ 251, (2)).

Belgians, *Belgae*, -arum (m.).

believe, to, *crēdo*, -ere, -didi, -ditum.

beneficial, *sālūtāris*, -e.

benefit, *beneficium*, -i (n.).

benevolent, *benevōlus*, -a, -um.

best, *optimus*, -a, -um.

betake oneself, to, *sē confēro*, -ferre,
-tūli, *collātum*.

better, *mēlior*, -ius.

between, *inter* (gov. acc.).

beyond, *ultrā* (gov. acc.).

bind, to, *vincio*, -ire, -nxi, -nctum, 4.

bird, *avis*, -is (f.).

black, *niger*, -gra, -grum.

blame, *culpa*, -ae (f.).

blame, to, *culpo*, 1.

boar, wild, *aper*, -pri (m.).

body, *corpus*, -ōris (n.).

bold, *audax*, -ācis.

boldly, *audacter*.

boldness, *audācia*, -ae (f.).

bone, os, *ossis* (n.).

book, *liber*, -bri (m.).

booty, *praeda*, -ae (f.).

born, to be, *nascor*, -i, *nātus*, 3
(dep.).

both . . . and, *et . . . et*.

both (adj.), *ambo* (§ 109).

both (pron.), *ūterque*, *utrūque*, *utrumque*.

bow, *arcus*, -ūs (m.).

boy, *puer*, -eri (m.).

brave, *fortis*, -e.

bravely, *fortiter*.

bread, *pānis*, -is (m.).

break, to, *rumpo*, -ere, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, 3.

bridge, *pons*, -ntis (m.).

bridge, to, *ponte iungo*.

VOCABULARY.

bring, to, *fēro, ferre, -tūli, lātum*;
affēro, -ferre, attūli, allātum.

bring back, to, *rēdūco, 3.*

bring-back-word, to, *rēmuntio, 1.*

bring forward, to, *affēro, -ferre, attūli, allātum.*

bring to, to (= lead), *addūco, 3.*

Britain, *Britannia, -ae (f.).*

Briton, *Britannus, -i (m.).*

broad, *lātus, -a, -um.*

brother, *frāter, -tris (m.).*

Brutus, *Brūtus, -i (m.).*

build, to, *aedifico, 1* (= to make a bridge), *ponte iungo.*

bull, *taurus, -i (m.).*

burial, *sēpultūra, -ae (f.).*

burn, to (= to set fire to), *incendo, -ere, -di, -nsun, 3.*

burning (adj.), *ardens, -ntis.*

bury, to, *sēpelio, -īre, -īvi, sēpultum, 4.*

but, *sed, autem (§ 372).*

but that, *quin (§§ 395-8).*

buy, to, *ēmo, -ere, ēmi, emptum, 3.*

by, a, ab (R. 15), (in time), (R. 14).

Caesar, *Caesar, -āris.*

calamity, *cālāmitas, -ātis (f.).*

call, to, *vōco, 1; appello, 1.*

to call back, *rēvōco, 1.*

to call together, *convōco, 1.*

camp, *castra, -ōrum (n. pl.).*

can, *possum (§ 166).*

Cannae, *ārum, a village in Italy.*

captain, *dōminus nāvis.*

captive, *captivus, -i (m.).*

capture, to, *cāpio, -ere, cēpi, captum, 3.*

Cāpia, *-ae, a town in Italy.*

care, *cūra, -ae (f.).*

carefully, *diligenter.*

carry, to, *porto, 1; fero, ferre, tūli, lātum.*

carry into, to, *infero, -ferre, -tūli, illātum (gov. dat.).*

carry back, to, *rēfēro, -ferre,*

• *reittūli, rēlātum.*

carry on, to, *gēro, -ere, gessi, gestum.*

cart, *carrus, -i (m.).*

Carthage, *Carthāgo, -ūs (f.).*

Carthaginians, *Carthāginīenses, -ium (m. pl.).*

cast (on), to, *incio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum.*

Cato, *Cāto, -ōnis (m.).*

cause, *causa, -ae (f.).*

cautiously, *cautē.*

cavalry, *equites, -um (m. pl.); equitātus, -ūs (m.).*

centurion, *centūrio, -ōnis (m.).*

certain, *certus, -a, -um.*

certain, a, *quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam).*

certain (= some), *quidam.*

Chabrias, *Chābrias, -ae.*

chain, *cātēna, -ae (f.).*

chariot, *essēdum, -i (n.),* (used in Britain); *currus, -ūs (m.).*

check, to, *dēprēhendo, -ere, -di, -nsun, 3.*

chief, princeps, *-ipis (m.).*

children, *libēri, -orum (m.).*

choose, to, *ēligo, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum, 3.*

Cicero, *Cicēro, -ōnis.*

citadel, *arx, arcis (f.).*

citizen, *civis, -is (c.).*

city, *urbs, urbis (f.).*

Claudius, *Claudius, -i.*

cloak, *pallium, -i (n.).*

close-to, sub (with abl.).

close, to, *claudio, -ere, -si, -sum, 3.*

cloud, *nūbēs, -is (f.).*

coast, *ora, -ae (f.).*

cohort, *cohors, -tis (f.).*

cold (adj.), *frigidus, -a, -um.*

cold, *frigus, -ōnis (n.).*

collect, to, *colligo, -legi, -lectum.*

colour, *cōlor, -ōnis (m.).*

come, *vēnio, -ire, vēni, ventum, 4.*

to come together, *convēnio, 4.*

command, *iussum (n.).*

command, to be in, *praesum, -fui, -esse (gov. dat.).*

common, *commūnis, -e.*

commonwealth, *rēs publicā (f.).*

comparison, *cōmēs, -itis (m.).*

compare, to, *compāro, 1.*

complain, to, *quēror, -i, questus, 3* (depr.).

conceal, to, *cēlo, 1.*

concerning, *dē (gov. abl.).*

confess, to, *fāteor, -eri, fassus, 2.*

confirm, to, *confirmo*, 1.
 confusion, to throw into, *perturbo*, 1.
 conquer, to, *vinco*, -ēre, *vici*, *victum*, 3.
 conquer, *victus*, -a, -um.
 conqueror, victor, -ōris (m.).
 consider, to, *duco*, 3.
 constellation, *stāsus*, -ēris (n.).
 consul, consul, -ūlis (m.).
 consult, to, *consūlo*, -ēre, -ui, -ultum, 3 (§ 286).
 contain, *tēneo*, -ēre, -ui, *tentum*, 2.
 contend, to, *contendo*, -ēre, -ndi, -ntum.
 contented, *contentus*, -a, -um.
 Corinth, *Cōrinthus*, -i (f.), a city of Greece.
 corn, *frumentum*, -i (n.).
 corn, to get, *frumentor*, 1 (dep.).
 cottage, *cāsa*, -ae (f.).
 could (see can).
 council, *concilium*, -ii (n.).
 counsel, *consilium*, -i (n.).
 country, to the, *rūs* (§ 814).
 cover, to, *tēgo*, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, 3.
 cowardice, *ignāvia*, -ae (f.).
 cowardly, *ignāvus*, -a, -um.
 create, to, *creo*, 1.
 crime, *scēlus*, -ēris (n.).
 cross, to, *transeo*, -ire, -ii, -itum.
 crossing, *transitus*, -ūs (n.).
 crowd, *vulgus*, -i (n.).
 crown, *cōrona*, -ae (f.).
 cruel, *crūdēlis*, -ē.
 cruelty, *crūdēlitas*, -ātis (f.).
 cultivate, to, *cōlo*, -ēre, *cōlūi*, *cultum*, 3.
 Cyprus, *Cyprus*, -i (f.), an island.
 Cyrus, -i (m.), a king of Persia.
 daily (adj.), *cotīdīānus*, -a, -um.
 daily, *cotīdīē* (adv.).
 danger, *pēriculūm*, -i (n.).
 dare, to, *audeo*, -ēre, *ausus*, 2 (semi dep., § 144).
 Darius, *Dārius*, -ii (m.).
 darkness, *tēnēbrae* (f. plur.).
 dart, *velum*, -i (n.).
 daughter, *filia*, -ae (f.).
 dawn = first light.
 day, *dies*, -ei (m.).
 to-day, *hōdiē*.

dead, *mortuus*, -a, -um.
 dear, *cārus*, -a, -um.
 death, *mors*, -rtis (f.).
 December (§ 446).
 decide, to, *stātūlo*, -ēre, -ui, -ūtum, 3.
 deed, *factum*, -i (n.).
 deep, *altus*, -a, -um.
 defeat, *clādes*, -is (f.).
 defeat, to, *vinco*, -ēre, *vici*, *victum*, 3.
 defence, *mūnitio*, -ōnis (f.).
 defend, to, *dēfendo*, -ēre, -di, -nsum, 3.
 delay, to, *mōror*, 1 (dep.).
 deliberate, to, *dēlibēro*, 1.
 deliberately, *consultē*.
 delight, to, *dēlecto*, 1.
 deliver, to, *libēro*, 1.
 Delphi, -ōrum (m. plur.), a Greek town.
 demand, to, *postūlo*, 1.
 Demosthenes, *Dēmōsthēnēs*, -is
 dense, *densus*, -a, -um.
 deny, to, *nēgo*, 1.
 depart, to, *discēdo*, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum.
 depth, *altitudo*, -inis (f.).
 descend, to, *descendo*, -ēre, -ndi, -nsum, 3.
 describe, to, *scribo*, -ēre, *scripsi*, *scriptum*.
 desire, to, *opto*, 1.
 desire, to, *cūpio*, -ēre, *cūpivi*, *cūpitum*, 3.
 despise, to, *contemno*, -ēre, -mpsi, -mptam, 3.
 destroy, to, *dēleo*, -ēre, -ēxi, -ētum, 2.
 destruction, *perniciēs*, -ei (f.).
 destructive, *perniciōsus*, -a, -um.
 Diana, *Dīana*, -ae (f.).
 die, to, *mōrior*, *mōri*, *mortuus*, 3 (dep.).
 different, *dissimilis*, -e (§ 285).
 difficult, *difficilis*, -e.
 difficulty, *difficultas*, -ātis (f.).
 dig, to, *fōdio*, -ēre, *fōdi*, *fossus*, 3.
 diligent, *diligens*, -ntis.
 diligently, *diligenter*.
 dinner, *coena*, -ae (f.).
 Diōgenes, -is (m.), a Greek.
 Diōnysius, -i (m.), a tyrant of Syracuse.
 disaster, *clādes*, -is (f.).
 discharge, to, *fungor*, 3 (dep.) (R. 81).
 disease, *morbus*, -i (m.).

disgraceful, *turpis*, -e.
 disobey, to, *nōn pāreo*, 2.
 displease, to, *displiceo*, 2.
 distant, to be, *absum* (*ab*, from).
 districts, *lōca*, -ōrum (n. plur.).
 ditch, *fossa*, -ae (f.).
 divide, to, *divido*, -ēre, *divīsi*, *divīsum*, 3; *partior*, 4 (dep.) = to share.
 do, to, *fācio*, *facēre*, *fēci*, *factum*; for pass. verb see § 180; (= act) *āgo*, -ēre, *ēgi*, *actum*, 3; *gēro*.
 doctor, *mēdicus*, -i (m.).
 dog, *cānis*, -is (m.).
 domination, *dōminātiō*, -ōnis (f.).
 Dōmītiūs, -i (m.), a Roman name.
 door, *iānuā*, -ae (f.).
 doubt, to, *dūbitō*, 1.
 there is no doubt that, *nōn est dūbium quīn*.
 dove, *cōlumba*, -ae (f.).
 down from, *de* (with abl.).
 draw, to (a sword), *dēstringo*, -ēre, *-nxi*, -strictum, 3.
 draw up, to, *instruo*, -ēre, -uxi, -uctum, 3.
 drive out, to, *expello*, -ēre, *expūli*, *expulsum*, 3.
 dutiful, *pīus*, -a, -um.
 dwell, to, *hābitō*, 1.
 each, *quisquē*, *quaequē*, *quodquē* (§ 336).
 eagle, *āquīla*, -ae (f.).
 ear, *auris*, -is (f.).
 earth, *terra*, -ae (f.).
 easily, *fācīlē*.
 easy, *fācīlis*, -ē.
 effect, to, *efficio*, -ēre, *fēci*, -fectum, 3.
 Egypt, *Aegyptus*, -i (f.).
 eight, *octo*.
 eighteen, *dūōdēvīgintī*.
 eight hundred, *octīngentī*.
 eighth, *octāvus*, -a, -um.
 eighty-seven thousand (§§ 110-113).
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*, *vel . . . vel* (§§ 369-70).
 elder, *sēnior*, -ōris.
 elephant, *ēlēphantus*, -i (m.), *ēlēphāns*, -ntis (m.).
 eleventh, *undēcīmus*, -a, -um.
 eloquence, *ēloquentia*, -ae (f.).
 end, *finis*, -is (m.).

end, to, *finio*, 4.
 enemy, *hostis*, -is (m.).
 enjoy, to, *frāor*, -i, *fructus*, 3 (dep., gov. abl.).
 enough, *sātis* (adv.).
 enquire, to, *quaero*, -ēre, *quaeēvi*, *quaesitum*, 3.
 enrol, to, *conserībō*, -ēre, -psi, -ptum, 3.
 enter, to, *in-eo*, -īre, -īi, -itum; *in-grēdior*, -grēdi, -gressus, 3 (dep.).
 enter upon, to, *in-eo*, -īre, -īi, -itum.
 entrenchment, *vallum*, -i (n.).
 Epaminondas, *Epāmīnondas*, -ae (m.), a Greek general.
 equal, *aequus*, -a, -um.
 equally, *pārīter*.
 equanimity, with, *aequo ānīmo*.
 escape, to, *evādo*, -ēre, *evāsi*, *evāsum*, 3.
 escape the notice of, to, *fūgio*, -ēre, *fūgi*, *fūgitum*.
 Europe, *Eurōpa*, -ae (f.).
 even, *ētiam*.
 even . . . not, *nē . . . quīdem* (§ 148).
 evening, *vesper*, -ēris, and *ēri* (m.).
 ever (adv.), *unquam*.
 ever, for, use adj. *perpētūus*, -a, -um.
 everything = all things.
 evil (adj.), *mālus*, -a, -um.
 evil, *an*, *mālum*, -i (n.).
 example, *exemplum*, -i (n.).
 excellent, *ēgrēgius*, -a, -um.
 except, *prāter* (gov. acc.).
 exercise, to, *exerceo*, 2.
 exhort, to, *hortor*, 1 (dep.).
 explain, to, *ostendo*, -ēre, -di, -tentum, 3.
 face, *fācies*, -ei (f.).
 faithful, *fidēlis*, -e.
 false, *falsus*, -a, -um.
 famous, *clārus*, -a, -um.
 far-away (adj.), *longinquus*, -a, -um.
 farmer, *agrīcōla*, -ae (m.).
 father, *pāter*, -tris (m.).
 father-in-law, *sōcer*, -ēri (m.).
 fatherland, *patria*, -ae (f.).
 favour, *grātia*, -ae (f.).
 favourable, *prospērūs*, -a, -um.
 fear, *mētus*, -ūs (m.).

fear, to, *tīmeo*, 2; *mētuo*, 3; *vĕreor*, 2 (dep.).

he fears, *tīmet*.

February (§ 446).

feed, to, *vescor*, -i, —, 3 (dep.) (R. 81).

feel, to, *sentio*, -īre, -nsi, -nsum, 4; (= to bear) *fĕro*, *ferre*, *tŭli*, *lātum*.

fertile, *fertilis*, -e.

few, *pauci*, -ae, -ā (pl.).

field, *ager*, -grī (m.).

fierce, *acerus*, -a, -um.

fifteen (each), *quīnī dēnī*

fight, a, *pugna*, -ae (f.).

fight, to, *pugno*, 1.

he fights, *pugnāt*.

fighting, *proelium*, -i (n.).

fill, to, *compleo*, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, 2.

find out, to, *rĕpĕrio*, -īre, *repperi*,

rĕpertum, 4; *cognosco*, § 247.

finish, to, *finio*, 4; *conficio*, 3.

fire, *ignis*, -is (m.).

to set fire to, *incendo*, -ere, -ndi, -nsum, 3.

first, *primus*, -a, -um.

at first, *primo*.

first of all (adv.), *iam omnium*

primum (Ex. 160, A.).

fish, *piscis*, -is (m.).

fisherman, *piscātor*, -ōris (m.).

five hundred, *quingenti*, -ae, -ā.

flee, to, *fŭgio*, -ere, *fŭgi*, *fŭgītum*, 3.

fleet, *classis*, -is (f.).

flight, *fŭga*, -ae (f.).

flock, *pĕcus*, -ōris (n.).

flow forth, to, *prōflŭo*, -ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, 3.

flower, *flos*, -ōris (m.).

fodder, to seek for, *pābŭlor*, 1 (dep.).

foe, *hostes*, -ium (m. pl.).

follow, to, *sequor*, -i, *secūtus*, 3 (dep.).

folly, *stultitia*, -ae (f.).

food, *cibus*, -i (m.).

foolish, *stultus*, -a, -um.

foot, *pēs*, *pĕdis* (m.).

foot-soldier, *pĕdēs*, -itis (m.).

for (= on behalf of), *prō* (gov. abl.);

(= instead of) *prō* (with abl.);

(= to) *ad* (with acc.); (= purpose)

ad (with acc.); (= length of time)

§ 439; § 358 (4).

forage, to, *pābŭlor*, 1 (dep.).

forces, *cōpiæ*, -ārum (f. pl.) (§ 273).

ford, *vādum*, -i (n.).

forget, to, *obliviscor*, -i, -litus, 3 (dep.), (gov. gen.).

former, *pristinus*, -a, -um.

formerly, *antea*.

fortify, to, *mūnio*, 4.

fortune, *fortūna*, -ae (f.).

found, to, *constituo*, -ere, -ŭi, -ūtum, 3; *condo*, -ere, -didi, -dītum, 3.

four hundred, *quadringenti* (§ 109).

fox, *vulpēs*, -is (f.).

free, *libĕr*, -bĕra, -bĕrum.

free, to, *libĕro*, 1.

freely, *libĕrē*.

friend, *amicus*, -i (m.).

friendship, *amicitia*, -ae (f.).

frighten, to, *terreo*, 2.

from (= out of), *ex* (gov. abl.).

fruit, *fructus*, -ūs (m.).

further, *ulterior*, -ius.

future, in the, *in futūrum*

game, *lŭdus*, -i (m.).

garden, *hortus*, -i (m.).

garment, *vestis*, -is (f.).

garrison, *praesidium*, -i (n.).

gate, *porta*, -ae (f.).

Gaul, *Gallia*, -ae (f.).

Gaul, a, *Gallus*, -i (m.).

general, *impĕrātor*, -ōris (m.).

German, *Germanus*, -a, -um.

Germany, *Germania*, -ae (f.).

gift, *dōnum*, -i (n.).

girl, *puella*, -ae (f.).

give, to, *do*, *dāre*, *dēdi*, *dātum*

glad, *laetus*, -a, -um.

glory, *glōria*, -ae (f.).

go, to, *eo*, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum* (§ 176)

go away, to, *abeo*.

go out, to, *ex-eo*, -ire, -ŭi, -itum

going (§ 203).

god, *deus*, -i (m.).

goddess, *dĕa*, -ae (f.).

gold, *aurum*, -i (n.).

golden, *aurĕus*, -a, -um.

good, *bōnus*, -a, -um.

good-will, *vōluntas*, -ātis (f.).

goose, *anser*, -ĕris (m.).

grammar, *grammātica*, -ae (f.).

graze, to, *pascor*, -i, *pastus*, 3 (dep.).

- great, *magnus*, -a, -um, *clārus* = distinguished.
 so great, *tantus*, -a, -um,
 greater, *maior*, -us.
 greatness, *magnitudo*, -inis (f.).
 Greece, *Graecia*, -ae (f.).
 greedy, *āvarus*, -a, -um.
 Greek, *Graecus*, -i.
 grief, *dolor*, -oris (m.).
 ground, *solum*, -i (n.).
 guard, *praesidium*, -i (n.).
 guard, to, *custodio*, 4.
 guardian, *custos*, -odis (m.).
 Gytheum, -i, a port in Greece.
 had, he, *hābebāt*.
 Hāmilcar, -āris (m.), a Carthaginian.
 hand, *manus*, -us (f.).
 in the hands of, *pēnēs* (gov. acc.).
 hang over, to, *impendeo*, 2.
 Hannibal, -bālis (m.).
 happy, *fēlix*, -icis.
 harbour, *portus*, -ūs (m.).
 hard, *dūrus*, -a, -um.
 harm, *māleficium*, -i (n.).
 has, he, *hābēt*.
 hasten, to, *contendo*, -ēre, -di, -ntum,
 3; *festino*, 1; *prōpēro*, 1.
 hate, to, *odī* (§ 243).
 hatred, *odium*, -i (n.).
 have, to, = possess, *hābeo*, 2.
 to have to (§ 158).
 to have = to cause, *cūro*, 1 (§ 221).
 he (§ 82).
 head, *caput*, -itīs (n.).
 head of, to be at, *praesum*, -fui,
 -esse.
 heal, to, *sāno*, 1.
 health, *vāletudo*, -inis (f.).
 healthy, *sānus*, -a, -um.
 hear, to, *audio*, 4.
 heat, *calor*, -oris (m.).
 heavy, *grāvis*, -e.
 help, *auxilium*, -i (n.); *subsidium*, -i
 (n.) = support.
 Helvetians, *Helvētīi*, -ōrum (m. pl.).
 her (R. 28); herself (§ 83).
 Hercules, *Hercules*, -is (m.).
 here, *hūc*, *hūc* (after verbs of motion,
 § 348).
 hesitate, to, *cunctor*, 1 (dep.).
 hide, to, *abdo*, -ēre, -ādi, -ditum, 3.
 Hiero, *Hiero*, -ōnis, a ruler of Sicily.
 high, *altus*, -a, -um.
 hill, *collis*, -is (m.), *mons*, -ntis (m.).
 the Palatine hill, *mons Palā-
 tinus*.
 him (§ 82).
 himself (§§ 83, 472).
 hinder, to, *impedio*, 4.
 his (R. 28).
 hither, *hūc*, *citerior* (adj.).
 hold, to, *teneo*, -ēre, -ui, *tentum*, 2.
 home, *dōmus*, -ūs (f., App. II., § 4).
 at home, *dōmī*.
 home (after verbs of motion),
dōmum.
 Homer, *Hōmērus*, -i (m.).
 honour, *hōnor*, -oris (m.).
 honourable, *hōnestus*, -a, -um.
 honourably, *hōnestē*.
 hope, *spēs*, -ei (f.).
 hope, to, *spēro*, 1.
 horn, *cornu*, -ūs (n.).
 horse, *equus*, -i (m.).
 horseman, *ēques*, -itīs (m.).
 horse-soldier, *ēques*, -itīs (m.).
 hostage, *obses*, -idis (m.).
 hour, *hōra*, -ae (f.).
 house, *dōmus*, -ūs (f., App. II., § 4).
 how, *quōmōdō*.
 how long, *quamdiu*.
 how many (indecl.), *quōt*.
 however, *autem* (§ 372).
 hunger, *fāmes*, -is (f.).
 hunt, to, *vēnor*, 1 (dep.).
 hunter, *vēnātor*, -ōris (m.).
 hurl, to, *conicio*, -ēre, *conīeci*, *con-
 iectum*, 3.
 husbandman, *agrīcōla*, -ae (m.).
 I, *ēgo*.
 if, *sī* (§§ 411-15).
 ill, *aeger*, -gra, -grum.
 ill, an, *malum*, -i (n.).
 ill, to be, *aegrōto*, 1.
 image, *imāgo*, -inis (f.).
 imitate, to, *imitor*, 1 (dep.).
 immediately, *stātīm*.
 immense, *ingens*, -ntis.
 importance (§ 305).
 impose, to, *impōno*, -ēre, -pōsui, -post-
 tum, 3.
 imprudent, *imprūdēns*, -ntis.
 in, *in* (§ 359).

inclined to, *pronus* (adj.).
indeed, *quidem* (§ 372).
individual, *homo*, -*nis* (n.).
infantry, *pedites*, -*um* (m. plur.).
inform, to (see § 188).
inhabit, to, *incolo*, -*ere*, -*ui*, -*cultum*,
3.

inhabitant, *incola*, -*ae* (m.).
injure, to, *noceo*, 2 (gov. dat.).
injury, *iniuria*, -*ae* (f.).
inmost, *intimus*, -*a*, -*um*.
inner, *interior*, -*ius*.
intention, *constitutum*, -*ui* (n.).
into, *in* (with acc.).
invisible, *invisus*, -*a*, -*um*.
invite, to, *invito*, 1.
iron, *ferrum*, -*i* (n.).
is, *est*.
island, *insula*, -*ae* (f.).
Italy, *Italia*, -*ae* (f.).
itself, *se*.

January (§ 446).
jeer, to, *eludo*, -*ere*, -*lusi*, -*lūsum*.
join, to, *iungo*, -*ere*, -*navi*, -*nectum*, 3.
journey, *iter*, *itineris* (n.).
journey, to, *iter facio*.
joy, *gaudium*, -*i* (n.).
joyful, *laetus*, -*a*, -*um*.
judge, *iudex*, -*icis* (m.).
Jugurtha, *Jugurtha*, -*ae* (n.).
June (§ 446).
Jura mountains, *mons Jura* (sing.).
just, *iustus*, -*a*, -*um*.
just recently, *proximē*.

keen, *acer*, -*cris*, *crē*; (= inclined to)
pronus, -*a*, -*um*.
keenly, *acriter*; = painfully, *aegrē*.
keep, to = to hold, *contineo*, -*ere*, -*ui*,
-*entum*; *teneo*; *retineo*.
kill, to, *occido*, -*ere*, -*ecidi*, -*cisum*, 3.
killed, *occisus*, -*a*, -*um*.
kind, *beneignus*, -*a*, -*um*.
kind = sort, *genus*, -*eris* (n.).
kindness, *beneficium*, -*ui* (n.).
king, *rex*, *regis* (m.).
kingdom, *regnum*, -*i* (n.).
knee, *genu*, -*us* (n.).
knife, *cultus*, -*tri* (m.).
know, to, *scio*, 4.

know, to = to find out, *cognosco*, -*ere*,
-*novi*, -*nitum*, 3 (§ 247); a person,
nosco, -*ere*, *novi*, *notum*.
know, not to, *nescio* (§ 208).
I do not know whether, *nescio an*.
known, *notus*, -*a*, -*um*.

labour, *labor*, -*oris* (m.).
labour, to, *laboro*, 1.
Lacedaemonians, *Lacedaemonii*,
-*orum* (m. pl.).
lake, *lacus*, -*us* (n.).
lamb, *agnus*, -*i* (m.).
land, *terra*, -*ae* (f.); *ager*, -*grī* (m.).
large, *magnus*, -*a*, -*um*.
last, *ultimus* (§ 44).
late (adv.), *sēro*.
too late, *sērius*.
Latin, in, *Latinē*.
law, *lex*, *legis* (f.).
lay waste, to, *vasto*, 1.
lead, to, *duco*, 3.
leader, *dux*, *ducis* (m.).
leadership, under my = with me (as)
leader (§ 193).
leads, he, *ducit*.
leap down, to, *dēsilio*, -*ire*, -*ui*, -*sul*
tum, 4.
leap out, to, *dēsilio*, -*ere*, -*ui*, -*sultum*,
4.
learn, to, *disco*, -*ere*, *didici*, 3.
least, *minimus*, -*a*, -*um*.
leave, to, *relinquo*, -*liqui*, -*lictum*, 3.
left, *reliquus*, -*ā*, -*um*; *sinister* (opp.
to right).
legion, *legio*, -*onis* (f.).
length, at, *tandem*.
less (adj.), *minor*, -*us*.
lest, *nē* (with subjunc.).
letter (of alphabet), *littera*, -*ae* (f.);
(= epistle) *epistola*, -*ae* (f.), *litterae*,
-*arum* (f. pl.).
liberality, *liberalitas*, -*atis* (f.).
liberty, *libertas*, -*atis* (f.).
lie, to, *iaceo*, 2; *sum*; *mentior* (= to
tell lies), 4 (dep.).
lie between, to, *interiaceo*, 2.
lieutenant, *legatus*, -*i* (m.).
life, *vita*, -*ae* (f.).
light, *lux*, *lucis* (f.).
light (adj.), *lēvis*, -*e*.

- lightning, *fulmen*, -inis (n.).
 like, to, *amo*, 1.
 line (fighting), *ordo*, -inis (m.).
 line-of-battle, *acies*, -ei (f.).
 line-of-march, *agmen*, -inis (n.).
 linger, to, *mōror*, 1 (dep.).
 lion, *leo*, -onis (m.).
 little, *parvus*, -a, -um.
 a little (adv.), *paulo*.
 for very little (§ 300).
 live, to, *vivo*, -ere, *vixi*, *victum*, 3.
 Livy, *Livius*, -ii (m.).
 long, *longus*, -a, -um.
 long, all the night = during all the night (R. 14 (b)).
 long (adv.), *dū*.
 the longer, *diūtius*.
 no longer, *non diūtius*.
 long-for, to, *dēsīdēro*, 1.
 look-after, to, *cūro*, 1.
 lord, *dōminus*, -i (m.).
 lose, to, *amitto*, -ere, -misi, -missum, 3.
 loss (= defeat), *clādes*, -is (f.).
 love, to, *amo*, 1; *diligo*, -ere, *dilexi*, *dilectum*, 3.
 love, *amor*, -oris (m.).
 lower, *inferior*.
 lowest, *infimus*, -a, -um.
 luxuriously, *luxuriōse*.
 Lysippus, -i (m.), a sculptor of Sicily.
 Macedonians, *Mācēdōnēs*, -um (m. pl.).
 magistracy, *māgistrātus*, -ūs (m.).
 Maharbal, *Maharbal*, -ālis, one of Hannibal's officers.
 maiden, *virgo*, -inis (f.).
 make, to, *fācio*, -ere, *feci*, *factum*, 3.
 to make war on, *bellum infero* (with dat.).
 man, *vir*, -i (m.); *homo*, -inis (m.) (= human being).
 manage, to, *gēro*, -ere, *gessi*, *gestum*.
 many, *multus*, -a, -um.
 so many, *tot* (indecl.).
 Marathon (see p. 338).
 march, *iter*, *itineris* (n.).
 march out, to, *egredior*, -i, -gressus.
 March (§ 446).
 mark (see § 297).
 market-place, *forum*, -i (n.).
 master = owner, *dōminus*, -i (m.);
 magister, -tri (= teacher), (m.).
 May (§ 446).
 me, *me* (§ 82).
 measure, to, *mētior*, *mētiri*, *mensus*, 4 (dep.).
 memory, *mēmōria*, -ae (f.).
 merchant, *mercātor*, -ōris (m.).
 Mercury, *Mercūrius*, -i (m.).
 message, *nuntius*, -i (m.).
 messenger, *nuntius*, -i (m.).
 Meuse, *Mōsa*, -ae (f.), a river in Belgium.
 Midas, -ae (m.), king of Phrygia.
 mid-day, *mēridiēs*, -is (m.).
 middle (§ 303).
 midst, use the adj. *mēdius* (§ 303).
 mile, *mille passūs* (§ 109 (4)).
 milk, *lac*, *lactis* (n.).
 mind, *ānimus*, -i (m.), *mens*, -ntis (f.).
 mindiur, *memor*, -ōris.
 Minucius, -i (m.), a Roman name.
 misfortune, *nālum*, -i (n.).
 model, to, *figo*, -ere, -nxi, *factum*, 3.
 money, *pecūnia*, -ae (f.).
 month, *mensis*, -is (m.).
 moon, *lūna*, -ae (f.).
 more, *māgis*, plus (§ 42).
 more (= sign of comparative), (R. 19).
 most (= sign of superlative), (see R. 19).
 mostly, *plērumquē*.
 mother, *māter*, -tris (f.).
 mountain, *mons*, -ntis (m.).
 move, to, *mōveo*, -ere, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, 2.
 much, *multus*, -a, -um.
 how much, *quantum*.
 multitude, *multitudo*, -inis (f.).
 must (§ 149).
 my, *meus*, -a, -um.
 myself = *me self*.
 name, *nōmen*, -inis (n.).
 narrate, to, *narro*, 1.
 narrow, *angustus*, -a, -um.
 nation, *gens*, -ntis (f.).
 native-land, *patria*, -ae (f.).
 nature, *nātūra*, -ae (f.).
 navigate, to, *nāvigo*, 1.
 near (prep.), *prōpē* (gov. acc.).
 nearer (prep.), *prōpius* (gov. acc.).
 nearer (adj.), *propior*.
 nearest, *proximus*, -a, -um.
 nearly (see § 396).
 necessary, *nēcessē* (indecl.).

necessary, *necessarius*, -a, -um.
 need (= lack), *inōpīa*, -ae (f.).
 need, to be in, *opus esse* (gov. abl.), (§ 294).
 needle, *acus*, -ūs (f.).
 neighbouring, *finītimus*, -a, -um.
 neither . . . nor, *neque* . . . *neque*.
 Neptune, *Neptūnus*, -i.
 nest, *nidus*, -i (m.).
 net, *rētē*, -is (n.).
 never, *nunquam*.
 nevertheless, *tāmen*.
 new, *novus*, -a, -um.
 next, *proximus*, -a, -um.
 night, *nox*, *noctis* (f.).
 ninth, *nonus*, -a, -um.
 no (adj.), *nullus*, -a, -um.
 no one, *nemo* (p. 131, n.).
 no (= not), *nōn*.
 noble, *nobilis*, -e.
 noise, *clāmor*, -ōris (m.).
 none = no one = *nemo*.
 nor, *neque* (§ 367).
 not, *nōn*.
 not . . . even, *nē* . . . *quidem* (§ 351).
 not at all, *minimē*.
 nothing, *nihil* (indecl.).
 nourish, to, *nutrio*, 4.
 November (§ 446).
 now, *nunc*, *iam* (§ 347).
 number, *numerus*, -i (m.).
 number, *gēat*, *multitudo*, -inis (f.).
 Numidians, *Numīdæ*, -arum (m. pl.).
 nut, *nux*, *noctis* (f.).
 oak, *quercus*, -ūs (f.).
 obey, to, *parco*, 2 (gov. dat.).
 obtain, to, *compāro*, 1; *nanciscor*, 3 (dep.).
 October (§ 446).
 odour, *odor*, -ōris (m.).
 offer, to, *præbeo*, 2; *offero*, -ferre, *oblūi*, *oblātum*.
 often, *sæpe*.
 old, *vētus*, -eris, *antiquus* (= ancient).
 eighteen years old (§ 444).
 old-man, *sēnex*, *sēnis* (m.).
 older, *sēnior*.
 oldest (§ 44), *nātū maximus*.
 omen, *omen*, -inis (n.).
 on, *in* (gov. acc. and abl.), (§ 359), (also sign of dat., § 211).

once, *olim* (formerly).
 at once, *statim*.
 one (§ 99), one (of two), *alter* (§ 106).
 only (adv.), *solum*.
 not only . . . but also, *nōn solum*, . . . *sed etiam*.
 opinion, *opinio*, -ōnis (f.).
 opinion, in my = with me (as) judge (§ 193).
 opportunity, *fācultas*, -ātis (f.).
 or, *aut*, *vel*; (in questions), *an* (§ 205).
 or not, *nequē*, *annōn* (§ 206).
 orator, *orātor*, -ōris (m.).
 order, *iussum*, -i (m.).
 without the order, *inussu* (foll. by gen.).
 in-order-to (§ 65), *ut*.
 orders, to give, *impēro*, 1 (gov. dat. of person).
 order, to, *iubeo*, *impēro* (§ 66 and p. 243, n.).
 other, *alius*, *alter* (§ 106).
 others (§ 106).
 ought = owes.
 our, *noster*, -tra, -trum.
 ourselves = us selves.
 out of, *e*, *ex* (with abl.).
 outer, *exterior*.
 outermost, *extrēmus*.
 outside, *extrā* (acc.).
 over, *trans* (gov. acc.), *super* (§ 359).
 overcome, to, *supēro*, 1.
 overpower, to, *supēro*.
 owe, to, *dēbeo*, 2.
 own, *proprius*, -a, -um.
 pace, *passus*, -ūs (m.).
 pain, *dolor*, -ōris (m.).
 paint, to, *pingo*, -ere, *nacli*, *pictum* 3.
 pardon, to, *veniam do*.
 parent, *pārens*, -ntis (c.).
 part, *pars*, *partis* (f.).
 part in, to take, *intersum* (gov. dat.).
 partly, *partim*.
 pass, to, *agere* (time).
 patience, *pātientia*, -ae (f.).
 patiently, *pātienter*.
 peace, *pax*, *pācis* (f.).
 penalty, *pœna*, -ae (f.), (usually plur.).
 people, *pōpulus*, -i (m.).
 perceive, to, *intelligo*, -ere, *lectum*.

- Pericles, *Pēricles*, -is (m.).
 perish, to, *per-ēo*, -ēre, -īi, -ītum.
 permit, to, *sino*, -ēre, *sivi*, *situm*, 3.
 Persians, *Persae*, -arum (m.).
 persuade, to, *per-suādeo*, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum.
 pitch, to, *pōno*, -ēre, *pōsi*, *pōsitum*.
 pity, *misericordia*, -ae (f.).
 pity, to, *miseret* (§ 251); *misereor*, 2 (dep.), (gov. gen.).
 place, *locus*, -i (m.), (p. 337, n.).
 place, to, *pōno*, -ēre, *pōsi*, *pōsitum*, 3; *lōco*, 1.
 to place over, *impōno*, 3.
 plain, *campus*, -i (m.); *plānitūs*, -ei (f.).
 plan, *consilium*, -i (n.).
 plans, to make, *consulto*, 1.
 plead, to, *dico*, 3.
 pleasant, *iucundus*, -a, -um.
 please, to, *plāceo* (gov. dat.).
 pleasing, *grātūs*.
 pleasure, *vōluptās*, -ātis (f.).
 plenty, *cōpia*, -ae (f.).
 plough, to, *āro*, 1.
 plunder, to, *dūrpio*, -ēre, -ui, -reptum, 3.
 poet, *poēta*, -ae (m.).
 point out, to, *monstro*, 1.
 poison, *venenum*, -i (n.).
 poor, *pauper*, -ēris, *tēnuis* (health).
 possession of, to get, *pōtior*, 4 (dep.), (gov. abl.).
 power, *pōtestas*, -ātis (f.).
 powerful, *pōtens*, -ntis.
 praise, *laus*, *laudis* (f.).
 praise, to, *laudo*, 1.
 precept, *praeceptum*, -i (n.).
 prefer, to, *antefēro*, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum; *mālo*, *nālle*, *mālui* (§ 172).
 prepare, to, *pāro*.
 present, to, *dōno*, 1.
 present, to be, *adsum*, -fui, -esse.
 preserve, to, *servo*, 1.
 prevail, to, *vinco*, -ēre, *vīci*, *victum*, 3.
 prevent, to, *prōhibeo*, 2 (with acc. of person) (§ 393); *obsto* (dat. of person).
 previous, *prior*, -ōris.
 prey, *praeda*, -ae (f.).
 priest, *sacerdos*, -ōtis (m.).
 prisoner, *captivus*, -i (m.).
 private, *privātus*, -o, -um.
 promise, to, *pollicor* (dep.).
 prosperity, *res secundae* (f. pl.).
 prosperous, *proper*, -ēra, -ērum.
 province, *provincia*, -ae (f.).
 provisions, *conmeātus*, -ūs (m.), (used both sing. and plur.).
 prudence, *prudentia*, -ae (f.).
 prudent, *prudens*, -ntis.
 public, *pūbicus*, -a, -um.
 public-place, *publicum*, -i (n.).
 public-weal, *pūblica* (§ 5, App. II.).
 Punic, *Pūnicus*, -a, -um.
 punish, to, *pūnio*, 4.
 pupil, *discipulus*, -i (m.).
 purpose of, for the, *causā* (with gen.).
 put, to (= to place), *pōno*, -ēre, *pōsi*, *pōsitum*.
 quantity, *cōpia*, -ae (f.).
 queen, *rēgina*, -ae (f.).
 quickly, *cēlēriter*.
 raise, to, *tollo*, -ēre, *sustūli*, *sublātum*, 3.
 rampart, *munītio*, -ōnis (f.), *vallum*, -i (n.).
 ransom, *prētium*, -ii (n.).
 rapidity, *rāpīditas*, -ātis (f.).
 rapidly, *cēlēriter*.
 rashness, *tēmēritas*, -ātis (f.).
 rather, to have (§ 172).
 rather than, *magis quam*.
 ravage, to, *pōpūlor*, 1 (dep.), *vasto*, 1.
 reach, to, *pervēnio*, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (with ad).
 read, *lēgo*, -ēre, *lēgi*, *lectum*.
 ready, *parātus*, -a, -um.
 really, *sātis*.
 recall, to, *rēvōco*, 1.
 receive, *accipio*, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3; *excipio*, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum; = to take back, *recipio*, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum.
 recently, just, *proximē*.
 red, *rūber*, -bra, -brum.
 redeem, to, *rēdimo*, -ēre, -ēmi, -emptum, 3.
 refuse, to, *abnuō*, -ēre, -nuī, -nūtum, 3.
 region, *rēgio*, -ōnis (f.).
 reign, *regnum*, -i (n.).

reign, to, *regno*, 1.
 relate, to, *narro*, 1.
 reluctantly, *aeqrē*.
 relying, *frētus*, -a, -um (gov. abl.).
 remain, to, *māneo*, -ere, -nsi, -nsim, 2.
 remember, to, *mēmīni* (§ 243).
 renew, to, *renōvo*, 1.
 renounce, to, *renuntio*, 1.
 repent, to, *paenitet* (§ 251).
 reply, to, *respondeo*, -ere, -ndi, -nsim.
 report, to, *renuntio*, 1.
 reputation, *fāma*, -ae (f.).
 resignation, with, *aequo animo*.
 resist, to, *resisto*, -ere, -stīti, -stītum (gov. dat.).
 rest = quietness, *quies*, -ētis (f.).
 rest = remainder, *cēteri*, -ae, -ā; *rēliqui*, -ae, -ā.
 restore, to, *reddo*, -ere, -dīdi, -dītum.
 restrain, to, *coerceo*, 2.
 retire, to, *recedo*, 3.
 return, to, *redeo*, *reātre*, *redīi*, *reāturn* (§ 176); *revertor*, -i, -versus, 3 (dep.).
 reward, *praemium*, -ii (n.).
 Rhine, *Rhēnus*, -i (m.).
 Rhodes, *Rhōdos*, -i (f.).
 Rhône, *Rhōdānus*, -i (m.).
 rich, *dives*, -itis.
 richer, *divitior*, -ius.
 richest, *divitissimus*, -a, -um.
 ridge, *vīgum*, -i (n.).
 right, *dexter*, -tra, -trum (opp. to left); *rectus*, -a, -um.
 right = law, *iūs*, *iūris* (n.).
 ring, *anūlus*, -i (m.).
 river, *flūvius*, -i (m.).
 road, *via*, -ae (f.).
 robber, *latro*, -ōnis (m.).
 Roman, *Rōmānus*, -a, -um.
 Rome, *Rōma*, -ae (f.).
 Romulus, *Rōmulus*, -i (m.).
 rope, *fūnis*, -is (m.).
 rose, *rōsa*, -ae (f.).
 rough, *asper*, -ēra, -ērūm.
 round (prep.), *circā* (gov. acc.).
 route, *via*, -ae (f.).
 Rufus, *Rufus*, -i (a Roman name).
 ruin, *perniciēs*, -ei (f.).
 rule, *impērium*, -ii (n.).
 rule, to (trans.), *rēgo*, 3.
 run, to, *curro*, -ere, *cūcurri*, *cursum*.
 rush, *impētus*, -ūs (m.).

sacred, *sācer*, -era, -crum.
 sacrifice, *immōlo*, 1.
 sad, *tristis*, -ē.
 safe, *tūtus*, -a, -um.
 safety, *sālus*, -ūtis (f.).
 in safety, *tūtō*.
 sail, to, *nāvigo*, 1.
 sailor, *navita*, -ae (m.).
 sake of, for the, *causā*.
 Sallust, *Sallustius*, -i (m.), a Roman historian.
 same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *īdem* (§ 87).
 sandy-waste, *ārena*, -ae (f.), (use the pl. in Ex. 149, C.).
 savare, *f. rus*, -a, -um.
 say, to, *dīco*, -ere, -xi, -ctum, 3.
 says he, *īquit* (§ 239).
 scarcely, *vix*.
 Scipio, *Scīpio*, -ōnis (m.).
 scout, *explōrātor*, -ōris (m.).
 sea, *māre*, -is (n.).
 secretly, *sēcrēto*.
 see, to, *video*, -ere, *vidī*, *vīsum*, 2; (= to discern) *cernō*, -ere, *crebī*, *crētum*, 3.
 seek, to, *pēto*, -ere, -tīvi, -tītum, 3.
 seem, to (R. 79).
 seize, to, *rāpio*, -ere, *rāpui*, *raptum*, 3;
occūpo, 1; *invādo*, -ere, -vāsi, -vasum, 3.
 select, to, *dēligo*, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum, 3.
 self (§ 91).
 senate, *sēnātus*, -ūs (m.).
 send, to, *mitto*, -ere, *misi*, *missum*, 3.
 sense, *sēnsus*, -ūs (m.).
 sentinel, *vīgil*, -itis (m.).
 September (§ 446).
 servant, *mīnister*, -tri (m.).
 serve, to, *servio*, 4 (gov. dat.); *mēreor de*, 2 (dep.).
 serviceable, to be, *prosum* (gov. dat.), (§ 162).
 set, to, *praebeo*, 2.
 to set out, *prōficiscor*, -i, *prōfectus*, 3 (dep.).
 to set on fire, *incendo*, -ere, -ndi, -nsim, 3.
 set fire to, to, *incendo*, 3.
 to set free, *libēro*, 1.
 seven, *septem*.
 seventh, *septimū*, -a, -um.
 severely, *grāviter*.
 shade, *umbra*, -ae (f.).

shake, to, *quătio*, -ēre, —, *quassum*, 3.

sharp, *ācūtus*, -a, -um.

she, *ea* (§ 82).

shepherd, pastor, -ōris (m.).

shield, *scūtum*, -i (n.).

ship, *nāvis*, -is (f.).

ship of war, *nāvis longa* (f.).

shore, *litus*, -ōris (n.).

short, *brēvis*, -e.

shout, *clāmōr*, -ōris (m.).

shout, to, *clāmo*, 1.

show, to, *monstro*, 1; *ostendo*, -ēre, -di, -ntum, 3.

shower, *imber*, -bris (m.).

shut, to, *claudio*, -ēre, -si, -sum.

shut up, to, *inclūdo*, -ēre, -clūsi, -clūsum.

Sicily, *Sicīlia*, -ae (f.).

sick, *aeger*, -gra, -grum.

side, *pars*, *partis* (f.).

on this side-of, *cis* (gov. acc.).

on all sides, *undiquē*.

sight, *conspēctus*, -ūs (m.).

signal, *signum*, -i (n.).

silently, *silentiō*.

silver (noun), *argentum*, -i (n.).

silver (adj.), *argenteus*, -a, -um.

sin, *nēfas* (indecl.).

since, *quōniam*.

sister, *sōror*, -ōris (f.).

sit, to, *sēdeo*, -ēre, *sēdi*, *sessum*, 2.

sit (still), to, *sēdeo*, -ēre, *sēdi*, *sessum*, 2.

situated, *situs*, -a, -um.

skilled, *pēritus*, -a, -um (§ 308).

skin, *pellis*, -is (f.).

skin-bag, *ūtēr*, -tris (m.).

slain, *occisus*, -a, -um.

slaughter, *caedes*, -is (f.).

slave, *servus*, -i (m.).

slay, to, *occido*, -ēre, -di, -sum, 3.

sleep, to get to, *somnum capio*.

slot, *ignāvus*, -a, -um.

small, *parvus*, -a, -um.

smell, *ōdor*, -ōris (m.).

snow, *nix*, *nivis* (f.).

so, *tam* (= to such a degree); *itā* (= thus); *ādēo* (= to such an extent).

so great, *tantus*, -a, -um.

so many, *tōt* (indecl.).

so much, *tantum* (with gen.).

so . . . as (§ 395).

so that, *ut*.

Socrates, *Sōcrātes*, -is (m.).

soldier, *mīles*, -itis (m.).

soil, *sōlum*, -i (n.).

some (indef.), *aliquis* (§ 332).

some (indef. num.), *aliquot* (indecl.).

some (§ 106).

sometimes, *interdum*.

son, *filius*, -i (m.).

son-in-law, *gēner*, -ēri (m.).

song, *cantus*, -ūs (m.); *carmen*, -īnis (n.).

soon, *mox*.

sorrow, *dōlor*, -ōris (m.).

sort, *gēnus*, -ūs (n.).

Spain, *Hispania*, -ae (f.).

spare, to, *parco*, -ēre, *pēperci*, *parsum*.

Sparta, *Sparta*, -ae (f.).

speak, to, *loquor*, -i, *locutus*, 3 (dep.).

spear, *hasta*, -ae (f.).

speech, *ōrātiō*, -ōnis (f.).

speed, *cēlērītās*, -ātis (f.).

spirits, *ānimus*, -i (m.).

in good spirits, *ālacrīter*.

splendid, *splendīdus*, -a, -um.

spur, *calcar*, -āris (n.).

spy, *explōrātor*, -ōris (m.).

stag, *cervus*, -i (m.).

stand, to take up a, *consisto*, -ēre, -stīti, -stītum.

standard, *āquīla*, -ae (f.).

standard-bearer, *signīfer*, -ēri (m.).

star, *stella*, -ae (f.).

state, a, *civitas*, -ātis (f.).

state, the, *rēs publica*, gen., *rēi publicae* (f.).

statue, *stātua*, -ae (f.).

step, *grādus*, -ūs (m.).

stone, *lāpis*, -idīs (m.).

stork, *cicōnia*, -ae (f.).

storm, *tempestas*, -ātis (f.).

storm, to, *expugno*, 1.

story, *histōria*, -ae (f.).

stratagem, *consilium*, -i (n.).

strength, *vires*, -um (f. plur., § 3 App. II.).

strong, *vālīdus*, -a, -um; *fīrmus*, -a -um.

struggle, to, *contendo*, -ēre, -di, -tē-
tum.

subject, *subiectus*, -a, -um.

succeed, to (= to follow), *succēdo*, -ēre.
-cessi, -cessum (gov. dat.).

successors (= those who come after),
postēri, -ōrum (m. plur.).

such, *tālis*, -ē; (= so great), *tantus*.

such . . . as (§§ 838-9).

such (adv.), *tam* (= 86).

sudden, *sūbitus*, -a, -um.

suddenly, *sūbitō*.

suffer, to, *pātor*, *pāti*, *passus*, 3 (dep.).

sufficient, *sātis*.

suicide, to commit, *sibi mortem con-
scisco*, -ēre, -scīvi, -scītum.

suitable (for), *aptus*, -a, -um (ad).

summer, *aestas*, -ātis (f.).

sun, *sōl*, *sōlis* (m.).

sunrise, *lux*, *lūcis* (f.).

suppliant, *supplex*, -icis (adj.).

supplies, *commeātus*, -ūs (m.).

supreme, *suprēmus*, -a, -um.

surrender, to, *trādo*, -ēre, -dīdi, -dī-
tum, 3.

surround, to, *circumdō*, -āre, -dēdi,
-dātum (§ 213); *circumvēntō*, -īre,
-vēni, -ventum, 4.

survive, to, *sūpersum*, -fui, -esse.

sustain, to, *sustineo*, 2.

sweet, *dulcis*, -ē.

swift, *celer*, -ēris, -ēre.

swiftly, *cēlēriter*.

more swiftly, *cēlērius*.

swim, to, *no*, 1.

sword, *glādius*, -i (m.).

table, *mensa*, -ae (f.).

take, to, *cāpio*, -ēre, *cēpi*, *captum*,
3; (= capture) *cāpio*; (= snatch)

ērīpio, -ēre, *rīpi*, *reptum* (§ 211).

take away, to, *ērīpio*.

take down, to, *dērīpio*, -ēre,

rīpi, *dereptum* (§ 211).

take from, *ērīpio* (§ 211).

take up, to, *sūmo*, -ēre, *sumpsi*,

sumptum, 3.

take care of, *cūro*, 1.

tame, to, *tracto*, 1.

tarry, to, *mōror*, 1 (dep.).

tax, *vectigal*, -ālīs (n.).

Taurus, *Taurus*, -i (m.), a mountain
range.

teach, to, *dūceo*, -ēre, -ui, *doctum*, 2.

teacher, *praeceptor*, -ōris (m.).

tear, *lacrima*, -ae (f.).

tell, to, *dīco*, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, 3.

tempest, *tempestas*, -ātis (f.).

temple, *templum*, -i (n.).

ten, *dēcem*.

ten (each), *dēni* (§ 826).

tender, *tēner*, -ēra, -ērūm.

tenth, *dēcimus*, -a, -um.

terrible, *terrībilis*, -e.

terrified, he is, *terrētur*.

terrify, to, *terreo*, 2.

territories, *fīnes*, -iūm (m. pl.).

terror, *terror*, -ōris (m.).

than, *quam* (R. 17).

that, *is*, *ea*, *id*; *ille*, *illa*, *illud*; *iste*,
ista, *istud* (R. 63).

that (= that thing), *id* (n.).

that (= so that), *ut*.

thee, *tū*.

their, *suus* (§ 91).

them, *is*, *eos*.

Themistocles, *Themistōcles*, -is (m.).

themselves, *se* (§ 91).

then, *tum*, *tunc* (= at that time); (=

next) *dēindē*; (= therefore) *igitur*.

there, *ibi*.

Thermopylae, *ārum* (f. pl.), a moun-
tain-pass in Greece.

these, *hi* (§ 85).

they, *ei* (§ 82).

thin, *mācer*, -era, -erum.

thing, *rēs*, -ēi (f.), (often trans. by
neut. pl.) (§ 818).

think, to, *pūto*, 1; *arbitror*, 1 (dep.).

third, *tertius*, -a, -um.

thirteenth, *tertius dēcimus*.

this, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* (§ 85).

thorn, *spīna*, -ae (f.).

those, *ei*, *illi* (R. 63).

thou, *tū* (§ 82).

thousand (§ 109) (4).

threats, *minae*, -ārum (f.).

three, *trēs*, *triā*.

three camps (§ 830).

three-days (space of), *triidūm*,
(n.).

three hundred, *trēcēti*, -ae, -ā.

through, *per* (gov. acc.).

throw, to, *iācio*, -ēre, *iēcī*, *iactum*, 3.
conicio, -is, -iēcī, -iectum, 3.
 Thūcýdides, -is (m.), a Greek historian.
 thy, *tūus*, -a, -um.
 till, to, *cōlo*, -ēre, *cōlui*, *cultum*, 3.
 till = until, *dōnēc*.
 timber, *māteria*, -ae (f.).
 time, *tempus*, -ōris (n.).
 a long time, *dīn*.
 in a short time, *brēvī*.
 at that time, *tunc*.
 timid, *timidus*, -a, -um.
 to, *ad* (denoting motion towards).
 to-day, *hōdī*.
 together-with, *cum* (gov. abl.).
 to-morrow, *crās*.
 too (= sign of comp. degree). (R. 20).
 too long, *dīntius*.
 too much, *nīmīs*.
 tooth, *dens*, -ntis (m.).
 top, use *summus* (§ 803).
 torture, *cruciātus*, -ūs (m.).
 touch, to, *tango*, -ēre, *tēgi*, *tactum*, 3 (= with the hand).
 touch (feelings), to, *mōreo*, -ēre, *mōri*, *mōtum*, 2.
 towards (meaning purpose), *ad* (with acc.); (time) *sub* (with acc.); (of conduct) *ergā* (acc.).
 tower, *turris*, -is (f.).
 town, *oppidum*, -i (n.).
 trader, *mercātor*, -ōris (m.).
 train to, *ērūdio*, 4.
 traitor, *prōdītor*, -ōris (m.).
 trans (gov. acc.), *across*.
 treaty, *foedus*, -ēris (n.).
 Trēbōnius, -i (m.), one of Caesar's lieutenants.
 tree, *arbor*, -ōris (f.).
 tribute, *tribūtum*, -i (n.).
 trireme, *trirēmis*, -is (f.).
 Trojan, *Trōiānus*, -a, -um.
 troops, *cōpia*, -arum (f. plur.).
 troublesome, *mōlestus*, -a, -um.
 Troy, *Trōia*, -ae (f.).
 true, *verus*, -a, -um.
 try, to, *tento*, 1.
 twelfth, *dūdēcīmus*, -a, -um.
 twelve, *dūdēcim*.
 twentieth, *vicesīmus*, -a, -um.
 twenty, *vīgintī*.
 twenty-eight, *vīgintī octī*.
 two (§ 109).

two hundred, *dūcentī*, -ae, -o.
 tyrant, *týrannus*, -i (m.).
 Tyrtaeus, -i, a Greek poet.
 uncertain, *incertus*, -a, -um.
 uncivilised, *barbārus*, -a, -um.
 under, *sub* (§ 359).
 under my leadership = with me as leader (§ 193).
 undertake, to, *suscipio*, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3.
 unfavourable, *adversus*, -a, -um.
 unhappy, *infelix*, -icī-.
 unimportant, *lēvis*, -e.
 unjust, *iniustus*, -a, -um.
 unless, *nīsi* (§ 417).
 unwilling, to be, *nōlo*, *nōlle*, *nōlui* (§ 170).
 unworthy, *indignus*, -a, -um (gov. abl.).
 upper, *superior*, -ius.
 us, *nōs* (§ 82).
 usage = use.
 use, *usus*, -ūs (m.).
 use, to, *utor*, -i, *ūsus*, 3 (dep.).
 used to (with a verb), (R. 31).
 useful, *utilis*, -e.
 useless, *inutilis*, -e.
 Ulyssēs, -is (m.), a famous Greek
 valley, *vallis*, -is (f.).
 valour, *virtus*, -utis (f.).
 value, of no, *utilis*, -e.
 various, *vārius*, -a, -um.
 very (R. 20).
 very = sign of super. degree.
 very many, *plūrimī*, -ae, -ā.
 vice, *vīcium*, -i (n.).
 victim, *victīma*, -ae (f.).
 victor, *victor*, -ōris (m.).
 victory, *victōria*, -ae (f.).
 vigorously, *strēnuē*.
 vigour, *vis* (§ 3, App. II.).
 village, *vīcus*, -i (m.).
 violent, *vīolens*, -utis.
 virgin, *virgo*, -inis (f.).
 virtue, *virtus*, -utis (f.).
 visit, to, *adeo*, -ire, -iī, -itum.
 voice, *vox*, *vōcis* (f.).
 Vosges, *Vosēgus*, -i (m.).
 wage, to, *gěro*, -ēre, *gessi*, *gestum*
 wait, to, *mōror*, 1 (dep.).
 walk, to, *ambulo*, 1.

wall, *mārus*, -i (m.); *pāries*, -ētis (f.).
 wander, to, *vāgor*, 1 (dep.).
 wanting, to be, *dēsūm*, -fui, -esse.
 war, *bellum*, -i (n.).
 warn, to, *mōneo*, 2, *admōneo*, 2.
 was, he, *erat*.
 waste, to, *tēro*, -ēre, *trīvi*, *trītum*, 3.
 watch, *vigilia*, -ae (f.).
 watch over, to, *tūēor*, 2 (dep.).
 watchman, *custos*, -ōdis (m.).
 water, *āqua*, -ae (f.).
 way, *via*, -ae (f.).
 we, *nōs* (§ 82).
 wealth, *divitiāe*, -ārum (f. plur.).
 weapon, *tēlum*, -i (n.).
 wearied, *fessus*, -a, -um.
 weary, to be, *taedet* (§ 251).
 to weary, *fatigo*, 1.
 weather, *tempestas*, -ātis (f.).
 weep, to, *fleo*, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum.
 well, *bēnē*.
 were, they, *erant*.
 what? *quid?* (see § 97).
 when, *quādo* (interr.), *cum* (§ 403).
 where, *ubi*.
 whether, *num* (§ 197).
 whether not, *nōne*.
 whether . . . or (in questions),
 utrum . . . an (§ 371), (not in
 questions) *sive . . . sive*.
 which, *quis* (R. 69); *quod* (of two),
 uter (§ 99).
 which (rel.), (§ 95).
 while, *dum* (§ 407).
 white, *albus*, -a, -um.
 who, *qui* (rel.), *quis* (interr.).
 whole, *tōtus* (§ 99).
 whose = of whom.
 why, *cūr*.
 wicked, *imprōbus*, -a, -um.
 wide, *lātus*, -a, -um.
 wife, *coniux*, -iugis.
 wife, *uxor*, -ōris (f.).
 wild, *fērus*, -a, -um.
 will, *vōluntas*, -ātis (f.).
 willing, to be, *vōlo*, *velle*, *vōlui* (§ 169).
 wind, *ventus*, -i (m.).
 wine, *vinum*, -i (n.).
 wing, *ala*, -ae (f.); (of an army)
 cornu, -ūs (n.).
 winter, *hiems*, -emīs (f.).
 winter-quarters, *hiberna*, -ōrum
 pl.

winter, to, *hiberno*, 1.
 wisdom, *sāpientia*, -ae (f.).
 wise, *sāpiens*, -ntis.
 wisely, *sāpienter*.
 wish, to, *vōlo*, *velle*, *vōlui*.
 with (= together with), *cum* (gov.
 abl.); (= instrument) translated
 by abl. alone.
 within, *intrā* (gov. acc.); (of time)
 (§ 441).
 without, *sine* (gov. abl.).
 witness, *testis*, -is (m.).
 wolf, *lūpus*, -i (m.).
 woman, *fēmina*, -ae (f.), *mūlier*,
 -iēris.
 wood, *silva*, -ae (f.), (= forest); *lignum*,
 -i (n.), (for burning).
 wooden, *ligneus*, -a, -um.
 word, *verbum*, -i (n.).
 work, *opus*, -ēris (n.).
 work, to, *lābōro*, 1.
 workman, *fāber*, -bri (m.).
 world, *mundus*, -i (m.).
 worse, *pēior*, -ius.
 worship, to, *cōlo*, -ui, *cultum*, 3.
 worst, *pessimus*, -a, -um.
 worthless, *nēquam* (indecl.).
 would = was going to, use fut. partic.
 would rather (§ 172); (= sign of sub-
 junctive), (§ 413).
 wound, *vulnus*, -ēris (n.).
 wound, to, *vulnēro*, 1.
 wretched, *miser*, -era, -erum.
 write, to, *scribo*, -ēre, *scripsī*, *scriptum*.
 writer, *scriptor*, -ōris (m.).

Xerxes, -is, a Persian king.

year, *annus*, -i (m.).
 yesterday, *hērī*.
 yield, to, *cēdo*, -ēre, *cessi*, *cessum*, 3.
 yonder, *ille* (R. 63).
 you, *vōs* (§ 82).
 young man, *iuvēnis*, -is (m.); *adōles-*
 cens, -entis (m.).
 younger, *iūnior*, -ius.
 youngest, *nātū minimus*.
 your, *vester*.

Zāma, a town in Numidia.
 zeal, *stūdium*, -i (n.).

VOCABULARIES TO EXERCISES 1-76.

* * In these vocabularies the quantity (App. I., § 3, p. 299) of a vowel is not marked, as a rule, in the following cases:—

- (a) A vowel standing before two consonants, which is always long.
- (b) A vowel standing before another vowel, which is always short.
- (c) Diphthongs, which are always long.

VOCABULARIES 1 AND 2.

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| * naută (m.), sailor. | * rēgină (f.), queen. |
| * agricolă (m.), farmer. | * pŭellă (f.), girl. |
| * apă (f.), water. | * căsă (f.), cottage. |
| * terră (f.), land. | * insulă (f.), island. |
| * âmât, (he, she, it) loves. | * laudăt, (he, she, it) praises. |

VOCABULARIES 3 AND 4.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| * âquîlă (f.), eagle. | * filia (f.), daughter. |
| * âlă (f.), wing. | * răsă (f.), rose. |
| * hastă (f.), spear. | * vîă (f.), way. |
| * săpientîă (f.), wisdom. | * pĕcūniă, money. |
| * dăc, (he, she, it) gives. | * monstrăt, (he, she, it) shows. |

VOCABULARY 5.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| * monstrăt, (he, she, it) shows. ✓ | * monstrant, (they) show. |
| * terrăt, (he, she, it) terrifies. | * terrent, (they) terrify. |
| * hăbăt, (he, she, it) has. | * hăbent, (they) have. |

VOCABULARY 6.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| * cōrōna (f.), crown. | * cōlumbă (f.), dove. |
| * silvă (f.), a wood. | * spină (f.), thorn. |
| * incōlă (m.), inhabitant. | * vîă (f.), life. |
| * vulnerăt, (he, she, it) wounds. | * ornăt, (he, she, it) adorns. |
| * vulnerant, (they) wound. | * ornant, (they) adorn. |

VOCABULARY 7.

* carrus, -i (m.), <i>cart</i> .	* taurus, -i (m.), <i>bull</i> .
* ēquus, ¹ -i (m.), <i>horse</i> .	* ventus, -i (m.), <i>wind</i> .
* vicus, -i (m.), <i>village</i> .	* āmicus, -i (m.), <i>friend</i> .
* hortus, -i (m.), <i>garden</i> .	* dōminus, -i (m.), <i>lord, master</i> .
* agnus, -i (m.), <i>lamb</i> .	* et ² (conj.), <i>and</i> .
* lūpus, -i (m.), <i>wolf</i> .	nōn ² (adv.), <i>not</i> .

VOCABULARY 8.

* Clāudius, -i (m.), <i>Claudius</i> .	* glādius, -i (m.), <i>sword</i> .
* dēus, -i (m.), <i>god</i> .	* nuntius, -i (m.), <i>messenger</i> .
* filiūs, -i (m.), <i>son</i> .	* Rōmānus, -i (m.), <i>a Roman</i> .
* flūvius, -i (m.), <i>river</i> .	* Gallus, -i (m.), <i>a Gaul</i> .

VOCABULARY 9.

* āger, agri (m.), <i>field</i> .	* est, <i>is</i> .
* āper, apri (m.), <i>wild boar</i> .	* sunt, <i>are</i> .
* culter, cultri (m.), <i>knife</i> .	* currit, (he, she, it) <i>runs</i> .
* fāber, fabri (m.), <i>workman</i> .	* currunt, (they) <i>run</i> .
* liber, libri (m.), <i>book</i> .	* nunc, <i>now</i> .
* minister, ministri (m.), <i>servant</i> .	* āmicus, -i (m.), <i>friend</i> .

VOCABULARY 10.

* gēner, gēneri (m.), <i>son-in-law</i> .	* vesper, vespēri (m.), <i>evening</i> .
* sōcer, sōceri (m.), <i>father-in-law</i> .	* vīr, vīri (m.), <i>man</i> .
* signifer, signiferi (m.), <i>standard-bearer</i> .	* libēri, ³ libērōrum (m.), <i>children</i> .

¹ In words like *equus* *qu* represents one sound; the endings are obtained by modifying the final *-us*. Thus *qu* occurs in every case.

Thus sing. *ēqu-is*, *ēqu-ē*, *ēqu-um*, *ēqu-i*, *ēqu-ō*, *ēqu-ō*.

plur. *ēqu-i*, *ēqu-i*, *ēqu-ōs*, *ēqu-ōrum*, *ēqu-is*, *ēqu-is*.

² Adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions are not declined.

³ *Liberi* is only used (in good Latin) in the plural. It is really the plural of the adjective *liber*, free. When the singular word *child* is required it is translated by *puer*, *filius*, *filia*, *infans*, etc.

Carefully distinguish *libri*, *libros*, etc., *books*,
and *libēri*, *libēros*, etc., *children*.

VOCABULARY 11.

argentum, -i (n.), <i>silver</i> .	pēricūlum, -i (n.), <i>danger</i> .
aurum, -i (n.), <i>gold</i> .	praemium, -i (n.), <i>reward</i> .
dōnum, -i (n.), <i>gift</i> .	scūtum, -i (n.), <i>shield</i> .
oppidum; -i (n.), <i>town</i> .	templum, -i (n.), <i>temple</i> .
armā, ¹ armōrum (n.), <i>arms</i> .	dēlectāt, (he, she, it) <i>delights</i> .
castrā, ¹ castrōrum (n.), <i>camp</i> .	dēlectant, (they) <i>delight</i> .

VOCABULARY 12.

causa, -ae (f.), <i>cause</i> .	Germānia, -ae (f.), <i>Germany</i> .
dēa, -ae (f.), <i>goddess</i> .	Britannia, -ae (f.), <i>Britain</i> .
ira, -ae (f.), <i>anger</i> .	mālum, -i (n.), <i>evil</i> .
laetitia, -ae (f.), <i>joy</i> .	pēlāgus, ² -i (n.), <i>sea</i> .
pātriā, -ae (f.), <i>fatherland</i> .	Diana, -ae (f.), <i>Diana</i> .
praeda, -ae (f.), <i>prey, booty</i> .	Neptūnus, -i (m.), <i>Neptune</i> .
saepē (adv.), <i>often</i> .	semper (adv.), <i>always</i> .

VOCABULARY 13.

ācūtus, -a, -um, <i>sharp</i> .	longus, -a, -um, <i>long</i> .
albus, -a, -um, <i>white</i> .	magnus, -a, -um, <i>great, large</i> .
bōnus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> .	multus, -a, -um, <i>much, many</i> .
clārus, -a, -um, <i>famous</i> .	parvus, -a, -um, <i>small, little</i> .
fērus, -a, -um, <i>wild</i> .	timidus, -a, -um, <i>timid</i> .
grātus, -a, -um, <i>pleasing</i> .	vālidus, -a, -um, <i>strong</i> .
stultus, -a, -um, <i>foolish</i> .	tūs, -a, -um, <i>thy</i> .

VOCABULARY 14.

lātus, -a, -um, <i>broad, wide</i> .	mūrus, -i (m.), <i>wall</i> .
iustus, -a, -um, <i>just</i> .	servus, -i (m.), <i>slave</i> .
altus, -a, -um, <i>high</i> .	flūvius, -i (m.), <i>river</i> .

¹ These words are neuter plurals. They must be carefully distinguished from First Declension words. In the case of *castra*, *camp*, though the English is singular the Latin is plural, and all verbs and adjectives agreeing with *castra* must be plural.

² Remember that this word is neuter (App. III. (B), p. 303) and that its accusative is *pēlagus* (§ 19).

VOCABULARIES 15 AND 16.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick*.
 mācer, macra, macrum, *thin*.
 nīger, nigra, nigrum, *black*.
 noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*.
 vester, vestra, vestrum, *your*.
 femīnā, -ae (f.), *woman*.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful*.
 rūber, rubra, rubrum, *red*.
 sācer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred*.
 timēt, (he, she, it) *fears*.
 timent, (they) *fear*.

VOCABULARY 17.

bellum, -i (n.), *war*.
 consilium, -i (n.), *plan*.
 verbum, -i (n.), *word*.
 animus, -i (m.), *mind*.

falsus, -a, -um, *false*.
 āvidus, -a, -um, *greedy*.
 irācundus, -a, -um, *angry*.
 nōtus, -a, -um, *known*.

VOCABULARY 18.

Gender.¹ Words ending in -x are feminine, except names of men.

pax, pāc-is (f.), *peace*.
 vox, vōc-is (f.), *voice*.
 lux, lūc-is (f.), *light*.
 nux, nūc-is (f.), *nut*.
 grex, grēg-is (m.), *flock*.
 nix, niv-is (f.), *snow*.
 lex, lēg-is (f.), *law*.
 terrēt, (he, she, it) *terrifies*.
 terrēt-ur, (he, she, it) *is terrified*.
 vidēt, (he, she, it) *sees*.

lūna, -ae (f.), *moon*.
 captivus, -i (m.), *captive*.
 iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant*.
 pernīcīōsus, -a, -um, *destructive*.
 nēcēssārius, -a, -um, *necessary*.
 albus, -a, -um, *white*.
 cūr? *why?*
 terrent, (they) *terrify*.
 terrent-ūr, (they) *are terrified*.
 vident, (they) *see*.

VOCABULARY 19.

Gender. The ending -es increasing in the genitive is masculine, e.g.

pēs, pēdis.
 laus, laud-is (f.), *praise*.
 obsēs, obsīd-is (c.), *hostage*.
 custos, custōd-is (m.), *guardian*.
 ēquēs, equīt-is (m.), *horse soldier*.
 pēdēs, pēdīt-is (m.), *foot soldier*.
 mittīt, (he, she, it) *sends*.

cōmēs, cōmīt-is (m.), *companion*.
 civitas, civitāt-is (f.), *state*.
 cēlērītās, cēlērītāt-is (f.), *speed*.
 hiēms, hiēm-is (f.), *winter*.
 quis? *who?*
 mittunt, (they) *send*.

¹ The gender of the third declension is given in full in Appendix III., p. 308. For the present however the pupil had better confine himself to the short rules given with the vocabularies.

VOCABULARY 20.

Gender. Words ending in -or and -os are masculine, except *arbor* (a tree), which is *feminine*.

NOTE.—The genitive -ōris¹ (long ō) is a sign of the masculine gender.

consul, consŭl-is (m.), *consul*.²
 victor, victōr-is (m.), *conqueror*.
 clāmor, clāmōr-is (m.), *shout*.
 cōlor, cōlōr-is (m.), *colour*.
 lābor, lābōr-is (m.), *labour*.
 ōdor, ōdōr-is (m.), *smell*.
 sōl, sōl-is (m.), *sun*.
 Gallia, -ae (f.), *Gaul*.
 nunc (adv.), *now*.
 tunc (adv.), *then*.

flos, flōr-is (m.), *flower*.
 arbor, arbōr-is (f.), *tree*.
 sōror, sōrōr-is (f.), *sister*.
 māter, māt-r-is (f.), *mother*.
 pāter, patr-is (m.), *father*.
 anser, ansēr-is (m.), *goose*.
 Caesar, Caesār-is (m.), *Cæsar*.
 Itālia, -ae, *Italy*.
 erat, (he, she, it) *was*.
 erant, (they) *were*.

VOCABULARY 22.

Gender. -do, -go and -io are feminine endings.

lēgio, lēgiōnis (f.), *legion*.³
 Scīpio, Scīpiōnis (m.), *Scipio*.
 Africa, Africæ (f.), *Africa*.
 porta, portæ (f.), *gate*.

virgo, virginis (f.), *maiden*.
 mūlier, mūliēris (f.), *woman*.
 femīnā, -ae, *woman (= female)*.
 mortuus, mortuū, mortuum, *dead*.⁴

VOCABULARY 23.

Gender. The genitive -ōris is masculine, e.g., ōdor, ōdōris; -ēris (or -ēris) is neuter, e.g., tempus, temp-ōris.

carmen, carmīnis (n.), *song*.
 fulmen, fulmīnis (n.), *lightning*.
 gēnus, gēnēris (n.), *kind, sort*.
 vulnus, vulnēris (n.), *wound*.

litus, litōris (n.), *shore*.
 tempus, tempōris (n.), *time*.
 frigus, frigōris (n.), *cold*.
 aestās, aestātis (f.), *summer*.

¹ Students of French should note this rule with great care, the derived words in French being, with three exceptions, all feminine, e.g., la fleur, la couleur.

² In Rome two consuls were elected every year. The consuls were the highest magistrates in Rome. Among their duties one was to lead the army or part of the army in war.

³ A legion was a division of the Roman army. At first it consisted of 300 horsemen (*equites*) and 3000 footmen (*pedites*), but in later times the number of footmen was increased.

idus, sidēris (n.), *constellation*.
 stella, stellae (f.), *star*.
 histōria, histōriae (f.), *story*.

nox, noctis (f.), *night*.
 vārius,¹ -a, -um, *various*.
 antiquus,¹ -a, -um, *old, ancient*.

VOCABULARY 25.

Gender. (a) Words ending in -is and -es are *feminine*.

Common masculine exceptions are collis (m.), *hill*, finis (m.), *end*, ignis (m.), *fire*, and mensis (m.), *month*.

(b) Words ending in s after a consonant (e.g., urbs, pars, etc.) are *feminine*.

Important masculine exceptions are mons, fons, pons, dens.

auris, auris (f.), *ear*.
 āvis, āvis (f.), *bird*.
 cīvis, cīvis (c.), *citizen*.
 ignis, ignis (m.), *fire*.
 testis, testis (m.), *witness*.
 turris, turris (f.), *tower*.
 porta, portae (f.), *gate*.
 parat, (he, she, it) *prepares*.

cānis, cānis (c.), *dog*.
 iūvenis, iūvenis (m.), *young man*.
 vulpēs, vulpīs (f.), *fox*.
 arx, arcis (f.), *citadel*.
 nox, noctis (f.), *night*.
 dens, dentis (m.), *tooth*.
 mons, montis (m.), *mountain*.
 vālidus, -a, -um, *strong*.
 parant, (they) *prepare*.

VOCABULARY 26.

nāvis, nāvis (f.), *ship*.
 rētē, rētis (n.), *net*.
 piscis, piscis (m.), *fish*.
 piscātor, -ōris (m.), *fisherman*.
 vērator, -ōris (m.), *hunter*.
 nonnullus, -a, -um, *some*.
 primus, -a, -um, *first*.

vectigal, vectigālis (n.), *tax*.
 annus, -i (m.), *year*.
 ripa, -ae (f.), *bank (of a river)*.
 mōlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*.
 frīgīdus, -a, -um, *cold*.
 vivit, (he, she, it) *lives*.
 vivunt, (they) *live*.

VOCABULARY 27.

bellum, -i (n.), *war*.
 proellum, -i (n.), *battle*.
 pugna, -ae (f.), *a fight*.
 sagitta, -ae (f.), *arrow*.

cibus, -i (m.), *food*.
 rēgio, -ōnis (f.), *region, district*.
 nāvis, -is (f.), *ship*.
 fuga, -ae (f.), *flight*.

¹ It should be remembered that the feminine and neuter of adjectives in -us are got by changing the -us to -a and -um. Thus vari-us, var-a, var-um.

VOCABULARY 28.

brēvis, -e, *short*.crūdēlis, -e, *cruel*.dulcis, -e, *sweet*.fertilis, -e, *fertile*.fidēlis -e, *faithful*.omnis, -e, *all*.tristis, -e, *sad*.turpis, -e, *disgraceful, bas*ūtilis, -e, *useful*.fortis, -e, *brave*.

VOCABULARY 29.

audax, -ācis, *bold*.fērox, -ōcis, *fierce*.pōtens, -entis, *powerful*.sōlum, -i (n.), *soil*.praesens, -entis, *present*.absens, -entis, *absent*.sāpiens, -entis, *wise*.mālum, -i (n.), *evil*.

VOCABULARY 31.

brēvior, -iūs, *shorter*.dulcior, -iūs, *sweeter*.fertilior, -iūs, *more fertile*.pōtentior, -iūs, *more powerful*.ūtilior, -iūs, *more useful*.fācilior, -iūs, *easier*.fācilis, -ē, *easy*.lēvis,¹ -ē, *light, unimportant*.imprūdēns, -entis, *imprudent*quam,² *than*.

VOCABULARY 33.

ācus, -ūs (f.), *needle*.arcus, -ūs (m.), *bow*.adventus, -ūs (m.), *arrival*.currus, -ūs (m.), *chariot*.exercitus, -ūs (m.), *army*.impētus, -ūs (m.), *attack*.supērāt, (he, she, it) *overcomes*.supērānt, (they) *overcome*.manūs, -ūs (f.), *hand*.portus, -ūs (m.), *harbour*.cornu, -ūs (n.), *horn, wing of an army*.gēnu, -ūs (n.), *knee*.dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*.cōpia, -ae (f.), *plenty*.dūcīt, (he, she, it) *leads*.dūcunt, (they) *lead*.

¹ Lēvis is an adjective; the noun *light* (e.g., the light of the sun) is *lux*. See Vocab. 13, 368.

In English the same word may be sometimes a noun, sometimes an adjective, etc., according as it is used. Thus in *An iron bridge* "iron" is an adjective, but in *Iron is a useful metal* "iron" is a noun. In Latin the noun iron = *ferrum*, the adjective iron = *ferrēus* (declined like bonus).

² *Quam* is a conjunction. Adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions in Latin are not declined. They are often called indeclinable words.